68
PILGRIM DISCOUNT
USED DEPT.
$ 4.99

A FIRST BOOK IN GREEK

GRAVES AND HAWES

NOT RETURNABLE

quis libreum referat

309168

A FIRST BOOK IN GREEK

BY

FRANK PIERREPONT GRAVES, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN TUFTS COLLEGE

AND

EDWARD SOUTHWORTH HAWES, PH.D.

HEAD INSTRUCTOR IN GREEK IN THE ACADEMIC DEPARTMENT OF THE POLYTECHNIC INSTITUTE OF BROOKLYN

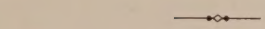
LEACH, SHEWELL, AND SANBORN

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

Copyright, 1895, by
FRANK PIERREPONT GRAVES and EDWARD SOUTHWORTH HAWES.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

PREFACE.



This book is an attempt to meet the growing demand of teachers for a preparatory book which shall be at the same time systematic, brief, and thorough. It is complete in itself and does not require the use of a grammar.

The forms of inflection and the usages of syntax have been stated first, and then illustrated. This system we believe to be clearer, and to give better results, than any "inductive method," which may at first seem interesting, but soon becomes burdensome and confusing.

The verb is taken up at the beginning and is developed by tense-systems,—the logical development, which gives the clearest idea of the conjugation of the Greek verb as a whole. The formation of the various tense-stems from the theme is briefly but distinctly explained. To illustrate the subjunctive and optative, some easy dependent clauses are introduced at the outset.

The *Suggestions* under the various paradigms are a feature of the book which we think will prove valuable. They may call for a word of explanation. They were not inserted in the belief that teachers are not competent to point out to their pupils the matters to which we call attention, but in order that the pupils may have this help before their eyes when they prepare their lessons, whether in school or out.

The vocabulary has been selected with great care. It is limited to the six hundred most important words in Xenophon's Anabasis[1] that seemed also to be used often in other Greek authors commonly read. Each word is used in at least two successive chapters, and is often continued to a third and fourth. Finally, to make absolutely sure that all the words are thoroughly learned, after every seven chapters a review vocabulary of all the new words in them is given. This is followed by a summary of all the inflections and syntax contained in the same group of chapters. It is urged that these chapters (VIII., XVI., XXIV., and XXXII.) be made the basis of thorough and systematic reviews. Such frequent reviews will serve to hold the class to its work, and show if any pupil is falling behind. They will also give a breathing space, in which the knowledge already acquired may be gathered up and fixed.

Extended exercises and numerous examples for the rules of syntax have been avoided. We recommend, therefore, that all the sentences be studied, although with mature students who wish to advance rapidly it would probably be safe to make some omissions.

The sentences we have tried to make as interesting as possible, and we believe that such defects as remain are a necessary price to pay for great advantages in a different direction. In the latter half of the book many pieces of connected Greek have been introduced, to relieve the monotony of short sentences. We hope that these connected passages

---

[1] All these words, except a few like ὁστοῦν and δείκνῡμι, which are necessary for paradigms or examples, occur nine times or more in the Anabasis.

will also prove useful as material for drill in reading Greek aloud, getting at the meaning in the original, and then translating it properly into real English.

The pronunciation recommended differs from the one long current in the United States only in the case of ει, ευ, and ζ. We give for them the pronunciation which seems, in the light of recent scholarship, to be most probable, and which has the advantage of being logical in the matter of the diphthongs. It has now been adopted in many of the leading colleges.

The acquisition of preliminaries is always a laborious process, and in preparing this book our chief aim has been to make that process as short and simple as possible. Especially we have tried to set forth, in our presentation of forms and constructions, the logical nicety of the inflectional and syntactical structure of the Greek language. If we have succeeded in these respects, so that the pupil can gain in twenty-five or thirty weeks an intelligent survey of the whole system of Greek grammar, and can meanwhile learn the six hundred words which occur most often in the Anabasis, we shall feel that our object has been attained.

We wish to acknowledge our indebtedness for careful reading of the proof, and for many valuable suggestions, to Miss Helen Hope Wadsworth of the Somerville High School, and to Dr. Edwin G. Warner and Mr. H. Austin Tuttle of the Brooklyn Polytechnic. All corrections and suggestions for the improvement of this work will be gladly received.

F. P. G.
E. S. H.

Boston, August 15, 1895.

A FIRST BOOK IN GREEK.

ON THE VALUE OF STUDYING GREEK.

A SUGGESTION TO PUPILS.

"WHAT is the good in studying Greek?" First, as in studying any subject systematically, there is the good that comes from the work itself. The regular performance of an appointed task helps in the formation of punctuality and fidelity. If a subject presents difficulties, strength is developed by overcoming them, and within certain limits the hard study is the valuable study, not for its own sake, but for the sake of mastering it. This good may be called the *moral benefit.*

The second advantage, which Greek shares to a greater or less degree with all language studies, is that of *intellectual training.* Language studies, more than others, train the mind to sharpness and accuracy in thinking and expressing thought. They develop the logical powers, increase the student's vocabulary, and, if properly pursued, improve his literary style. The elaborate development of its grammar makes Greek particularly valuable in this respect, in which no modern language, certainly, can rival the sister tongues, Latin and Greek.[1]

The third advantage is that of *æsthetic cultivation.* The Greeks were in their day the leaders of mankind. They adapted and improved the fine arts and transmitted them to the Romans, and through them to the modern civilized world. They formulated and extended the scientific knowledge possessed by the human race. They invented systems of philosophy. They treated literary composition, in all forms of poetry and prose, as a fine art, and their literature was the forerunner and, directly or indirectly, the model of all that of the Western World. No one can have a true conception of history who is not acquainted with the nature, history, and achievements of the Greek race; and, in the same way, there can be no adequate knowledge of literature that is not based on an acquaintance with the Greek masterpieces. These cannot be justly appreciated except in the language in which they were written.

[1] It has not seemed necessary to present the obvious practical reason for studying Greek, that the English language contains many Greek derivatives and compounds.

CHAPTER I.

THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

1. The Greek alphabet consists of twenty-four letters:—

Form.	*Equivalent.*	*Value.*	*Greek Name.*	*Pronunciation.*
Α α	*a*	comm*a*, f*a*ther [1]	ἄλφα	alpha
Β β	*b*	*b*ox	βῆτα	beta (*bāta*) [7]
Γ γ	*g*	*g*o, a*n*kle [2]	γάμμα	gamma
Δ δ	*d*	*d*o	δέλτα	delta
Ε ε	*ĕ*	p*e*n	ἒ ψῑλόν	epsilon (*ĕ-pseelón*)
Ζ ζ	*z*	a*dz*e	ζῆτα	zeta (*dzāta*)
Η η	*ē*	th*ey*	ἦτα	eta (*āta*)
Θ θ ϑ	*th*	*th*in	θῆτα	theta (*thāta*)
Ι ι	*i*	k*i*n, mach*i*ne	ἰῶτα	iota (*eṓta*)
Κ κ	*k* (hard *c*)	*k*ill	κάππα	kappa
Λ λ	*l*	*l*ip	λάμβδα	lambda
Μ μ	*m*	*m*an	μῦ	mu (*mü*) [5]
Ν ν	*n*	*n*o	νῦ	nu (*nü*) [5]
Ξ ξ	*x*	bo*x*	ξῖ	xi (*ksee*)
Ο ο	*ŏ*	*o*bey	ὂ μῑκρόν	omicron (*ŏ-meecrón*)
Π π	*p*	*p*it	πῖ	pi (*pee*)
Ρ ρ	*r*	*hr* [3]	ῥῶ	rho
Σ σ ς [4]	*s*	*s*o	σίγμα	sigma
Τ τ	*t*	*t*in	ταῦ	tau (rhymes with *now*)
Υ υ	*u* or *y*	Ger. Lücke, kühl [5]	ὗ ψῑλόν	upsilon (*ŭ-pseelón*)
Φ φ	*ph*	*ph*ase	φῖ	phi (*phee*)
Χ χ	*ch*	Ger. ac*ht* [6]	χῖ	chi (*chee* [hard *ch*])
Ψ ψ	*ps*	li*ps*	ψῖ	psi (*psee*)
Ω ω	*ō*	t*o*ne	ὦ μέγα	omega (*ṓ-mĕga*)

[1–7] See next page for notes.

NOTES.

1. For *α*, *ι*, and *υ*, the two examples indicate respectively the short and long sounds.

2. The combinations *γκ*, *γγ*, *γχ*, *γξ* had a *nasal sound*, and *nc* (*nk*), *ng*, *nch*, *nx* represent these combinations in Latin type.

3. *ρ* at the beginning of a syllable was always aspirated, and probably sounded as *hr*; *e.g.* *ῥέω* (*hrĕ̄-ō*).

4. *ς* is used at the end of a word; *σ* in any other place; *e.g.* *σχέσις*.

5. *υ* had the sound of French *u* or German *ü*. To make this sound, set the lips as for whistling and try to say *ee*.

6. *χ* had a guttural sound like the German *ch*.

7. When the Greek letters are used in English and applied to matters not connected with the study of Greek, it is in better taste to give their names the English pronunciation; *e.g.* Emerson's Φ. B. K. Oration (*Phī Bēta Kappa*), and "the value of *π*" (*pī*) in geometry.

2. Greek has no *h*, but before a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong, either the sound of *h* is indicated by the **rough breathing** (῾), or its absence by the **smooth breathing** (᾽). Thus *ὄρος* (*mountain*) is pronounced *ŏros*, but *ὅρος* (*boundary*) is *hŏros*. *Initial* *ρ* has always the rough breathing (see **1,** note 3); *ρρ*, which occurs only in the body of words, is sometimes written *ῤῥ*; *e.g.* *ῥήτωρ*, *rhetor*, *Πύῤῥος*, *Pyrrhus*.

3. Some other characters were also used. One letter, F (**Digamma** or **Vau,** corresponding to Latin *v consonans*), gradually passed out of use, but left important traces. Its previous existence explains many apparent irregularities in declension and metre.

4. In this book, when *α*, *ι*, and *υ* are long, they are marked *ᾱ*, *ῑ*, *ῡ*, except when they are shown to be long by having a circumflex accent (see **18** *c*).

5. The **diphthongs** are pronounced as follows: —

αι like *ai* in *aisle*,		αυ like *ou* in *house*,	
ει " *ei* " *eight*,		ευ " *ĕ* + *oo*,	
οι " *oi* " *oil*,		ου " *ou* in *group*,	
	υι like *we*,		
	ηυ " *ā* + *oo*		

6. The **improper diphthongs,** ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ, that is, ᾱ, η, ω, + ι, are pronounced like ᾱ, η, ω. The ι, being written beneath, is called **iota subscript.**

7. Every Greek word has as many **syllables** as it has separate vowels and diphthongs; *e.g.* λέ-λυ-ται, ἐ-ε-ρεῖ-ον.

When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant goes with the syllable that follows, as do also such combinations of consonants as can begin Greek words (στ, κτ, φθ, μν, etc.); *e.g.* λέ-λυ-ται, δᾱ-ρει-κός, and ἄ-ρι-στος, ἐ-λή-φθην. Other combinations of consonants are divided; *e.g.* βάρ-βα-ρος, ἵπ-πεύς. Compound words are generally divided between their component parts; *e.g.* προσ-έ-χω (not προ-σέ-χω).

8. Greek proper names and **Greek words,** when taken over into English and written with Latin letters, should be transliterated into the Latin form, and *pronounced with the English pronunciation, accented as in Latin,* according to the quantity of the penult. Some directions and examples will make this clear.

9. *a. In transliterating,*[1] *represent*

γ by *g* (soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*);	*e.g.* Γῆ (*Gē*);	
κ " *c* (" " *e*, *i*, " *y*);	*e.g.* Κῦρος (*Cȳrus*);	
υ " *y* (pronounced ī or ĭ);	*e.g.* Κῦρος (*Cȳrus*),	
	Βυζάντιον (*Byzántium*).	

[1] Instead of the system given above, many persons now prefer to retain the name or word *transliterated in its Greek form.* In that case

-ος and -ον of the 2d declension } by { -*us* and -*um* }; *e.g.* { Κῦρος (Cȳr*us*), Βυζάντιον (Byzanti*um*);

αι by *ae* (pronounced ē); *e.g.* Κυνὸς κεφαλαί (Cynoscéphal*ae*).

ει " ī or ē (" ī or ē); *e.g.* Δᾱρεῖος (Darīus), Αἰνείας (Aenēas);

οι " *oe* (" ē); *e.g.* Οἰνεύς (*Oe*neus),

but -οι in nom. plur. of 2d decl. } by ī (pronounced ī); *e.g.* Αἰγὸς ποταμοί (Aegospótamī);

ου by ū (pronounced ū); *e.g.* Οὐκαλέγων (Ūcálegon).

b. But when the name has a well-known English form, this should be used; *e.g.* Ἀθῆναι, *Athens*, Ἀριστοτέλης, *Aristotle*.

10. Write in Greek letters: —

1. Ariaeus.
2. Thymbrium.
3. Issī.
4. angelus.[1]
5. Aenēas.
6. Caystrūpedium.
7. Xenophōn.
8. Clīsthenēs.
9. Boeōtia.
10. Anabasis.

Write in Latin letters: —

1. Ἀγίᾱς.
2. Βυζάντιον.
3. Θερμοπύλαι.
4. Οἰχαλίᾱ.
5. Ὅμηρος.
6. φάλαγξ.[1]
7. Ταρσοί.
8. Νίκαρχος.
9. κληροῦχος.
10. Σάρδεις.

---

it should be pronounced like any other Greek word, and accented on the syllable where the Greek accent stands; *e.g.* Ἀλκιβιάδης, *Alkibiades* (pron. Alkibiăhdace).

This system should not be attempted, unless it can be uniformly and consistently carried out.

[1] See **1**, note 2.

11. Pronounce[1] the following: —

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δᾱρεῖος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δᾱρεῖος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.

CHAPTER II.

ACCENT AND PUNCTUATION.

12. There are three kinds of **accent**: —

The **acute** (´); *e.g.* βάρβαρος (*barbarian*);
the **circumflex** (῀); *e.g.* παῖς (*child*);
the **grave** (`); *e.g.* τὶ (*some, any*).

13. *a.* The accent and breathing stand over the *second* vowel of a diphthong; *e.g.* οἴκοῑ (*at home*).

b. The acute and grave accents are placed *after*, but the circumflex *over*, the breathing; *e.g.* ἡ ἦν οἴκοι, *or he was at home.*

c. The acute can stand only on one of the last three syllables of a word; the circumflex only on one of the last two; and the grave only on the last.

[1] See **7** for the division into syllables. Emphasize the syllables marked with any accent.

14. *a.* A word having the *acute*

on the *ultima* is called **oxytone**; *e.g.* θεός (*god*),
on the *penult* is called **paroxytone**; *e.g.* λόγος (*word*),
on the *antepenult* is called **proparoxytone**; *e.g.* στράτευμα (*army*).

b. A word having the *circumflex*

on the *ultima* is called **perispomenon**; *e.g.* κακῶς (*badly*),
on the *penult* is called **properispomenon**; *e.g.* ἐνταῦθα (*here*).

c. A word having *no accent* on the *ultima* is called **barytone**; *e.g.* λόγος, στράτευμα, ἐνταῦθα.

15. When an oxytone is followed by another word, with no punctuation coming between, its acute is changed to a *grave*, except before an enclitic (see **221** *a*) and in the case of the interrogative τίς, τί[1] (*who, what*); *e.g.* καὶ τί ἐποίησε τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν; *and what did both the barbarian and the Greek* [*armies*] *do?*

16. A syllable is **long by nature** when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. *In determining accent, however, final -αι and -οι have the effect of short vowels*, except in the optative mood and the adverb οἴκοι.

17. A syllable is **long by position** if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by two consonants or a double consonant (ξ, ψ, ζ); *e.g.* ἐστί (*is*), τοξότης (*bowman*).

18. General Rules of Accent.

a. When the ultima is long, the antepenult cannot be accented; but it may, when the ultima is short; e.g. στρατιώτης (*soldier*), but πόλεμος (*war*).

---

[1] To distinguish it from the indefinite, τις, τι, *some, any.*

b. When the penult is long by nature and at the same time the ultima is short by nature, the penult, if accented at all, takes the circumflex; e.g. εὖρος, *width.*

c. The circumflex can stand only on syllables long by nature, but it does not necessarily stand on all such syllables.

19. These *General Rules* have some exceptions, but on them all rules of accent are based.

20. Supply the missing accents in the following passage according to **15–18,** and pronounce. The pupil may assume that the words not already marked here have **recessive accent,** *i.e.* they are accented as far back as possible.

ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δε μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δε αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς[1] Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς[1] φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὁπλίτας ἀνέβη τριᾱκοσίους, ἄρχοντα δε αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον.

21. After accenting, denominate each word in the foregoing passage as *oxytone*, *paroxytone*, etc.

22. PUNCTUATION.

The Greek has a **comma** (,) and a **period** (.) like those in English. The **colon** (·), a point above the line, corresponds to the English colon and semicolon. The **mark of interrogation** (;) is like the English semicolon.

---

[1] A word having no accent, called a *proclitic.*

Syntax.

23. There are three **persons** in Greek: *first*, *second*, and *third;* and three **numbers**: *singular*, *dual* (denoting two objects), and *plural.*

24. There are three **genders**: *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter;* and five **cases**: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *vocative.*

25. The functions of the Latin **ablative** are filled in Greek by the genitive and dative.

26. Rule. — **The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case**; *e.g.* καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Δᾱρεῖος, *and Darius was here.*

27. Rule. — **A verb agrees in person and number with its subject**; *e.g.* οἱ θεοὶ ἦσαν ἀγαθοί, *the gods were good.*

28. Rule. — **The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative**; *e.g.* ἡ καλὴ γυνὴ πέμπει τὸν ἄνθρωπον, *the beautiful woman sends the man.*

29. Rule. — **A substantive** (i.e. *a noun, pronoun, or other substitute for a noun*) **in apposition with another substantive is in the same case**; *e.g.* Δᾱρεῖος ὁ βασιλεὺς σῴζει Κῦρον τὸν στρατιώτην, *Darius the king saves Cyrus the soldier.*

Exercise.

30. Translate into Greek: 1. The bowman was here. 2. The king sends the man. 3. The beautiful woman saves Cyrus. 4. The god sends Cyrus and the soldier. 5. Who is at home?

Essentials for Translation.

31. To translate any Greek author easily, one must know the words he uses, and be able to see quickly the relation of each word to every other word in the sentence. Therefore, from the beginning,

a. learn all **new words** *thoroughly,*
b. master all **paradigms** *as they occur,*
c. master the rules of **syntax.**

32. Give the Greek for: *and, army, at home, badly, barbarian, beautiful, bowman, child, god, the gods, good, here, is, king, man, mountain, or, saves, sends, soldier, some, war, was, were, what, who, width, woman, word.*

CHAPTER III.

PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF THE VERB.

33. Greek verbs have three **voices:** *active, middle,* and *passive.*

34. There are six **moods:** *indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative, infinitive,* and *participle.*

35. *a.* There are seven **tenses:** *present, imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect.* These are all found in the indicative, but the other moods lack some tenses.

b. The present, future, perfect, and future perfect, which represent present or future time, are called **primary tenses;** and the others, which represent past time, are called **secondary tenses.**

Formation of the Verb.

36. The fundamental part of any verb is called the **theme** or **verb-stem.** From this, by various modifications, prefixes, and suffixes, the **tense-stems** are formed. To the tense-stems, modified, perhaps, by a **mood-suffix,** the **personal endings** (or other inflectional endings, in the infinitive and participle) are added. Thus in λύω the theme is λυ, the present stem is λῡ%-; *i.e.* the theme is lengthened, and a second vowel is added to the theme. This vowel is called the **thematic vowel,** and appears sometimes as ο, sometimes as ε (ο before μ and ν, ε elsewhere). In the form λύοιμεν the present stem λῡ%- is modified by the mood-suffix -ι-, giving λῡοι-; to this is added -μεν, the ending of the first person plural, making λύοιμεν, a complete word.

37. The **personal endings** for the *present indicative* and *subjunctive* are given in the following table: —

Primary Endings, Active.

Sing. 1	—, (-μι)			Plur. 1	-μεν
2	-ς, (-σι)	Dual 2	-τον	2	-τε
3	—, (-τι, -σι)	3	-τον	3	-σι, (-νσι)

Those for the *imperfect* (which occurs only in the indicative), and for the *optative* (except the first person), are: —

Secondary Endings, Active.

Sing. 1	-ν			Plur. 1	-μεν
2	-ς	Dual 2	-τον	2	-τε
3	—	3	-την	3	-ν, -σαν

NOTE. — The -ω, -εις, -ει, and -ουσι of the pres. ind. (see **41**) result, perhaps, from the disappearance or modification of the original personal endings -μι, -σι, -τι, -νσι (-ντι, cf. Lat. -nt).

38. The imperfect shows a peculiarity called the **augment.** This is an *increase* at the beginning of a verb form. It designates past time, and occurs in all the *secondary tenses*, in the *indicative* only.

a. In verbs beginning with a consonant, the augment consists of ἐ-. This is called **syllabic augment,** because it increases the number of *syllables; e.g.* λύω, ἔ-λῡον.

b. Verbs beginning with a vowel have the **temporal augment,** which consists in lengthening the initial vowel, thus increasing the *time; e.g.* ἐθέλω, *I wish;* ἤθελον, *I wished.* Initial ἀ- becomes ἠ-; *e.g.* ἀκούω, *I hear;* ἤκουον, *I heard.* If the initial vowel of the theme is long, no change takes place (but ἀ- usually becomes ἠ-); *e.g.* ἥκω, *I am come;* impf. ἧκον.

39. The accent of the verb is, as a rule, recessive (see **20**). Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

40. The paradigm in **41** is a portion of the inflection of λύω, *loose*, the verb usually taken as a model. The full paradigm at the end of the book should be consulted now, and each time hereafter that a new portion of the verb is to be learned, that it may be seen what part of the whole each portion forms.

41. The **present system** consists of the present and imperfect tenses. The present represents the action as *taking place* at the present time; *e.g. I loose, I do loose, I am loosing.* The imperfect expresses *continued, customary,* or *attempted* action in past time; *e.g. I was loosing, I kept loosing, I tried to loose.*

The inflection is as follows: —

PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE.

(Formed from present stem λῡ%ε-.)

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.
	Present.	**Imperfect.**	**Present.**
Sing. 1	λύω, *I loose.*	ἔλῡον, *I was loosing.*	λύω, *I may loose.*[1]
2	λύεις, *you loose (thou loosest).*	ἔλῡες	λύῃς
3	λύει, *he looses.*	ἔλῡε	λύῃ
Dual 2	λύετον, *you* (two) *loose.*	ἐλύετον	λύητον
3	λύετον, *they* (two) *loose.*	ἐλῡέτην	λύητον
Plur. 1	λύομεν, *we loose.*	ἐλύομεν	λύωμεν
2	λύετε, *you loose.*	ἐλύετε	λύητε
3	λύουσι, *they loose.*	ἔλῡον	λύωσι

	Optative.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
	Present.	**Present.**	**Present.**
Sing. 1	λύοιμι, *I might [loose.*[1]		
2	λύοις	λῦε, *loose thou*, or *do you loose.*	λύειν, *to loose.*
3	λύοι	λῡέτω, *let him loose.*	
Dual 2	λύοιτον	λύετον, *do you* (two) *loose.*	
3	λῡοίτην	λῡέτων, *let them* (two) *loose.*	Pres. Participle.
Plur. 1	λύοιμεν		*loosing.*
2	λύοιτε	λύετε, *do you loose.*	*Masc.* λύων
3	λύοιεν	λῡέτωσαν, or λῡόντων, *let them loose.*	*Fem.* λύουσα *Neut.* λῦον

[1] The subjunctive and optative are translated, provisionally, by the auxiliaries *may* and *might*. This is not accurate, but will serve until the functions of these moods have been outlined. In use the two moods together correspond roughly to the Latin subjunctive.

Suggestions to the Learner.

42. Observe that: —

a. The subjunctive forms are like the indicative, but lengthen the thematic vowel (see **36**).

b. The mood-suffix of the optative, *-ι-*, has been noted (**36**). Another form of optative suffix is *-ιη-* (*-ιε-*), shown in the 3d plur., λύοιεν.

c. The imperfect exhibits with the optative (see **37**) a different set of endings from the present indicative and subjunctive. These are the secondary tense-endings of the active. In the 1st sing. of the opt., however, *-μι*, although primary, occurs.

d. The first person does not occur in the dual, nor in any number of the imperative.

Exercise.

43. Give the 1st pers. plur. of pres. subjv. of λύω; 2nd sing. pres. imv.; 2nd plur. pres. opt.; 1st sing. pres. opt.; 3rd sing. pres. ind.; 3rd sing. pres. subjv.; 3rd plur. pres. opt.; pres. inf.; 3rd plur. impf.; 3rd sing. pres. opt.; 3rd sing. impf.; 1st plur. pres. ind.

44. Memorize and inflect the following verbs: —

ἄγω, *lead, carry.*
ἀκούω, *hear.*
βουλεύω, *plan.*
ἐθέλω (or θέλω), *wish.*
θύω, *sacrifice.*
κελεύω, *order, command.*
λύω, *loose, destroy, break.*
παίω, *strike.*
πέμπω, *send.*
σῴζω, *save.*

ν movable.

45. A *-ν* may be added to

a. words ending in *-σι*,

b. the third person singular of verbs, when it ends in *-ε*,

c. ἐστί, *is*.

This is called **ν movable,** and usually occurs at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel.

46. RULE. — **The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative;** *e.g.* ἤθελε Δᾱρεῖον λύειν τὰς οἰκίᾱς, *he wished Darius to destroy the houses.*

FINAL CLAUSES.

47. *Clauses of purpose*, called *final clauses*, because they show the end in view, are introduced by the conjunction **ἵνα**, *in order that.*

RULE. — **Final clauses have the *subjunctive* when the verb they depend on is in a primary tense, and the *optative* when it is in a secondary tense;** *e.g.* λύει τὴν γέφῡραν ἵνα σῴζῃ τὴν στρατιάν, *he is destroying the bridge, in order that he may save the army.*

Exercise.[1]

48. TRANSLATE: 1. πόλεμος τὰς οἰκίᾱς ἔλῡεν. 2. ἦγε τὴν στρατιὰν ἵνα τὴν γέφῡραν λύοι. 3. τὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ τὸν στρατιώτην παιέτω ὁ βασιλεύς. 4. ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν ἐθέλων θύει. 5. στράτευμα ἥκει ἵνα σῴζῃ τὴν γέφῡραν. 6. κέλευε Κῦρον πέμπειν τὸν στρατιώτην. 7. ἀκουόντων καὶ βουλευόντων. 8. τὴν στρατιὰν πέμπετε ἵνα τὰς οἰκίᾱς σῴζῃ. 9. ἡ γυνὴ καλή ἐστιν.

---

[1] In preparing exercises, be sure to pronounce the Greek aloud. This practice tends to the association of the Greek words and phrases with ideas rather than with English words.

Exercise.

49. TRANSLATE: 1. Wishing to lead the army, he sacrificed. 2. They send Cyrus, in order that he may destroy the army. 3. The woman was beautiful. 4. Let war destroy the houses. 5. The king is here. 6. He led the army, in order that he might save the bridge. 7. Let Cyrus hear and plan.

CHAPTER IV.

FIRST DECLENSION.

50. The **stem** of a noun is the *main part* (cf. theme of the verb, **36**), to which the **case-endings** are added to form the various cases.

51. There are three **declensions** in Greek, which correspond in general to the first three in Latin. The *first* and *second*, since their stems end respectively in *-ā-* and *-o-*, are called the **vowel declensions,** in distinction from the *third*, or **consonant declension.**

52. The **first,** or **A-declension,** forms its nominative in *-a*, *-ā*, or *η* for *feminines*, and *-ās* or *-ης* for *masculines*.

53. The *meaning of the cases* is the same as in Latin; *e.g.* the singular of the first paradigm in **54** would be translated: —

Nom., *an army* (subject),
Gen., *of an army*,
Dat., *to* or *for an army*,
Acc., *an army* (object),
Voc., (*O*) *army*.

54. The following paradigms illustrate the peculiarities[1] of **feminines** of the *first declension:* —

	στρατιά *army*	γέφῡρα *bridge*	Μοῦσα *Muse*	ἄμαξα *wagon*	κώμη *village*
Sing., Nom., Voc.	στρατιά	γέφῡρα	Μοῦσα	ἄμαξα	κώμη
Gen.	στρατιᾶς	γεφύρᾱς	Μούσης	ἁμάξης	κώμης
Dat.	στρατιᾷ	γεφύρᾳ	Μούσῃ	ἁμάξῃ	κώμῃ
Acc.	στρατιάν	γέφῡραν	Μοῦσαν	ἄμαξαν	κώμην
Dual, Nom., Acc., Voc.	στρατιά	γεφύρᾱ	Μούσᾱ	ἁμάξᾱ	κώμᾱ
Gen., Dat.	στρατιαῖν	γεφύραιν	Μούσαιν	ἁμάξαιν	κώμαιν
Plur., Nom., Voc.	στρατιαί	γέφῡραι	Μοῦσαι	ἄμαξαι	κῶμαι
Gen.	στρατιῶν	γεφῡρῶν	Μουσῶν	ἁμαξῶν	κωμῶν
Dat.	στρατιαῖς	γεφύραις	Μούσαις	ἁμάξαις	κώμαις
Acc.	στρατιάς	γεφύρᾱς	Μούσᾱς	ἁμάξᾱς	κώμᾱς

Suggestions.

55. Observe that: —

a. The terminations of the *dual* and *plural* are the same for each noun, but the terminations of the singular differ.

b. The following rule applies to the *singular:* —

1. If the final vowel of the stem is *preceded by* **ε**, **ι**, *or* **ρ**, *-α* is usually found throughout the singular; *e.g.* στρατιά and γέφῡρα.

2. If the final vowel of the stem is *preceded by* **-σ**, **-σσ** (*or* **-ττ**), **-λλ**, *or a double consonant* (*i.e.* **ξ**, **ψ**, and **ζ**), *-α* is usually found in the nominative, accusative, and vocative, and *-η* in the genitive and dative; *e.g.* Μοῦσα and ἄμαξα.

3. With few exceptions, *all others* have *-η* throughout; *e.g.* **κώμη**, **σπονδή** (*libation*), and **μάχη** (*battle*).

[1] No list of case-endings is given in the first and second declensions, since these endings have so united with the vowel of the stem that they cannot be easily distinguished from it.

56. Observe that: —

a. The quantity of -ᾱς in the gen. sing., of -ᾱ in the dual, and of -ᾱς in the acc. plur., is long. So, in general, α, in the endings of the dual and plur., and of the gen. sing. of the first declension, is long.

b. In the acc. sing. στρατιᾱ́ has στρατιᾱ́ν, as κώμη has κώμην; but the others, having -α short in the nom., have it also short in the acc. sing.

57. Observe that: —

a. The accent of all nouns in the nom. sing., and the quantity of final -α in this declension must be learned by observation.

b. As a rule, all cases of nouns of any declension are accented on the *same syllable as the nominative singular*, and have the same kind of accent, as far as the General Rules (**18**) will permit; *e.g.* κώμη, κώμης, κώμῃ, etc., but γέφῡρα has γεφῡ́ρᾱς in the genitive, because -ᾱς is long and the antepenult cannot be accented. In the same way, κώμη has κῶμαι in the plural, because the penult is long and the ultima short (**18** *b*).

c. An exception to the foregoing rule is that in the first and second declensions, when a genitive or dative of any number is accented on the last syllable, the accent must be circumflex; *e.g.* στρατιᾶς, στρατιᾷ, στρατιαῖν, etc.

d. Another exception is that all nouns of the first declension are perispomenon in the genitive plural.

58. *a.* The *feminine* of the **definite article** (*the*) has the same endings in the singular and plural as a noun of the first declension in -η: —

Sing. Nom.	ἡ	Plur. Nom.	αἱ
Gen.	τῆς	Gen.	τῶν
Dat.	τῇ	Dat.	ταῖς
Acc.	τήν	Acc.	τᾱ́ς

b. The dual of the article in the feminine is not given here, as it is like the masculine, and so conforms to the endings of the second declension. See **97.**

59. Vocabulary.[1]

ἐλαύνω, *march, drive.*
ἔχω, *have.*
ἀγορά, *market-place.*
βίᾱ, *strength, violence.*
βίᾳ (adv.), *by violence, violently.*
δίκη, *justice, one's desert.*
δίκην ἔχω, *receive satisfaction,* or *receive punishment.*
ἡμέρᾱ, *day.*
οἰκίᾱ, *house.*
πύλη, *gate.*
σκηνή, *tent.*
σπονδή, *libation;* plur., *truce.*
θάλαττα, *sea.*
χώρᾱ, *land, country.*
τί, *what? why?*
αὖθις, adv., *again, moreover.*
ἔνδον, *within.*
ἰσχῡρῶς, *strongly, extremely.*
οἴκαδε, *homeward, home.*
εἰς, prep. with accusative, *into, to.*
ἐκ (ἐξ before a vowel), with genitive, *out of, from.*
ἐν, with dative, *in, on.*

60. Translate: 1. δίκην ἔχουσιν ἐν τῇ τῆς μάχης ἡμέρᾳ. 2. αὖθις τὴν γέφῡραν βίᾳ ἔλῡον ἵνα τὴν στρατιὰν σῴζοιεν. 3. τί ἦν Κῦρος ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ; 4. Κλέαρχος ἤκουεν. 5. ἡ γυνὴ ἔνδον θύουσα ἰσχῡρῶς καλὴ ἦν. 6. τῇ Μούσῃ θύειν οἶκοι ἐθέλετον. 7. τὴν στρατιὰν κελεύεις τὴν γέφῡραν λύειν καὶ τὰς σκηνάς. 8. θελέτω εἰς τὴν χώρᾱν ἐκ τῆς κώμης τὰς στρατιὰς ἄγειν. 9. εἰς τὴν κώμην τὴν στρατιὰν πέμπει ἵνα τὰς σπονδὰς λύῃ. 10. αἱ τῆς οἰκίᾱς πύλαι ἦσαν ἐνταῦθα.

61. Translate: 1. The man has the army and breaks the truce. 2. They hear, and sacrifice to the Muses. 3. Let Cyrus and Clearchus sacrifice within. 4. The wagon was here in the market-place. 5. Cyrus was leading the army to the village. 6. The bowman wishes to strike the gate violently. 7. Why were the woman and the child here on the day of the battle? 8. Let them march homeward from the sea. 9. Darius received satisfaction.

[1] All new words should be thoroughly committed to memory.

CHAPTER V.

FIRST DECLENSION (*Continued*).

62. The following paradigms illustrate the peculiarities of the **masculines** of the *first declension*: —

	νεᾱνίᾱς, *young man*	ὁπλίτης, *hoplite*	πελταστής, *peltast*	Ξέρξης, *Xerxes*
Sing., Nom.	νεᾱνίᾱς	ὁπλίτης	πελταστής	Ξέρξης
Gen.	νεᾱνίου	ὁπλίτου	πελταστοῦ	Ξέρξου
Dat.	νεᾱνίᾳ	ὁπλίτῃ	πελταστῇ	Ξέρξῃ
Acc.	νεᾱνίᾱν	ὁπλίτην	πελταστήν	Ξέρξην
Voc.	νεᾱνίᾱ	ὁπλῖτα	πελταστά	Ξέρξη
Dual, Nom., Acc., Voc.	νεᾱνίᾱ	ὁπλίτᾱ	πελταστά	
Gen., Dat.	νεᾱνίαιν	ὁπλίταιν	πελτασταῖν	
Plur., Nom., Voc.	νεᾱνίαι	ὁπλῖται	πελτασταί	
Gen.	νεᾱνιῶν	ὁπλίτῶν	πελταστῶν	
Dat.	νεᾱνίαις	ὁπλίταις	πελτασταῖς	
Acc.	νεᾱνίᾱς	ὁπλίτᾱς	πελταστᾱς	

Suggestions.

63. Observe that: —

The rules for accenting feminines of the first declension (see **57**) apply also to masculines.

64. Observe that: —

a. In the *dual* and *plural* the case-endings of all masculines are the same as those of the feminines (see **55** *a*).

b. In the *singular*: —

1. The nom. ends in -ᾱς or -ης, and the dat. and acc. in -ᾳ and -ᾱν or -ῃ and -ην.
2. The gen., as if borrowed from the second declen., ends in -ου.
3. The voc. (except in most proper names) usually ends in -ᾱ or -α.

Contract Nouns.

65. Nouns of the first declension, feminine and masculine, having stems in *-αᾱ-* or *-εᾱ-* are contracted throughout.

66. The following paradigms illustrate the peculiarities of **contract nouns** of the *first declension*:—

	(μνάᾱ) μνᾶ, *mina*	(γέᾱ) γῆ, *earth*	(Ἑρμέᾱς) Ἑρμῆς, *Hermes*
Sing., Nom.	μνᾶ	γῆ	Ἑρμῆς
Gen.	μνᾶς	γῆς	Ἑρμοῦ
Dat.	μνᾷ	γῇ	Ἑρμῇ
Acc.	μνᾶν	γῆν	Ἑρμῆν
Voc.	μνᾶ	γῆ	Ἑρμῆ
Dual, Nom., Acc., Voc.	μνᾶ		Ἑρμᾶ
Gen., Dat.	μναῖν		Ἑρμαῖν
Plur., Nom., Voc.	μναῖ		Ἑρμαῖ
Gen.	μνῶν		Ἑρμῶν
Dat.	μναῖς		Ἑρμαῖς
Acc.	μνᾶς		Ἑρμᾶς

Suggestions.

67. Observe that:—

Every case has the circumflex, but otherwise the forms do not differ from the uncontracted paradigms.

68. Rule.—**The *genitive* may denote various relations. Thus it may be:—**

I. **Possessive**; *e.g.* ἡ Δᾱρείου στρατιά, *the army of Darius.*

II. **Partitive** (*i.e.* the whole, of which a part is taken); *e.g.* τριάκοντα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, *thirty of the soldiers.*

III. **Subjective** (*i.e.* denoting the subject of an action); *e.g.* *ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος, the fear of the barbarians; i.e.* the fear felt *by the barbarians* toward some one else.

IV. **Objective** (*i.e.* denoting the object of an action); *e.g.* *ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος, the fear of the barbarians; i.e.* the fear felt *toward the barbarians* by some one else.

69. RULE. — **The *dative* may denote various relations, some of which are as follows: —**

I. **It stands as the *indirect object* of verbs;** *e.g.* *μνᾶν τῷ νεᾱνίᾳ πέμπει, he sends a mina to the young man.*

NOTE. — Intransitive verbs with a dative of indirect object are used in Greek in many cases where the English employs transitives. Such verbs are those signifying *benefit, help, defend, serve, trust, obey,* and their opposites; also some verbs denoting a *disposition toward* a person, such as *be angry, envy, threaten,* etc.; *e.g.* *ἐπίστευε Κύρῳ ἡ στρατιά, the army trusted Cyrus; οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, the soldiers were angry with the generals.*

II. **It expresses the person or thing to whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* anything tends;** *e.g.* *ἐφύλαττον τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ ἁρμοστῇ, they were guarding the province for the harmost.*

70. RULE. — **Duration of time and extent of space are denoted by the accusative**[1]; *e.g.* *ἤλαυνον τριάκοντα ἡμέρᾱς, they were marching thirty days.*

71. The *masculine* of the **definite article** (*the*) is thus declined: —

Sing. Nom. ὁ	Dual N. A. V. τώ	Plur. Nom. οἱ
Gen. τοῦ	G. D. τοῖν	Gen. τῶν
Dat. τῷ		Dat. τοῖς
Acc. τόν		Acc. τούς

[1] It will be noticed that all the uses of cases so far mentioned are identical with the Latin constructions.

72. **Vocabulary.**

διώκω, *pursue.*
ἐλαύνω, *drive, march.*
ἔχω (imperfect εἶχον[1]), *have, hold.*
μένω, *remain.*
πείθω, *persuade.*
πιστεύω, *trust.*
φεύγω, *flee.*
φυλάττω, *guard.*
χαλεπαίνω, *be angry.*
ἀνάγκη, *necessity.*
ἀνάγκῃ (adv.), *of necessity, necessarily.*
ἀπορίᾱ, *difficulty.*
ἁρμοστής, *harmost, governor.*
ἀρχή, *beginning; rule, province.*
γνώμη, *opinion, judgment.*
θύρᾱ, *door.*
πορείᾱ, *journey.*
σατράπης, *satrap.*
σωτηρίᾱ, *safety.*
τοξότης, *bowman, archer.*
φόβος, *fear.*
φυλακή, *watch, garrison.*
ὥρᾱ, *time, proper time, season.*
δῆλος, *evident.*
οὐ, οὐκ,[2] οὐχ, } *not.*
ἐπεί, conj., *when, since.*

73. TRANSLATE: 1. ὁ τῆς φυλακῆς[3] φόβος δῆλος οὐκ[2] ἦν τοῖς νεᾱνίαις ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, ἐπεὶ τοὺς τοξότᾱς ἐδίωκον. 2. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔπειθε τὸν στρατηγὸν τριᾰ́κοντα ἡμέρᾱς μένειν, ἵνα τὴν ἀρχὴν φυλάττοι. 3. ὥρᾱ ἐστὶ θύειν Ἑρμῇ, ἵνα ἡ φυλακὴ σωτηρίᾱν ἔχῃ. 4. κελεύετε τοὺς πελταστὰς εἰς τὰς τῆς οἰκίᾱς[3] θύρᾱς ἐλαύνειν. 5. ἀνάγκῃ οἱ ὁπλῖται Κύρῳ ἐπίστευον. 6. τριᾰ́κοντα μνᾶς οἴκαδε ἐκ τῆς Ξέρξου[3] ἀρχῆς πέμπει Κῦρος. 7. ἡ τοῦ σατράπου[3] γνώμη ἦν διώκειν τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκ τῆς γῆς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. 8. τί ὁ στρατιώτης τὴν ἄμαξαν εἰς τὴν κώμην οὐκ[2] ἦγεν; 9. καὶ αὖθις ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὐκ[2] ἔμενεν, ἵνα λύοι τὰς σπονδάς.

---

[1] An irregular augment.

[2] *οὐκ* is written for *οὐ* before a word in the same sentence having the smooth breathing; *οὐχ*, before one having the rough.

[3] Observe that every genitive, *except the partitive*, is often placed between the noun it modifies and the article belonging to it.

74. TRANSLATE: 1. The opinion of the bowmen was in[1] favor[1] of[1] breaking[1] the truce. 2. Why did not Darius wish to march into the province? 3. Let the general command the soldiers to flee from the market-place. 4. It is time, O harmost, to lead the soldiers into the village, in order that they may have safety within. 5. The king remained of necessity in the province, because the difficulties were many.[2] 6. Cyrus ordered the peltast to strike the doors of the house violently. 7. On the journey the men used[3] to carry[3] the tents for Xerxes. 8. Let the bowmen remain, in order that the harmost of the country may receive punishment.

Optional Exercises.

I. 1. τί ἤθελον οἱ ὁπλῖται εἰς τὰς τοῦ ἁρμοστοῦ κώμᾱς ἐλαύνειν; 2. καὶ αὖθις ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἀπορίαι ἦσαν. 3. ὁ τῶν στρατιωτῶν φόβος τῇ σατράπῃ ἐστὶ δῆλος. 4. οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμενον ἵνα τὰς σπονδὰς λύοιεν. 5. Κῦρος τοῖς στρατιώταις ἰσχῡρῶς ἐχαλέπαινεν, ἐπεὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῇ κώμῃ καὶ τὴν Δᾱρείου στρατιὰν οὐκ ἐδίωκον.

II. 1. He ordered the peltasts to flee from the market-place. 2. It was not time for the archers of the garrison to march homeward. 3. The king remained here thirty days, in order that the harmost might receive punishment. 4. The gods make evident to Cyrus the safety of the army. 5. Let the peltast lead the army into the country of Darius.

---

[1] Use the infin. of λύω. [2] πολλαί. [3] See **41.**

CHAPTER VI.

PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE OF CONTRACT VERBS.

75. Verbs in -άω, -έω, *and* **-όω** *are contracted*[1] *in the present system.* The following paradigms of τῑμάω, *honor*, φιλέω, *love*, and δηλόω, *make evident*, illustrate their peculiarities: —

Present Indicative.

Sing.	1	τῑμ(άω)ῶ	φιλ(έω)ῶ	δηλ(όω)ῶ
	2	τῑμ(άεις)ᾷς	φιλ(έεις)εῖς	δηλ(όεις)οῖς
	3	τῑμ(άει)ᾷ	φιλ(έει)εῖ	δηλ(όει)οῖ
Dual	2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶτον	φιλ(έε)εῖτον	δηλ(όε)οῦτον
	3	τῑμ(άε)ᾶτον	φιλ(έε)εῖτον	δηλ(όε)οῦτον
Plur.	1	τῑμ(άο)ῶμεν	φιλ(έο)οῦμεν	δηλ(όο)οῦμεν
	2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶτε	φιλ(έε)εῖτε	δηλ(όε)οῦτε
	3	τῑμ(άου)ῶσι	φιλ(έου)οῦσι	δηλ(όου)οῦσι

Imperfect Indicative.

Sing.	1	ἐτῑμ(αον)ων	ἐφιλ(εον)ουν	ἐδήλ(οον)ουν
	2	ἐτῑμ(αες)ας	ἐφιλ(εες)εις	ἐδήλ(οες)ους
	3	ἐτῑμ(αε)α	ἐφιλ(εε)ει	ἐδήλ(οε)ου
Dual	2	ἐτῑμ(άε)ᾶτον	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖτον	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦτον
	3	ἐτῑμ(αέ)άτην	ἐφιλ(εέ)είτην	ἐδηλ(οέ)ούτην
Plur.	1	ἐτῑμ(άο)ῶμεν	ἐφιλ(έο)οῦμεν	ἐδηλ(όο)οῦμεν
	2	ἐτῑμ(άε)ᾶτε	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖτε	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦτε
	3	ἐτῑμ(αον)ων	ἐφιλ(εον)ουν	ἐδήλ(οον)ουν

[1] For the Rules of Contraction, see **77–79.**

Present Subjunctive.

		τῑμ(άω)ῶ	φιλ(έω)ῶ	δηλ(όω)ῶ
Sing.	1	τῑμ(άω)ῶ	φιλ(έω)ῶ	δηλ(όω)ῶ
	2	τῑμ(άῃς)ᾷς	φιλ(έῃς)ῇς	δηλ(όῃς)οῖς
	3	τῑμ(άῃ)ᾷ	φιλ(έῃ)ῇ	δηλ(όῃ)οῖ
Dual	2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶτον	φιλ(έη)ῆτον	δηλ(όη)ῶτον
	3	τῑμ(άη)ᾶτον	φιλ(έη)ῆτον	δηλ(όη)ῶτον
Plur.	1	τῑμ(άω)ῶμεν	φιλ(έω)ῶμεν	δηλ(όω)ῶμεν
	2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶτε	φιλ(έη)ῆτε	δηλ(όη)ῶτε
	3	τῑμ(άω)ῶσι	φιλ(έω)ῶσι	δηλ(όω)ῶσι

Present Optative.

		τῑμ(άοι)ῷμι	φιλ(έοι)οῖμι	δηλ(όοι)οῖμι
Sing.	1	τῑμ(άοι)ῷμι	φιλ(έοι)οῖμι	δηλ(όοι)οῖμι
	2	τῑμ(άοις)ῷς	φιλ(έοις)οῖς	δηλ(όοις)οῖς
	3	τῑμ(άοι)ῷ	φιλ(έοι)οῖ	δηλ(όοι)οῖ
Dual	2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷτον	φιλ(έοι)οῖτον	δηλ(όοι)οῖτον
	3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴτην	φιλ(εοί)οίτην	δηλ(οοί)οίτην
Plur.	1	τῑμ(άοι)ῷμεν	φιλ(έοι)οῖμεν	δηλ(όοι)οῖμεν
	2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷτε	φιλ(έοι)οῖτε	δηλ(όοι)οῖτε
	3	τῑμ(άοι)ῷεν	φιλ(έοι)οῖεν	δηλ(όοι)οῖεν

or[1]

		τῑμ(αοί)ῴην[2]	φιλ(εοί)οίην	δηλ(οοί)οίην
Sing.	1	τῑμ(αοί)ῴην[2]	φιλ(εοί)οίην	δηλ(οοί)οίην
	2	τῑμ(αοί)ῴης	φιλ(εοί)οίης	δηλ(οοί)οίης
	3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴη	φιλ(εοί)οίη	δηλ(οοί)οίη
Dual	2	τῑμ(αοί)ῴητον	φιλ(εοί)οίητον	δηλ(οοί)οίητον
	3	τῑμ(αοι)ῳήτην	φιλ(εοι)οιήτην	δηλ(οοι)οιήτην
Plur.	1	τῑμ(αοί)ῴημεν	φιλ(εοί)οίημεν	δηλ(οοί)οίημεν
	2	τῑμ(αοί)ῴητε	φιλ(εοί)οίητε	δηλ(οοί)οίητε
	3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴησαν	φιλ(εοί)οίησαν	δηλ(οοί)οίησαν

[1] The former inflection is more common in the dual and plural, the latter in the singular.

[2] See **42** *b*.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

Sing. 2	τίμ(αε)ᾶ	φίλ(εε)ει	δήλ(οε)ου
3	τῑμ(αέ)άτω	φιλ(εέ)είτω	δηλ(οέ)ούτω
Dual 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶτον	φιλ(έε)εῖτον	δηλ(όε)οῦτον
3	τῑμ(αέ)ᾰ́των	φιλ(εέ)είτων	δηλ(οέ)ούτων
Plur. 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶτε	φιλ(έε)εῖτε	δηλ(όε)οῦτε
3	τῑμ(αό)ώντων	φιλ(εό)ούντων	δηλ(οό)ούντων

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

	τῑμ(άειν)ᾶν	φιλ(έειν)εῖν	δηλ(όειν)οῦν

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Masc.	τῑμ(άων)ῶν	φιλ(έων)ῶν	δηλ(όων)ῶν
Fem.	τῑμ(άου)ῶσα	φιλ(έου)οῦσα	δηλ(όου)οῦσα
Neut.	τῑμ(άον)ῶν	φιλ(έον)οῦν	δηλ(όον)οῦν

SUGGESTIONS.

I. *Form.*

76. Observe that: —

Except in some forms of the optative, the contract verbs are inflected like λύω; but they are contracted in accordance with the following

RULES FOR CONTRACTION.

77. A short vowel before a diphthong beginning with the same vowel or before a corresponding long vowel is absorbed; *e.g.* (φιλέεις) φιλεῖς and (δηλόουσι) δηλοῦσι and (φιλέητον) φιλῆτον.

78. *a.*

ο and ε	ε and ε	and ε and οι
ε " ο	ε " ι	ο " ει
ο " ο	become ει,	ο " η
ε " ου	ε + ε ι = ε ι	become οι;
become ου,		
ο + ο υ = ο υ	ο υ + υ = ῡ	ο ι + υ = υ ι

but otherwise:—

b. If an *a*-sound and an *e*-sound (ε or η) come together, that sound which stands first prevails, and ᾱ or η results; *e.g.* τῑμάετον becomes τῑμᾶτον;

and

c. If an *a*-sound or an *e*-sound comes together with an *o*-sound (ο, ου, or ω), the *o*-sound (whether first or last) prevails, and ω results; *e.g.*

φιλέων	becomes	φιλῶν,
δηλόητε	"	δηλῶτε,
τῑμάου	"	τῑμῶ.

d. An ι (including ι subscript) in the uncontracted form appears as a subscript in the contract, except in the infinitive; *e.g.*

τῑμάεις	becomes	τῑμᾷς,
and τῑμαοίην	"	τῑμῴην,
but τῑμάειν	"	τῑμᾶν.

e. On the same principle of not considering ι in the infinitive (see *d*), δηλόειν becomes δηλοῦν.

II. *Accent.*

79. Observe that:—

If either of the syllables contracted has an accent, the resulting syllable has the circumflex, when this is possible (see **18** *c* and *b*); otherwise the word is accented according to the general rules; *e.g.* (τῑμάω) τῑμῶ, (τῑμάοιτον) τῑμῷτον, (τῑμαοίτην) τῑμῴτην, (ἐδήλοε) ἐδήλου.

80. Rule. — **The *genitive* also expresses:—**

I. **Price**; *e.g.* πείθει τὴν στρατιὰν τριάκοντα μνῶν, *he persuades the army for thirty minas.*

II. **Characteristic**; *e.g.* οἱ στρατιῶται τῆς αὐτῆς γνώμης ἦσαν, *the soldiers were of the same mind.*

81. Observe that the genitive of characteristic is always a **predicate genitive** (*i.e.* it forms an attribute complement

to the verb *be*); and that possessive, partitive, objective, and other genitives may sometimes be predicate genitives.

82. RULE. — **An accusative that repeats the idea of the verb on which it depends is called a *cognate accusative*;** *e.g.* *τὴν αὐτὴν μάχην μάχεται*, *he fights the same battle*, or even *μάχᾱς νῑκᾶτε*, *you win* (lit. *conquer*) *battles.*

83. **Vocabulary.**

ἀδικέω, *wrong, injure.*
αἱρέω, *take, seize.*
ἀπορέω, *be in difficulty, be perplexed.*
ἐρωτάω, *ask.*
κωλύω, *prevent, hinder.*
νῑκάω, *conquer.*
πολεμέω, *make war.*
τοξεύω, *shoot (with the bow).*
φυλάττω, *guard.*
φυλακὰς φυλάττω, *keep watch.*
λόγχη, *spear.*
νάπη, *ravine, glen.*
νίκη, *victory.*
πηγή, *fountain;* plur., *sources.*
στρατιώτης, *soldier.*
ἀεί, adv., *always.*
ἤ, conj., *or; than.*
ἀπό, prep. with gen., *from, away from.*

84. TRANSLATE: 1. *τοξεύουσα ἡ τοῦ ἁρμοστοῦ φυλακὴ τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς ἀνάγκῃ ἐνίκᾱ.* 2. *ἡ γυνὴ ἀποροῦσα ἐρωτᾷ Δᾱρεῖον.* 3. *ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀεὶ ἠδίκει τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς.* 4. *τῶν λογχῶν τριάκοντα ἀπὸ τῆς σκηνῆς ᾔρουν καὶ Κῦρος ἰσχῡρῶς ἐχαλέπαινεν.* 5. *ἐπεὶ Κῦρος τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς οὐ κωλύει φεύγειν,*[1] *οἱ τοξόται φυλακὰς φυλαττόντων.* 6. *ἔπειθε τριάκοντα μνῶν ὁ σατράπης τὸν στρατιώτην ἀδικεῖν τοὺς νεᾱνίᾱς.* 7. *οἱ θεοὶ ἐδήλουν τῷ σατράπῃ τὴν τῶν πελταστῶν σωτηρίᾱν.* 8. *τῆς αὐτῆς γνώμης οὐκ ἦσαν οἱ στρατιῶται.* 9. *τὸν ἁρμοστὴν ἢ τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐρώτᾱ*

[1] The infin. is used with verbs meaning *prevent.*

ἢ = or

τί τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς ἐκ τῆς γῆς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἐδίωκον. 10. αἱ πηγαὶ οὐκ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ νάπῃ. 11. τὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν νίκην ὁ σατράπης Κύρῳ δηλοῖ.

85. TRANSLATE: 1. When the satrap was making war upon[1] Xerxes,[1] he kept seizing the villages. 2. The fear of Hermes prevents Darius from[2] injuring[2] the army. 3. Since the gods make evident the difficulties of the journey, Cyrus wishes to remain in the province thirty days. 4. The soldiers have (possession of)[3] the country and are destroying the bridges. 5. He commands the bowmen to shoot, in order that they may conquer the satrap. 6. It was time to command the soldiers to keep watch, in order that Xerxes might not[4] seize the village. 7. Honor the hoplites, Xerxes. 8. Darius wishes the peltasts to take the doors from the houses. 9. They wished to prevent Xerxes from[2] trusting[2] the soldiers or honoring[2] the satrap. 10. The king always loved the soldier, and made (it)[3] evident.

CHAPTER VII.

SECOND DECLENSION.

86. Most nouns of the *second*, or **O-Declension** (see **51**), with the nominative in *-ος* are *masculine*. All with the nominative in *-ον* are *neuter*.

---

[1] Dat. of indir. obj.
[2] See p. 29, foot-note.
[3] Not to be translated.
[4] Use *μή* (see **122** *a*).

87. The following paradigms illustrate the peculiarities of the *second declension*: —

	φίλος, *friend*	ἄνθρωπος, *man*	ὁδός, *road*	δῶρον, *gift*
Sing., Nom.	φίλος	ἄνθρωπος	ὁδός	δῶρον
Gen.	φίλου	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	δώρου
Dat.	φίλῳ	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	δώρῳ
Acc.	φίλον	ἄνθρωπον	ὁδόν	δῶρον
Voc.	φίλε	ἄνθρωπε	ὁδέ	δῶρον
Dual, N. A. V.	φίλω	ἀνθρώπω	ὁδώ	δώρω
G. D.	φίλοιν	ἀνθρώποιν	ὁδοῖν	δώροιν
Plur., Nom. Voc.	φίλοι	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	δῶρα
Gen.	φίλων	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	δώρων
Dat.	φίλοις	ἀνθρώποις	ὁδοῖς	δώροις
Acc.	φίλους	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδούς	δῶρα

Suggestions.

88. Observe that: —

a. The rules for accent given in **57** *a*, *b*, and *c*, apply also to the second declension.

b. The *-a* of the nom. plur. of the neut. is short, as shown by the accent of δῶρα.

Feminines.

89. In Greek, as in Latin, most names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees* are feminine. So in the second declension, such words as Αἴγυπτος (*Egypt*), Ἔφεσος (*Ephesus*), and Πελοπόννησος (*Peloponnesus*) are feminine.

90. *Other feminines* of the second declension, like ὁδός (*road*) and τάφρος (*ditch*), must be learned by observation.

Contract Nouns.

91. Nouns of the second declension having stems in *-εο-* or *-οο-* are contracted throughout.

92. The following paradigms illustrate the peculiarities of *contract nouns*, masculine and neuter, of the *second declension*: —

	(νόος) **νοῦς**, *mind*	(ὀστέον) **ὀστοῦν**, *bone*
Sing., Nom.	(νόος) **νοῦς**	(ὀστέον) **ὀστοῦν**
Gen.	(νόου) **νοῦ**	(ὀστέου) **ὀστοῦ**
Dat.	(νόῳ) **νῷ**	(ὀστέῳ) **ὀστῷ**
Acc.	(νόον) **νοῦν**	(ὀστέον) **ὀστοῦν**
Voc.	(νόε) **νοῦ**	(ὀστέον) **ὀστοῦν**
Dual, N. A. V.	(νόω) **νώ**	(ὀστέω) **ὀστώ**
G. D.	(νόοιν) **νοῖν**	(ὀστέοιν) **ὀστοῖν**
Plur., N. V.	(νόοι) **νοῖ**	(ὀστέα) **ὀστᾶ**
Gen.	(νόων) **νῶν**	(ὀστέων) **ὀστῶν**
Dat.	(νόοις) **νοῖς**	(ὀστέοις) **ὀστοῖς**
Acc.	(νόους) **νοῦς**	(ὀστέα) **ὀστᾶ**

Suggestion.

93. Observe that: —

Every case, except the first form in the dual, is perispomenon.

Attic Declension.

94. The second declension has some nouns with stems in *-ω-*. The following paradigm of (ὁ) **νεώς** (*temple*) illustrates their peculiarities: —

Sing., N. V.	νεώς	Dual, N. A. V.	νεώ	Plur., N. V.	νεῴ
Gen.	νεώ	G. D.	νεῴν	Gen.	νεών
Dat.	νεῴ			Dat.	νεῴς
Acc.	νεών			Acc.	νεώς

Suggestions.

95. Observe that: —

a. Each case of νεώς, even the gen. and dat. (contrary to **57** *c*), is oxytone.

b. Each case contains ω, and an ι appears as subscript wherever there is an ι in the regular paradigm (**87**), whether subscript or not.

The Article.

96. The Greek, like the Latin, has no *indefinite article* (*a* or *an*).

97. The neuter, as well as the masculine (see **71**), of the *definite article* is declined on the principles of the second declension. For the feminine, see **58**. The whole declension is: —

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Sing., N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	Dual, N. A.	τώ	τώ	τώ	Plur., N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	G. D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν	Gen.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ					Dat.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Acc.	τόν	τήν	τό					Acc.	τούς	τάς	τά

Suggestions.

98. Observe that: —

a. The masc. and the fem. nom. of both sing. and plur. have neither τ nor accent, but all other forms have τ.

b. The gen. and dat. of all numbers are perispomenon.

99. RULE. — **In Greek a neuter plural subject usually takes a singular verb;** *e.g.* ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ τὰ δῶρα ἦν, *the gifts were in the tent.*

100. RULE. — **The genitive sometimes expresses *measure*;** *e.g.* τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ εὖρος ἦν πλέθρου *the width of the river was a plethrum.*

101. RULE. — **The accusative of *specification* is used to specify in what respect an expression applies;** *e.g.* ὁ ποταμὸς εὖρος[1] ἦν πλέθρου, *the river was a plethrum in width.*

102. **Vocabulary.**

θέω (impf. ἔθεον[2]), *run.*
καΐω (or καίω), *burn, set fire to.*
ῥέω,[2] *flow.*
θεός, ὁ or ἡ, *god* or *goddess.*
ἵππος, ὁ or ἡ, *horse* or *mare.*
λόχος, *company.*
λοχᾱγός, *captain.*
νοῦς, *mind.*
ἐν νῷ ἔχω, *have in mind, intend.*
οἶκος, *house.*
παρασάγγης, *parasang* (three and one-third miles).
πεδίον, *plain.*
πλέθρον, *plethrum* (one hundred feet).
πλοῖον, *boat.*
ποταμός, *river.*
σταθμός, *station, stage, a day's journey.*
στρατηγός, *general.*
στρατός, *army.*
τόξον, *bow.*
ἕξ, *six.*
ἐντεῦθεν, adv., *thence.*
ὅπῃ, relative adv., *how, whither.*

103. TRANSLATE: 1. οἱ στρατιῶται Ξέρξην οὐκ ἀεὶ ἐφίλουν καὶ ἐτίμων. 2. τί ἐν νῷ ἔχει ὁ ἄνθρωπος; 3. ἐντεῦθεν ἐλαύνουσιν οἱ τῶν στρατιωτῶν λοχᾱγοὶ σταθμοὺς ἓξ παρασάγγᾱς τριάκοντα εἰς ποταμόν, εὖρος πλέθρου. 4. ἐν τῇ εἰς Ἔφεσον ὁδῷ ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ἐκέλευε τοὺς τῶν ὁπλιτῶν φίλους θύειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐν τοῖς τῶν

[1] Acc., a neuter of the third declension (see **277**).

[2] Dissyllabic verbs in -εω remain uncontracted, except that εε and εει become ει.

θεῶν νεώς. 5. τὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τόξα ἦν ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις. 6. ἐξ Ἐφέσου δῶρα ἀεὶ ἔπεμπεν εἰς τὴν Πελοπόννησον τῷ ἁρμοστῇ /ἢ/ τῷ στρατηγῷ. 7. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν νῷ εἶχε τῷ στρατῷ τὸν τῶν βαρβάρων φόβον δηλοῦν. 8. ὁ σατράπης ἐκώλῡε τοὺς λόχους κᾶειν[1] τοὺς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ οἴκους. 9. ἐκ τῆς νάπης ῥεῖ ὁ ποταμὸς εἰς τὰς τάφρους. 10. νίκην νῑκῶσιν οἱ τοξόται καὶ οὐ φεύγουσιν. 11. οὐχ[2] οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῆς αὐτῆς γνώμης ἦσαν;

104. TRANSLATE: 1. The bones of the general were in the temple of Hermes. 2. The harmost, being in difficulty, asked whither Cyrus was marching. 3. Let them take the spears of the men from the tents and make war on[3] the[3] friends[3] of the satrap. 4. The soldiers ran a parasang to the sources of the river. 5. Seize the bows of the soldiers, since they are injuring the satrap. 6. The companies stand guard in the village. 7. Thence the generals march thirty days' journey to a plain. 8. Why do the bowmen intend to shoot? 9. The friend of the general drove home the six mares. 10. The captain makes[4] known[4] to Cyrus the victory of the soldiers.

---

[1] See p. 29, foot-note.

[2] οὐ in questions indicates an affirmative answer; cf. Lat. *nonne*. See also p. 23, foot-note 2.

[3] Use simple dat.; see **69**, I, Note.

[4] Use δηλόω.

CHAPTER VIII.

REVIEW.

105. In reviewing the vocabulary, *try to connect words with one another*, rather than to learn them as separate units, since this will greatly lighten the work. Associate new words with those already learned, or with English derivatives or Latin cognates. For example, *στράτευμα*, *στρατηγός*, *στρατιά*, and *στρατιώτης* will be easily grouped around a common root; *theology*, *philanthropy*, *strategy*, will assist the memory in the case of *θεός*, *λόγος*, *φιλέω*, *ἄνθρωπος*, *στρατηγός*; and *maneo*, *fugio*, *ab*, *ex* will help the student to remember *μένω*, *φεύγω*, *ἀπό*, *ἐκ* (*ἐξ*). English derivatives will be given in the vocabulary at the end of the book.

106. **Review of Vocabulary.**

1. *ἀγορά*.[1] 2. *ἄγω*. 3. *ἀδικέω*. 4. *ἀεί*. 5. *αἱρέω*. 6. *ἀκούω*. 7. *ἄμαξα*. 8. *ἀνάγκη*. 9. *ἄνθρωπος*. 10. *ἀπό*. 11. *ἀπορέω*. 12. *ἀπορίᾱ*. 13. *ἁρμοστής*. 14. *ἀρχή*. 15. *αὖθις*. 16. *βάρβαρος*. 17. *βασιλεύς*. 18. *βίᾱ*. 19. *βουλεύω*. 20. *γέφῡρα*. 21. *γῆ*. 22. *γνώμη*. 23. *γυνή*. 24. *δῆλος*. 25. *δηλόω*. 26. *δίκη*. 27. *διώκω*. 28. *δῶρον*. 29. *ἐθέλω*. 30. *εἰς*. 31. *ἐκ* (*ἐξ*). 32. *ἐλαύνω*. 33. *ἐν*. 34. *ἔνδον*. 35. *ἐνταῦθα*. 36. *ἐντεῦθεν*. 37. *ἔξ*. 38. *ἐπεί*. 39. *ἐρωτάω*. 40. *εὖρος*. 41. *ἔχω*. 42. *ἤ*. 43. *ἥκω*. 44. *ἡμέρᾱ*. 45. *θάλαττα*. 46. *θεός*. 47. *θέω*. 48. *θύρᾱ*. 49. *θύω*. 50. *ἵνα*. 51. *ἵππος*. 52. *ἰσχῡρῶς*. 53. *κᾶω*. 54. *κελεύω*. 55. *κωλῡ́ω*. 56. *κώμη*. 57. *λόγος*. 58. *λόγχη*. 59. *λοχᾱγός*. 60. *λόχος*. 61. *λῡ́ω*. 62. *μάχη*. 63. *μένω*.

[1] Be sure of the gender of all nouns.

64. μνᾶ. 65. νάπη. 66. νεᾱνίᾱς. 67. νεώς. 68. νῑκάω. 69. νίκη. 70. νοῦς. 71. ὁδός. 72. οἴκαδε. 73. οἰκίᾱ. 74. οἶκοι. 75. οἶκος. 76. ὅπῃ. 77. ὁπλίτης. 78. ὄρος. 79. ὀστοῦν. 80. οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ). 81. παῖς. 82. παίω. 83. παρασάγγης. 84. πεδίον. 85. πείθω. 86. πελταστής. 87. πέμπω. 88. πηγή. 89. πιστεύω. 90. πλέθρον. 91. πλοῖον. 92. πολεμέω. 93. πόλεμος. 94. πορείᾱ. 95. ποταμός. 96. πύλη. 97. ῥέω. 98. σατράπης. 99. σκηνή. 100. σπονδή. 101. σταθμός. 102. στράτευμα. 103. στρατηγός. 104. στρατιά. 105. στρατιώτης. 106. στρατός. 107. σῴζω. 108. σωτηρίᾱ. 109. τάφρος. 110. τί (τίς). 111. τῑμάω. 112. τοξεύω. 113. τόξον. 114. τοξότης. 115. τριᾰ́κοντα. 116. φεύγω. 117. φιλέω. 118. φίλος. 119. φόβος. 120. φυλακή. 121. φυλάττω. 122. χαλεπαίνω. 123. χώρᾱ. 124. ὥρᾱ.

107. Review the **paradigms** of the last seven chapters: —

a. *First Declension*, feminines, **54–57,**
masculines, **62–64,**
contracts, **65–67.**
b. *Second Declension*, regular, **87–88,**
contracts, **91–93,**
Attic, **94–95.**
c. *Article*, **96–98.**
d. *Present System Active*, of λύω, **40–42,**
of contract verbs, **75–79.**

108. Review the rules of **syntax** in the last chapters: —

a. *Nominative Case*, subject, **26.**
b. *Genitive Case*, possessive, **68,** I.,
partitive, **68,** II.,
subjective, **68,** III.,

objective, **68,** IV.,
price, **80,** I.,
characteristic, **80,** II.,
measure, **100.**

c. Dative Case, indirect object, **69,** I.,
advantage, **69,** II.

d. Accusative Case, direct object, **28,**
duration of time, **70,**
specification, **101,**
cognate, **82,**
subject of infinitive, **46.**

e. Apposition, **29.**

f. Agreement of the Verb, regular, **27,**
neuter plural, **99.**

g. Final Clauses, **47.**

109. *In translating from Greek into English:* —

I. First read the Greek aloud, that the ear may assist the eye, and that the thought may come through the original.

II. When a word does not seem familiar, do not turn to the vocabulary or to notes of any sort, until all the resources acquired have been used. Try to recall the word; but if quite sure that it is new, infer its meaning from its apparent relation to words already known or from the context, and then look it up.

110. TRANSLATE: 1. ἡ γυνὴ δῶρα πέμπει τῷ ἁρμοστῇ, ἵνα σῴζῃ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 2. τί ἤθελεν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς; 3. ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἦν καὶ ἠδίκει, ἵνα τριάκοντα μνᾶς ἔχοι. 4. ἐρώτᾱ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τί τὸν νεᾱνίᾱν παίει. 5. οὐκ ἔμενον οἱ πελτασταὶ ἀνάγκῃ ἐν τῇ τοῦ σατράπου ἀρχῇ;

CHAPTER IX.

PRESENT SYSTEM, MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

111. The **middle voice** represents the subject as acting upon himself or for himself.

112. The **direct middle** represents the subject as acting directly *upon himself;* the **indirect middle** as acting *for himself*, or *with reference to himself* in some way; *e.g.* act. *πορεύω*, *I convey*, mid. *πορεύομαι*, *I convey myself*, i.e. *I proceed;* act. *μεταπέμπω*, *I send for*, mid. *μεταπέμπομαι*, *I send for (one to come) to myself*, i.e. *I summon.*

NOTE. — The indirect middle is much more common than the direct. It is often difficult to distinguish any difference in meaning between it and the active.

113. The **personal endings** of the *middle* and *passive* are: —

	PRIMARY ENDINGS.			SECONDARY ENDINGS.		
	S.	D.	P.	S.	D.	P.
1	-μαι		-μεθα	-μην		-μεθα
2	-σαι	-σθον	-σθε	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3	-ται	-σθον	-νται	-το	-σθην	-ντο

114. In the second person singular, *-σαι* or *-σο*, the *σ* is usually dropped and the *-αι* or *-ο* contracts with the final vowel of the tense-stem; *e.g.* *λύει*, 2d sing., pres. ind., is for *λῡε-σαι*; and *ἐλύου* of the impf. is for *ἐλῡε-σο.*

115. The following paradigm contains the inflection of the middle voice in the present system (see **41**) : —

PRESENT SYSTEM MIDDLE.

(Formed on present stem λῡ%-.)

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.
	Present.	**Imperfect.**	**Present.**
Sing. 1	λύομαι, *I loose for*	ἐλῡόμην, *I loosed*	λύωμαι, *I may loose*
2	λύει [*myself* or	ἐλύου [*for my-*	λύῃ [*for myself*
3	λύεται [*I loose* [*myself.*	ἐλύετο [*self* or *I* [*loosed myself.*	λύηται [or *I may* [*loose myself.*
Dual 2	λύεσθον	ἐλύεσθον	λύησθον
3	λύεσθον	ἐλῡέσθην	λύησθον
Plur. 1	λῡόμεθα	ἐλῡόμεθα	λῡώμεθα
2	λύεσθε	ἐλύεσθε	λύησθε
3	λύονται	ἐλύοντο	λύωνται

	Optative.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
	Present.	**Present.**	**Present.**
Sing. 1	λῡοίμην, *I might loose*		λύεσθαι, *to loose oneself.*
2	λύοιο [*for myself*	λύου, *loose yourself.*	
3	λύοιτο [or *I might* [*loose myself.*	λῡέσθω, *let him loose* [*himself.*	Pres. Participle.
Dual 2	λύοισθον	λύεσθον	
3	λῡοίσθην	λῡέσθων	*loosing oneself.*
Plur. 1	λῡοίμεθα		
2	λύοισθε	λύεσθε	*Masc.* λῡόμενος
3	λύοιντο	λῡέσθωσαν or λῡέσθων	*Fem.* λῡομένη
			Neut. λῡόμενον

Suggestions.

116. Observe that: —

a. The subjv. has the personal endings of the primary tenses (see **113**), while the opt. has those of the secondary tenses. This holds good for all tenses of these moods in all voices (cf. **42** *c*).

b. The subjv. forms are like the ind., except that they lengthen the thematic vowel (see **42** *a*).

c. The 2d sing. of the subjv., opt., and imv. are respectively for λῡ́η-σαι, λῡ́οι-σο, and λῡ́ε-σο (see **114**).

Present System Passive.

117. The **passive voice** represents the subject as acted upon. The forms of the passive voice are identical with those of the middle, except in the *future* and *aorist*[1] tenses. The paradigm in **115**, therefore, serves also for the present system passive of λύω, and λύομαι, ἐλῡόμην, etc., may be translated *I am loosed*, *I was loosed*, etc.

118. Rule. — **The imperative expresses a direct command**; *e.g.* παῖε μέν, ἄκουε δέ, *strike, but hear (me)*.

119. Rule. — **The first person of the subjunctive may express an exhortation** (i.e. *a mild command*). **If the exhortation is negative, μή** (*not*) **is used.** *E.g.* θύωμεν, *let us sacrifice*; μὴ ἐλαύνωμεν, *let us not march*.

120. Rule. — **The *circumstantial participle* expresses some circumstance connected with the action of the main verb. It denotes the cause, manner, means, time, purpose, or attendant circumstance of an action, or implies condition or concession**; *e.g.* ἐθέλων τῷ σατράπῃ πείθεσθαι πέμπει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, *since he wishes*

[1] The aorist is the simple past tense; see **283**.

to obey the satrap, he sends the men; ὁ στρατιώτης θέων τοξεύει, *the soldier shoots while running;* ὁ στρατιώτης ἐθέλων ἐρχέσθω, *let the soldier come, if he wishes.*

The Negative.

121. There are two simple negatives, **οὐ** and **μή**. οὐ is used in direct (and quoted) statements, and with the verb presents *as a fact* that something is not the case. μή is used when the idea of the verb it modifies is presented as being something *aimed at*, *desired*, *commanded*, or *supposed*.

122. **μή**, therefore, is always used

a. in final and object clauses (see **47** and **273**),

b. in wishes, exhortations, and prohibitions (see **396**, **119**, and **288**),

c. in all conditional clauses and clauses of similar construction (see **516**),

d. with the conditional participle (see **120**);

and it is common with the infinitive.

123. **οὐ** is used in all other cases.

124. The same distinction applies to all *compound negatives; e.g.* οὐκέτι and μηκέτι, *no longer*.

125. Translate[1]: 1. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐν νῷ ἔχων πορεύεσθαι σταθμοὺς ἓξ παρασάγγᾱς τριάκοντα μεταπέμπεται τὸν[2] Κῦρον. 2. μὴ παυέσθω[1] ὁ στρατηγὸς

[1] All new words in this and the following exercise will be found in the vocabulary for this chapter (**135**).

[2] The article is often used with proper names in Greek, especially of persons well known or lately mentioned.

πολεμῶν[1] τῷ σατράπῃ. 3. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ἰσχῡρῶς χαλεπαίνουσα τῷ[2] φίλῳ ἀπέπεμπε τὰ δῶρα. 4. ἀπόπεμπε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἵνα ἐν πλοίοις τὸν στρατὸν μηκέτι πορεύωσιν. 5. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύετο εἰς πεδίον πλέθρων τριᾰκοντα εὖρος. 6. τὸν λοχᾱγὸν ἔπειθε κᾰ́ειν τοὺς οἴκους. 7. ὁ τῶν τοξοτῶν λοχᾱγὸς ἐν νῷ ἔχει τὴν γέφῡραν κᾰ́ειν. 8. αἱ τάφροι εὖρος ἦσαν πλέθρου.

126. TRANSLATE: 1. The wheat[3] and the wine of the enemy were still in the tents. 2. They came to the road, and asked whither the company was marching. 3. From the temple the river flows into the plain. 4. The soldiers took the bows from their[2] tents. 5. Let us no longer proceed homeward, general. 6. They summon the satrap from his[2] province.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

127. Most adjectives ending in **-ος** belong to the first and second declensions, and have the masculine and neuter of the second declension and the feminine of the first.

NOTE. — A few adjectives in *-ος*, mostly compounds, have only two endings, the masculine serving also for the feminine throughout; *e.g.* *ἄπορος* (M. and F.), *ἄπορον* (N.), *impassable.*

128. If *-ος* is preceded by *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ*, the feminine singular has **-ᾱ** throughout, otherwise **-η**; *e.g.* *ἄξιος*, *worthy*, and *μῑκρός*, *small*, have the feminines *ἄξῐᾱ* and *μῑκρᾱ́*, but *ἀγαθός*, *good*, has *ἀγαθή*.

---

[1] With *παύω*, *cause to cease*, the partic. is used in the acc., agreeing with the object, and with *παύομαι*, *cease*, the partic. is used in the nom., agreeing with the subject. See **441.**

[2] The article in agreement with a noun is often used in Greek when the English uses a possessive pronoun.

[3] See vocab., **135.**

129.

Sing. N.	ἄξιος	ἀξίᾱ	ἄξιον	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
G.	ἀξίου	ἀξίᾱς	ἀξίου	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
D.	ἀξίῳ	ἀξίᾳ	ἀξίῳ	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
A.	ἄξιον	ἀξίᾱν	ἄξιον	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
V.	ἄξιε	ἀξίᾱ	ἄξιον	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Dual N. A. V.	ἀξίω	ἀξίᾱ	ἀξίω	ἀγαθώ	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθώ
G. D.	ἀξίοιν	ἀξίαιν	ἀξίοιν	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν
Plur. N. V.	ἄξιοι	ἄξιαι	ἄξια	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
G.	ἀξίων	ἀξίων	ἀξίων	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
D.	ἀξίοις	ἀξίαις	ἀξίοις	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
A.	ἀξίους	ἀξίᾱς	ἄξια	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά

Suggestions.

130. Observe that: —

The same rules of accent as for nouns of the first and second declension (see **57** and **88**) apply to these adjectives, except that the gen. plur. of the fem. is not necessarily perispomenon (see **57** *d*).

131. Participles ending in *-ος* are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension; *e.g.* —

λῡ́ομενος, λῡομένη, λῡ́ομενον,
λῡομένου, λῡομένης, λῡομένου, etc.

132. Rule. — **Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the substantives, expressed or understood, which they modify**; *e.g.* τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ὁπλίταις οἱ κακοὶ πολέμιοι οὐ μάχονται, *the cowardly enemy do not fight with the brave hoplites*; ἡ γυνὴ ἦν καλή, *the woman was beautiful*; ἡ γυνὴ **τὸν** ὄχλον φοβουμένη ἔφευγεν, *the woman fled, since she feared the crowd*.

133. TRANSLATE: 1. οἱ μὲν[1] πελτασταὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ[1] τοξόται κακοί. 2. ὁ τῶν στρατιωτῶν φόβος δῆλος ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις. 3. μῑκρὰ μὲν ἦν ἡ γυνή, καλὴ δέ. 4. τὰ δὲ τοῦ λοχᾱγοῦ ἔργα καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἦν. 5. οὐκ ἄξιοι ἦσαν οἱ ἀγαθοὶ στρατηγοὶ τῆς φιλίᾱς τοῦ σατράπου; 6. οἱ Κύρου στρατιῶται οὐκέτι διώκουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν πορευομένους.

134. TRANSLATE: 1. The brave captains are worthy of the friendship of the general, but the governor, since[2] he[2] injures[2] the army, (is)[3] not worthy (of it).[3] 2. The captains tried[4] to[4] make[4] the general stop[4] fighting.[5] 3. The hostile deeds of the governor were evident to the satrap's friends. 4. The soldiers, obeying the general, ran to their[6] tents.

135. **Vocabulary.**

ἀποπέμπω, *send away, send back.*
ἔρχομαι, *come, go.*
μεταπέμπομαι, *send for, summon.*
παύω, *cause to cease, make* (one) *stop;* mid., *cease, stop.*
πείθω, *persuade;* mid., *obey.*
πορεύω, *convey;* mid., *proceed.*
ἔργον, *work, deed.*
οἶνος, *wine.*
πῦρός, usually used in plur., *wheat.*
φιλίᾱ, *friendship.*

ἀγαθός, *good, brave.*
κακός, *bad, cowardly.*
καλός, *beautiful, honorable.*
μῑκρός, *little, small.*
πολέμιος *hostile;* **οἱ πολέμιοι**, *the enemy.*
ἔτι, *yet, still.*
οὐκέτι[7] / **μηκέτι** } *no longer.*
μέν[8] . . . **δέ**, *on the one hand, on the other.*

---

[1] *μέν* and *δέ* are **post-positive;** *i.e.* they cannot stand first in the clause. They are generally second, sometimes third.

[2] See **120.** [3] Not to be translated. [4] See **41.**

[5] See p. 43, foot-note 1. [6] See p. 43, foot-note 2. [7] See **122–124.**

[8] These particles are used to contrast words. *μέν* is not to be rendered, except by emphasis. *δέ* is translated by *but, and,* and often occurs as a connective, without *μέν.*

CHAPTER X.

CONTRACT VERBS (PRESENT SYSTEM MIDDLE AND PASSIVE). — CONTRACT ADJECTIVES.

136. The following paradigms illustrate the present system of the middle and passive of contract verbs. The same rules for contraction and accent as in the active **(77–79)** apply here.

MIDDLE AND PASSIVE.

	Present Indicative.		
Sing. 1	τῑμ(άο)ῶμαι	φιλ(έο)οῦμαι	δηλ(όο)οῦμαι
2	τῑμ(άει)ᾷ	φιλ(έει)εῖ	δηλ(όει)οῖ
3	τῑμ(άε)ᾶται	φιλ(έε)εῖται	δηλ(όε)οῦται
Dual 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθον	φιλ(έε)εῖσθον	δηλ(όε)οῦσθον
3	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθον	φιλ(έε)εῖσθον	δηλ(όε)οῦσθον
Plur. 1	τῑμ(αό)ώμεθα	φιλ(εό)ούμεθα	δηλ(οό)ούμεθα
2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθε	φιλ(έε)εῖσθε	δηλ(όε)οῦσθε
3	τῑμ(άο)ῶνται	φιλ(έο)οῦνται	δηλ(όο)οῦνται

	Imperfect Indicative.		
Sing. 1	ἐτῑμ(αό)ώμην	ἐφιλ(εό)ούμην	ἐδηλ(οό)ούμην
2	ἐτῑμ(άου)ῶ	ἐφιλ(έου)οῦ	ἐδηλ(όου)οῦ
3	ἐτῑμ(άε)ᾶτο	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖτο	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦτο
Dual 2	ἐτῑμ(άε)ᾶσθον	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖσθον	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦσθον
3	ἐτῑμ(αέ)άσθην	ἐφιλ(εέ)είσθην	ἐδηλ(οέ)ούσθην
Plur. 1	ἐτῑμ(αό)ώμεθα	ἐφιλ(εό)ούμεθα	ἐδηλ(οό)ούμεθα
2	ἐτῑμ(άε)ᾶσθε	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖσθε	ἐδηλ(όε)οῦσθε
3	ἐτῑμ(άο)ῶντο	ἐφιλ(έο)οῦντο	ἐδηλ(όο)οῦντο

Present Subjunctive.

Sing. 1	τῑμ(άω)ῶμαι	φιλ(έω)ῶμαι	δηλ(όω)ῶμαι
2	τῑμ(άῃ)ᾷ	φιλ(έῃ)ῇ	δηλ(όῃ)οῖ
3	τῑμ(άη)ᾶται	φιλ(έη)ῆται	δηλ(όη)ῶται
Dual 2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶσθον	φιλ(έη)ῆσθον	δηλ(όη)ῶσθον
3	τῑμ(άη)ᾶσθον	φιλ(έη)ῆσθον	δηλ(όη)ῶσθον
Plur. 1	τῑμ(αώ)ώμεθα	φιλ(εώ)ώμεθα	δηλ(οώ)ώμεθα
2	τῑμ(άη)ᾶσθε	φιλ(έη)ῆσθε	δηλ(όη)ῶσθε
3	τῑμ(άω)ῶνται	φιλ(έω)ῶνται	δηλ(όω)ῶνται

Present Optative.

Sing. 1	τῑμ(αοί)ῴμην	φιλ(εοί)οίμην	δηλ(οοί)οίμην
2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷο	φιλ(έοι)οῖο	δηλ(όοι)οῖο
3	τῑμ(άοι)ῷτο	φιλ(έοι)οῖτο	δηλ(όοι)οῖτο
Dual 2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷσθον	φιλ(έοι)οῖσθον	δηλ(όοι)οῖσθον
3	τῑμ(αοί)ῴσθην	φιλ(εοί)οίσθην	δηλ(οοί)οίσθην
Plur. 1	τῑμ(αοί)ῴμεθα	φιλ(εοί)οίμεθα	δηλ(οοί)οίμεθα
2	τῑμ(άοι)ῷσθε	φιλ(έοι)οῖσθε	δηλ(όοι)οῖσθε
3	τῑμ(άοι)ῷντο	φιλ(έοι)οῖντο	δηλ(όοι)οῖντο

Present Imperative.

Sing. 2	τῑμ(άου)ῶ	φιλ(έου)οῦ	δηλ(όου)οῦ
3	τῑμ(αέ)άσθω	φιλ(εέ)είσθω	δηλ(οέ)ούσθω
Dual 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθον	φιλ(έε)εῖσθον	δηλ(όε)οῦσθον
3	τῑμ(αέ)άσθων	φιλ(εέ)είσθων	δηλ(οέ)ούσθων
Plur. 2	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθε	φιλ(έε)εῖσθε	δηλ(όε)οῦσθε
3	τῑμ(αέ)άσθωσαν or τῑμ(αέ)άσθων	φιλ(εέ)είσθωσαν or φιλ(εέ)είσθων	δηλ(οέ)ούσθωσαν or δηλ(οέ)ούσθων

Present Infinitive.

	τῑμ(άε)ᾶσθαι	φιλ(έε)εῖσθαι	δηλ(όε)οῦσθαι

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

M.	τῑμ(αά)ώμενος	φιλ(εέ)ούμενος	δηλ(οό)ούμενος
F.	τῑμ(αα)ωμένη	φιλ(εε)ουμένη	δηλ(οο)ουμένη
N.	τῑμ(αά)ώμενον	φιλ(εέ)ούμενον	δηλ(οό)ούμενον

137. Deponent verbs have no active forms, but use those of the middle (or passive) in the active sense; *e.g.* ἕπομαι, *I follow.*

138. RULE. — **The *deliberative subjunctive* is used when one asks himself or another what is to be done. It occurs in the first person;** *e.g.* τί ποιῶμεν; *what shall we do?* The question is not asked for information, but as an *expression of doubt.*

139. TRANSLATE: 1. πῶς[1] τοῖς πολεμίοις μαχώμεθα; 2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔγραφεν ἵνα πείθοι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἕπεσθαι[1] τῷ Κύρῳ. 3. μόνος τῶν στρατηγῶν οὐκέτι φιλεῖται. 4. ἀπόπεμπε μὲν τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς, μεταπέμπου δὲ Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς. 5. οἶνος καὶ πῦροὶ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἦσαν, καὶ ἐνταῦθα πορευόμενος Κῦρος ἐπαύετο.

140. TRANSLATE: 1. The soldiers were[2] being[2] conquered,[2] but they tried[2] to[2] save[2] the beasts of burden. 2. Let the victory be made evident to the satrap, and let the soldiers be honored. 3. Why do you no longer wish to harm the man? 4. The generals were always extremely loved and honored. 5. Do not fight any longer, but flee in[3] obedience[3] to the general.

[1] See vocab., **149,** for this and other new words.

[2] See **41.**

[3] Nom. plur. partic. of πείθομαι.

141. Contract adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined like contract nouns of the same declensions (see **66** and **92**).

142. The same principle as in adjectives in -ος (see **128**) holds true of the feminine here; *e.g.* (ἀργύρεος) ἀργυροῦς, *of silver*, has ἀργυρᾶ, but (χρύσεος) χρῡσοῦς, *golden*, has χρῡσῆ.

143.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. N.V.	ἀργυροῦς	ἀργυρᾶ	ἀργυροῦν	χρῡσοῦς	χρῡσῆ	χρῡσοῦν
G.	ἀργυροῦ	ἀργυρᾶς	ἀργυροῦ	χρῡσοῦ	χρῡσῆς	χρῡσοῦ
D.	ἀργυρῷ	ἀργυρᾷ	ἀργυρῷ	χρῡσῷ	χρῡσῇ	χρῡσῷ
A.	ἀργυροῦν	ἀργυρᾶν	ἀργυροῦν	χρῡσοῦν	χρῡσῆν	χρῡσοῦν
Dual N. A. V.	ἀργυρώ	ἀργυρᾶ	ἀργυρώ	χρῡσώ	χρῡσᾶ	χρῡσώ
G. D.	ἀργυροῖν	ἀργυραῖν	ἀργυροῖν	χρῡσοῖν	χρῡσαῖν	χρῡσοῖν
Plur. N. V.	ἀργυροῖ	ἀργυραῖ	ἀργυρᾶ	χρῡσοῖ	χρῡσαῖ	χρῡσᾶ
G.	ἀργυρῶν	ἀργυρῶν	ἀργυρῶν	χρῡσῶν	χρῡσῶν	χρῡσῶν
D.	ἀργυροῖς	ἀργυραῖς	ἀργυροῖς	χρῡσοῖς	χρῡσαῖς	χρῡσοῖς
A.	ἀργυροῦς	ἀργυρᾶς	ἀργυρᾶ	χρῡσοῦς	χρῡσᾶς	χρῡσᾶ

Suggestion.

144. Observe that: —

As in contract nouns (see **67** and **93**), every case except the first form in the dual of the masc. and neut. is perispomenon.

145. A few adjectives belong to the Attic second declension. They are declined in the masculine (except for accent) like νεώς (see **94**). The masculine forms serve also as feminine, and the neuter are based on the same principle as the masculine.

146. ἵλεως, *propitious*, is thus declined: —

	M. & F. N.		M., F., & N.		M. & F. N.
Sing. N. V.	ἵλεως ἵλεων	Dual N. A. V.	ἵλεω	Plur. N. V.	ἵλεῳ ἵλεα
G.	ἵλεω	G. D.	ἵλεων	G.	ἵλεων
D.	ἵλεῳ			D.	ἵλεῳς
A.	ἵλεων			A.	ἵλεως ἵλεα

147. TRANSLATE: 1. τὸν ὄχλον φοβούμενοι[1] τῷ ἀγαθῷ στρατηγῷ οὐκ ἐπείθοντο. 2. ἀφικνούμενος ὁ τῶν τοξοτῶν λοχᾱγὸς νῑκᾷ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν τρέπει καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς σῴζει. 3. τῶν δὲ στρατιῶν τὰ ἔργα ἴσα ἦν. 4. ὁ μὲν Κῦρος λόγχην χρῡσῆν εἶχεν, ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἀργυρᾶν. 5. ἐτῑμᾶτο μὲν ἡ καλὴ γυνή, ἐφιλεῖτο δ'[2] οὔ.[3] 6. αἱ τάφροι ἐν τῇ τοῦ ἁρμοστοῦ χώρᾳ μῑκραὶ ἦσαν. 7. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐλαύνει εἰς πεδίον καλόν. 8. οἱ τοξόται νῦν πορεύονται ἵνα τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς φυγὴν τρέπωσιν.

148. TRANSLATE: 1. He ordered the cowardly soldiers to be sent back from the stronghold. 2. The captains were sacrificing to the gods, in order that they might[4] be[4] propitious. 3. How shall I persuade the cowardly man? 4. The soldiers, since[1] they[1] still fear[1] the crowd, are not worthy to guard the general's tent. 5. What shall we do, since we are not worthy of the governor's friendship?

[1] See **120**.

[2] A final short vowel may be cut off before a word beginning with a vowel, and is then replaced by an apostrophe. This is called *elision*.

[3] When οὐ stands as the last word in the sentence, it takes the acute.

[4] εἶεν.

149. **Vocabulary.**

ἀφικνέομαι (*ἀφικνοῦμαι*), *arrive.*
βλάπτω, *harm, damage.*
βούλομαι, *wish.*
γράφω, *write.*
ἕπομαι, *follow* (takes dat.).
μάχομαι, *fight* (takes dat.).
τάττω, *draw up;* mid., *be stationed.*
τρέπω, *turn;* **εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω**, *put to flight.*
φοβέω, *cause to fear, frighten;* mid. and pass., *fear, be afraid.*
ὄχλος, *crowd; annoyance.*
ὑποζύγιον, *beast of burden.*
φυγή, *flight.*
χωρίον, *place, stronghold.*
ἴσος, *equal.*
μόνος, *alone, only.*
τρίτος, **-η**, **-ον**, *third.*
νῦν, adv., *now, at present.*
πῶς, *how.*

CHAPTER XI.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES AND THE RELATIVE.

150. The **demonstratives,** *ὅδε* (*this*), *οὗτος* (*this*), *ἐκεῖνος* (*that*), and the **relative,** *ὅς* (*who*), are thus declined: —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
G.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
D.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
A.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Dual N. A.	τώδε	τώδε	τώδε	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
G. D.	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τοῖνδε	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν
Plur. N.	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
D.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A.	τούσδε	τᾶσδε	τάδε	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
G.	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
D.	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
A.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Dual N. A.	ἐκείνω	ἐκείνᾱ	ἐκείνω	ὥ	ὥ	ὥ
G. D.	ἐκείνοιν	ἐκείναιν	ἐκείνοιν	οἷν	οἷν	οἷν
Plur. N.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
G.	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
D.	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
A.	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνᾱς	ἐκεῖνα	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

Suggestions.

151. Observe that: —

ὅδε is declined like ὅ, with -δε added to each form, except that the masc. and fem. nom. of the sing. and plur. are paroxytone (see **97**).

152. Observe that: —

a. οὗτος in its declension closely resembles the article, and initial *τ* occurs as in the article (see **98** *a*).

b. *-αυ-* occurs in the penult when the ultima has *η* or *α*; but *-ου-* when it has *ο*, *ου*, or *ω*; *e.g.* *ταύτης*, *ταῦτα*, etc., but *τοῦτο*, *τούτου*, and *τούτων*.

c. The accent is recessive (see **20**).

153. Observe that: —

ἐκεῖνος is declined like a regular adjective of the first and second declensions (see **129**), except that the neut. nom. and acc. sing. end in *-ο*.

154. Observe that: —

ὅς is thus distinguished from ὁ: —

a. It is oxytone in the masc. and fem. nom. of the sing. and plur., where ὁ has no accent.

b. It has the rough breathing and no *τ* throughout, and has ὅς instead of ὁ in the masc. nom. sing.

155. The demonstratives, *οὗτος*, *ὅδε*, and *ἐκεῖνος*, may be used as adjectives, or may stand alone as nouns; *e.g.* *ἐκεῖνος ὁ στρατιώτης ἦν ἐνταῦθα*, *that soldier was here*; *οὗτος ταῦτα βούλεται*, *this* (*man*) *wishes these* (*things*).

156. *οὗτος*, *ὅδε*, and *ἐκεῖνος*, when used as adjectives, *must have an article* in agreement with the noun they modify, and they regularly have the **predicate position**; *i.e.* they either precede the article or follow the noun; *e.g.* *οὗτοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι*, or *οἱ ἄνθρωποι οὗτοι*, *these men*.[1]

157. TRANSLATE: 1. *τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐτρέφετο, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους μόνους ἐν τῇ κώμῃ εἶχον.* 2. *ταύτᾱς τὰς ἀπορίᾱς ἔχων τί ποιῶ;* 3. *τί βούλεται ὁ Δᾱρεῖος τὼ ἀνθρώπω ἀμφοτέρω νῦν βλάπτεσθαι;* 4. *ἡ ἑτέρᾱ ὁδὸς εἰς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἰσχῡρῶς στενὴ ἦν· ἐνταῦθα δὲ πορευομένοις τοῖς στρατιώταις ὄχλος ἐγίγνετο.* 5. *ἀριθμὸν αὖθις ἐποιεῖτο τῶν τοξοτῶν ἐκείνων.* 6. *πῶς τοῦδε τοῦ ἔργου ἀρχώμεθα;*

158. TRANSLATE: 1. Since[2] I am[2] in[2] these difficulties, what shall I do to rule this army? 2. The king was making a numbering of his[3] army, because he feared the satrap. 3. To[4] make[4] the number equal, Cyrus commanded the captain to draw up thirty hoplites of the other company. 4. There were provisions and beautiful gifts of gold and silver in the tents. 5. Those soldiers alone arrived at[5] the stronghold and fought with the enemy.

---

[1] When *τοιοῦτος*, *τοιόσδε*, *τοσοῦτος*, *τοσόσδε* (see **159** *b*) take the article, they have the *attributive position*; *i.e.* they come between the article and the noun.

[2] *ἔχων*, circumstantial partic.

[3] See p. 43, foot-note 2.

[4] *ἵνα* and clause of purpose.

[5] Use *εἰς*.

οὗτος AND ὅδε.

159. *a.* οὗτος in its various forms usually means *this* with reference to something already mentioned, while ὅδε means *this* with reference to something about to follow.

b. The adverbs of οὗτος and ὅδε, and the other demonstratives of similar form, follow the same principle, as shown in the following table: —

Refers to: —	*This*	*Thus*	*Such*	*So much* or *so many*
preceding	οὗτος	οὕτως[1]	τοιοῦτος	τοσοῦτος
following	ὅδε	ὧδε	τοιόσδε	τοσόσδε

Syntax.

160. Rule. — **The *genitive* corresponds in many of its functions to the Latin ablative. Thus it expresses: —**

I. **Cause**[2]; *e.g.* ἡ χώρᾱ τῶν πῡρῶν θαυμάζεται, *the country is admired for its wheat.*

II. **Source**; *e.g.* Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, *of Darius and Parysatis are born two sons.*

III. **Separation**; *e.g.* οἱ πολέμιοι τῆς κώμης παρασάγγᾱς τριάκοντα ἀπεῖχον, *the enemy were distant from the village thirty parasangs.*

IV. **Material**; *e.g.* τῶν οἰκιῶν αἱ θύραι ξύλου ἦσαν, *the doors of the houses were of wood.*

---

[1] οὕτως before a vowel, and usually οὕτω before a consonant.

[2] Usually cause is expressed by a prep. and its case. Less often, with some verbs the simple gen. is found, with others the simple dat. Which case is to be used will be easily learned by observation, and will cause no trouble in practice.

161. The *dative* also corresponds in some of its functions to the ablative. Thus it expresses: —

I. **Cause,**[1] **Manner,** or **Means**; *e.g.* —

a. Cause, ὁ στρατηγὸς τῇ σκηνῇ ἥδετο, *the general was pleased with the tent.*

b. Manner, ἔθεον δρόμῳ, *they advanced on a run* (lit., *ran on a run*).

c. Means, λίθοις ἔβαλλον, *they pelted (them) with stones.*

II. **Time when**; *e.g.* τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπορεύοντο, *they proceeded on the third day.*

162. Rule. — **A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person**; *e.g.* μεταπέμπεται τοὺς ἀνθρώπους οἳ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἦσαν, *he sends for the men who were in the village.*

163. Translate: 1. στρεφόμενοι οἱ ὁπλῖται εἰς μάχην ἔθεον δρόμῳ. 2. Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται Ἀρταξέρξης καὶ Κῦρος. 3. οἱ στρατιῶται τοῦτο τὸ πεδίον τῶν πῡρῶν ἐθαύμαζον, ὃ ἀπέχει τῆς κώμης σταθμοὺς ἕξ. 4. οἱ ἄλλοι τῇ γεφύρᾳ ταύτῃ ἥδοντο ἢ ξύλου ἦν. 5. ὧδε ἐγίγνετο δρόμος ἐκείνῳ τῷ χρόνῳ. 6. οὕτω δ'[2] ἀφικνοῦντο τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ πελτασταί, ἐπεὶ οἱ θεοὶ ἵλεῳ ἦσαν.

164. Translate: 1. Such was not the character of Cyrus. 2. Thus the peltasts[3] who were here began[3] to run[3] to the tents. 3. Each captain followed his general,

[1] See p. 54, foot-note 2.

[2] See p. 50, foot-note 2.

[3] Transl., *a running took place for the peltasts.*

and was pleased with the road. 4. In[1] order[1] not to[1] make his fear evident to the harmost, he writes as follows. 5. The hoplites advanced on a run, and pelted the barbarians with stones, and put them to flight.

165. **Vocabulary.**

ἀπέχω, *keep away, be distant;* mid., *refrain from.*
ἄρχω, *rule;* mid. *begin* (takes gen.).
βάλλω, *throw, pelt.*
γίγνομαι, *become, be born, take place, arise.*
ἥδομαι, *be pleased.*
θαυμάζω, *wonder at, admire.*
ποιέω (**ποιῶ**), *make, do.*
στρέφω, *turn about, turn suddenly.*
τρέφω, *nourish, support.*
ἀριθμός, *number, numbering.*
δρόμος, *run;* **θέω δρόμῳ**, *advance on a run.*
λίθος, *stone.*
ξύλον, *wood; fuel.*
σῖτος, *grain, food.* Irreg. plur., **τὰ σῖτα**, *provisions.*
τρόπος, *turning; manner; character.*
χρόνος, *time.*
ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο (declined like **ἐκεῖνος**), *other, another;* with art., *the other, the rest of.*
ἀμφότερος, *both.*
ἕκαστος, *each.*
ἕτερος, *the other* (of two).
στενός, *narrow.*

CHAPTER XII.

FUTURE SYSTEM. — POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

166. The **future tense-stem** of most[2] verbs is formed from the theme of the verb by adding *-σ%* (*i.e.* the **tense-sign** *σ* with the thematic vowel; see **36**). In **pure verbs**, *i.e.* those which have the theme ending in a vowel, the final vowel of the theme is often lengthened, *ε* and *α* becoming *η*, and *ο* becoming *ω*; *e.g.* λυ-, λῡσ%-; τῑμα-, τῑμησ%-.

[1] *ἵνα* with clause of purpose.

[2] This does not include *liquid verbs*, which will be treated separately (see **293**).

λ μ ν ρ – σ

167. From the future stem are made all the forms of the future tense in the active and middle voices. These forms, therefore, constitute the **future system.** The inflection (see remark in **40**) is as follows: —

168. FUTURE SYSTEM.

(Formed from the future stem λῡσ%-.)

Active Voice.

	Indicative.	Optative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 1	λύσω, *I shall loose*, or	λύσοιμι	λύσειν
2	λύσεις [*I will loose.*	λύσοις	
3	λύσει	λύσοι	
			Participle.
Dual 2	λύσετον	λύσοιτον	
3	λύσετον	λῡσοίτην	Masc. λύσων
			Fem. λύσουσα
Plur. 1	λύσομεν	λύσοιμεν	Neut. λῦσον
2	λύσετε	λύσοιτε	
3	λύσουσι	λύσοιεν	

Middle Voice.

	Indicative.	Optative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 1	λύσομαι, *I shall loose my-*	λῡσοίμην	λύσεσθαι
2	λύσει [*self*, or *I will*	λύσοιο	
3	λύσεται [*loose myself.*	λύσοιτο	
			Participle.
Dual 2	λύσεσθον	λύσοισθον	
3	λύσεσθον	λῡσοίσθην	Masc. λῡσόμενος
			Fem. λῡσομένη
Plur. 1	λῡσόμεθα	λῡσοίμεθα	Neut. λῡσόμενον
2	λύσεσθε	λύσοισθε	
3	λύσονται	λύσοιντο	

Suggestions.

169. Observe that: —

a. In λύω, the forms of the future system differ from the corresponding forms of the present system only in having the tense-sign, σ- (see **41**).

b. There is no fut. in the subjv. or imv., since these moods of themselves look to the future.

c. The opt. has secondary endings (see **116** *a*).

170. *a.* The future optative occurs only, and the future infinitive chiefly, in indirect discourse, to represent the future indicative. No translation, therefore, has been given for it.

b. No independent translation has been given for the future participle, since its time is always future *in relation to* that of the verb on which it depends.

Future of Consonant Themes.

171. In verbs which have the theme ending in a consonant, final -π, -β, -φ combine with the tense-sign -σ- (see **166**) and form -ψ; final -κ, -γ, -χ combine with it and form -ξ; final -τ, -δ, -θ are dropped; *e.g.* —

πέμπω (πεμπ-), πέμψω; τρίβω (τριβ-), τρίψω; γράφω (γραφ-), γράψω; διώκω (διωκ-), διώξω; ἄγω (ἀγ-), ἄξω; ἄρχω (ἀρχ-), ἄρξω; ——————[1]; δείδω (δειδ-), δείσω; πείθω (πιθ-[2]), πείσω.

172. The theme is often so disguised in forming the present of a verb, that the future appears to be irregular, when really it conforms to the rule. The formation of the present stem from the theme will be discussed later

[1] There are no common verbs with themes ending in -τ, except πίπτω.

[2] A verb with a strengthened theme.

(see **488**). But even now the theme of each verb must be carefully learned, since it is from the theme that all tense-stems (including the present) are formed; *e.g.* —

βλάπτω (βλαβ-),	*injure*,	has the future		βλάψω;
τάττω (ταγ-),	*draw up*,	"	"	τάξω;
σῴζω[1] (σωδ-),	*save*,	"	"	σώσω;
διδάσκω (διδαχ-),	*teach*,	"	"	διδάξω;
κάω or καίω (καυ-),	*burn*,	"	"	καύσω;
ὁράω (ὁρα-, ὀπ-),	*see*,	"	"	ὄψομαι.

173. TRANSLATE: 1. οὗτοι οἱ κακοὶ στρατιῶται αἱρήσουσι τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ καύσουσι τὴν καλὴν σκηνήν. 2. οὐ μὲν διατρίψομεν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρᾱν, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους διώξομεν. 3. τὴν κώμην τῶν οἰκιῶν μὴ θαυμάζετε. 4. οἱ κακοὶ στρατιῶται στρέψονται εἰς τὴν ἑτέρᾱν ὁδόν, ἣ ἰσχῡρῶς ἐστι στενή, καὶ φυγῆς ἄρξονται. 5. ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐ δέξεται τὰ δῶρα, καὶ ὁ στρατιώτης γράφει ὅτι ὁ ἁρμοστὴς οὐ πέμψει αὐτά. 6. τοιαῦτα δεινὰ ἔχων τί ποιῶ;

174. TRANSLATE: 1. Thus we will persuade Cyrus to lead, and the others will follow and will plunder the village, which is distant thirty parasangs. 2. Nevertheless a shout arose, since we were not pleased with the encampment. 3. We will send for that man's brother, that we may teach (him) to write. 4. The other army, which Cyrus is leading, will burn the houses. 5. How shall my company have food, if it remains[2] upon the heights?

---

[1] The ω in the theme of σῴζω takes the subscript only before ζ; *e.g.* σῴζω, but σώσω.

[2] Use circumst. partic. in pres.

Position of Adjectives.

175. The attributive adjective *attributes* or imputes a certain quality to its noun; *e.g.* ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος, *the good man.*

176. When a noun with the definite article is modified by an attributive adjective, the adjective always has an article before it, and is said to be in the **attributive position**; *e.g.* ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος, or ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὁ ἀγαθός, *the good man.*

177. Attributive *phrases*, *participles*, and even *adverbs*, are used in the same way as attributive adjectives; *e.g.* οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἄνθρωποι, *the men in the village;* ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμούς, *he sent away the accruing taxes;* οἱ νῦν ἄνθρωποι, *the men of the present day;* τὸ ἔξω τεῖχος τὸ πρὸ Συρίᾱς, *the outer wall before Syria.*

178. The predicate adjective stands as predicate of the verb *to be*, or its equivalent, expressed or understood,[1] and the sentence *predicates* or asserts the existence of a certain quality in the person or thing described; *e.g.* ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀγαθός (ἐστιν[1]), *the man is good.*

179. When a noun with the definite article is modified by a predicate adjective, the adjective never has an article before it, and is said to be in the **predicate position**; *e.g.* ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀγαθός (ἐστιν[1]), or ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἄνθρωπός (ἐστιν), *the man is good.*

---

[1] ἐστί, or its equivalent, is often omitted, without affecting the meaning.

Exceptions.

180. Certain words and phrases, although attributive, always stand in the predicate position. The most important are: —

a. The demonstratives, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος, and ὅδε, when used as adjectives. With them, when thus used, the article is never omitted (see **156** and foot-note); *e.g.* οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος, or ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὗτος, *this man.*

b. ἄμφω or ἀμφότερος, *both*, and generally ἕκαστος, *each*, πᾶς, *all*, and ὅλος, *whole*; *e.g.* ἀμφότεροι οἱ στρατιῶται, *both the soldiers*; ἕκαστος ὁ ἄνθρωπος, *each man*; πᾶς ὁ στρατός, *all the army.*

c. μέσος, *middle of*, and ἄκρος, *top of*; *e.g.* ἐκ μέσης τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *from the middle of the market-place.*

d. The partitive genitive (see p. 23, foot-note 3); *e.g.* οἱ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων, *the good among the men.*

e. The genitive of personal pronouns; *e.g.* ἡ οἰκίᾱ μου, *my house.*

αὐτός.

181. αὐτός is declined like ἐκεῖνος (see **150**).

182. αὐτός has three important uses: —

a. It is used (cf. Lat. *ipse*) to intensify the implied subject of a verb or to emphasize a noun. In the latter use it has the *predicate position*; *e.g.* αὐτοὶ ποιοῦμεν, *we do (it) ourselves*; αὐτὸς ὁ ἄνθρωπος, *the man himself.*

b. It sometimes means *same*, and then has the *attributive position*; *e.g.* ὁ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος, *the same man.*

c. In the nominative, when used alone, it is always intensive (see *a*), but in the *oblique cases* it is often used alone as the regular personal pronoun of the third person

(see **191**); *e.g.* ἡ σκηνὴ αὐτοῦ, *his tent* (lit., *the tent of him*); μεταπέμπεται αὐτούς, *he sends for them.*

183. RULE. — **The *adverbial accusative* is an accusative used with the force of an adverb, and is much akin to the accusative of specification (101);** *e.g.* ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα Κύρῳ συλλέγεται τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, *but another army is collected for Cyrus in the following manner.*

184. RULE. — **The future participle is used to express purpose** (cf. **47**); *e.g.* συλλέγει στράτευμα πολεμήσων τῷ σατράπῃ, *he collects an army, to make war on the satrap.* The particle ὡς often introduces it.

185. TRANSLATE: 1. ὁ δὲ λόχος πᾶς ὁ τοῦ Προξένου εἰς φυγὴν τρέπεται. 2. Ἀρταξέρξης αὐτὸς οὐχ ἥδεται ὁρῶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν καὶ ἁρπάσει τὰ ὅπλα ὡς βλάψων· τοιοῦτος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ Ἀρταξέρξου τρόπος. 3. εἰς μέσον τὸν λόφον ἥκουσιν αὐτοὶ οἱ πελτασταί, ὅμως δὲ οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν αἱρεῖν τὰ ἄκρα· ἐπὶ γὰρ τοῖς ἄκροις οἱ τῶν πολεμίων τοξόται εἰσίν. 4. εἰς ἑκάστην τὴν κώμην ἥκων οὕτω τάξει τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς καὶ εὔξεται τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. 5. Ξενοφῶν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἦν ἄξιος ἄρχειν ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς. 6. ἴσως δὲ τοὺς φίλους νῦν ἄξει ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς οἳ τὸ ἔξω τεῖχος τὸ πρὸ τοῦ χωρίου σώσουσιν. 7. ἡ στρατιὰ ὅλη ὄψεται ἃ ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ποιήσει. 8. Κῦρος ἔτρεφε τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια αὐτῶν.

186. TRANSLATE: 1. Each satrap will accept the gifts which the king sends (him). 2. Let all the company advance on a run, to seize the cowardly among the men. 3. On the third day we shall ourselves make a numbering

of the army. 4. Since Cyrus is come, whom the men of the present day consider a skilful general, why do we fear such an enemy any longer? 5. They were at that time pelting the man with stones. 6. This brave satrap was born of Darius and Parysatis. 7. He will order his soldiers to seize the arms and fuel.

187. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT:—

Μένων.

Μένων ὁ τρίτος στρατηγὸς τῆς Κύρου στρατιᾶς ἦν Θετταλός· οὗτος δὲ ἐπλούτει[1] ἰσχῡρῶς· ἐβούλετο δὲ ἄρχειν, ἵνα πλείω[2] χρήματα[3] ἔχοι, ἐβούλετο δὲ τῑμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω δῶρα δέχοιτο· φίλος δὲ ἤθελε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς γίγνεσθαι καὶ τοῖς σατράπαις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ ἔχοι τὴν δίκην. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοῦτον καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ Ζαπάτᾳ ποταμῷ αἱρεῖ· καὶ Μένωνα[4] ἡγούμενος δεινὸν κακὰ ποιεῖν καὶ ἴσως φοβούμενος αὐτὸν ἀποκτείνει.[5]

188. **Vocabulary.**

ἁρπάζω, *seize, catch up, plunder.*
δέχομαι, *receive, accept.*
διατρίβω, *waste (time), spend.*
διδάσκω, fut. **διδάξω**, *teach, show.*
εὔχομαι, *pray, vow.*
ἔχω (theme **σεχ-**), fut. **ἕξω**, *have, hold.*
ἡγέομαι (**ἡγοῦμαι**), fut. **ἡγήσομαι** (see **166**), *lead* (takes dat.); *consider* (cf. Lat. *duco*), *think.*
ἥκω, *be* or *have come.*
ἀδελφός, voc. **ἄδελφε**, *brother.*
ἄκρον, *summit;* **τὰ ἄκρα**, *the heights.*
κραυγή, *shout, clamor.*
λόφος, *crest of a hill, hill.*
ὅπλον, *implement;* plur., *arms.*
στρατόπεδον, *encampment, camp.*
δεινός, *terrible; skilful.* Used as a noun, **τὸ δεινόν**, *danger.*
ἔξω, adv., *outside.*
ἴσως, *equally, perhaps.*
ὅμως, *nevertheless, yet.*
γάρ (postpositive conj.), *for.*
ὅτι, conj., *that.*
ἐπί (prep. with dat.), *upon, at.*
πρό (with gen.), *before.*

[1] *be rich.* [2] *more.* [3] *money.* [4] acc. case. [5] *put to death.*

CHAPTER XIII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS. — PREPOSITIONS.

189. The *personal pronouns*, ἐγώ, *I*, σύ, *you*, οὗ, *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, and αὐτός (see **181**), are thus declined: —

Sing. N.	ἐγώ	σύ		αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	ἐμοῦ, μοῦ	σοῦ	οὗ	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	ἐμοί, μοί	σοί	οἷ	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	ἐμέ, μέ	σέ	ἕ	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Dual N. A. V.	νώ	σφώ		αὐτώ	αὐτά	αὐτώ
G. D.	νῷν	σφῷν		αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
Plur. N.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς	σφεῖς	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

SUGGESTION.

190. Observe that: —

αὐτός is declined like ἐκεῖνος (see **150**).

191. In Attic,[1] οὗ, οἷ, ἕ, etc., are not common, and when used, are usually **indirect reflexives** (*i.e.* they are used in dependent clauses, and refer to the subject of the main verb). The *oblique cases of* αὐτός are used as the pronoun of the third person (see **182** *c*); *e.g.* Κῦρος μεταπέμπεται αὐτούς, *Cyrus sends for them.*

[1] Attic was the dialect of Greek spoken in Athens during the most important period of Greek literature. Treatises on Greek grammar are based on this dialect.

192. The longer forms, ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, are used, and the accents of σοῦ, σοί, σέ, and of οὗ, οἷ, ἕ, are retained, when the pronouns are emphatic, and generally[1] with prepositions; *e.g.* Κύρῳ, οὐκ ἐμοί, τὸ στράτευμα συλλέγεται, *for Cyrus, not for me, the army is collected;* παρ' ἐμὲ καὶ παρὰ σὲ ἐλαύνουσιν, *they march to you and to me.*

Genitive.

193. RULE.[2]—**The genitive is used with verbs of plenty and want;** *e.g.* ὁ βασιλεὺς φίλων δεῖται, *the king needs friends.*

194. RULE.—**The genitive expresses the time within which** (*see* **160**); *e.g.* θύσει δέκα ἡμερῶν, *he will sacrifice within ten days.*

Dative.

195. RULE.[2]—**The dative is used:—**

I. **To denote the possessor;** *e.g.* ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν, *there Cyrus had a palace.*

II. **With words of likeness and unlikeness;** *e.g.* φιλοσόφῳ ἔοικας, ὦ νεᾱνίᾱ, *you are like a philosopher, young man.*

Accusative.

196. RULE.[2]—**Two accusatives are used:—**

I. **With verbs meaning *make, choose, call,* and the like, to denote the same person or thing;** *e.g.* στρατηγὸν αὐτὸν ποιοῦσιν, *they make him general.*

II. **With verbs meaning *ask, demand, teach, conceal;* also *clothe* and *unclothe, deprive,* and *remind,* one accu-**

[1] πρός με is an exception.

[2] Cf. the Latin constructions.

sative being of the person and the other of the thing; *e.g.* Κῦρον αἰτεῖ ἓξ ἡμερῶν μισθόν, *he asks Cyrus for the pay for six days.*

III. **With phrases meaning *to do* anything *to* a person, since they are similar to the verbs given in II;** *e.g.* Ἀριαῖος ἡμᾶς κακὸν ποιεῖν βούλεται, *Ariaeus wishes to do us harm.*

197. TRANSLATE: 1. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι στρατιὰν συλλέξουσι καὶ μισθὸν τριάκοντα ἡμερῶν τὸν σατράπην αἰτήσουσιν. 2. ἐπεὶ πᾶς ὁ λόχος σου σίτου δεῖται, τὸν μισθὸν συλλέγωμεν τοῖς στρατιώταις. 3. ὁ βασιλεὺς Κῦρον σατράπην ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς ποιήσει, ὁ δὲ[1] δέξεται τοῦτο τὸ δῶρον καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς εὔξεται τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. 4. τριάκοντα ἡμερῶν ταῦτα ἡμᾶς αἰτήσουσιν. 5. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τὰς ἐνταῦθα κώμᾱς δεῖ αὐτὸν ἁρπάζειν. 6. τὸν ἀδελφὸν μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς σατράπης ἦν.

198. TRANSLATE: 1. But[2] the same soldiers will, nevertheless,[2] arrive from the heights, and deprive both the men of their horses. 2. A brave man is come from the satrap, to seize[3] the arms out of the captain's tent and to burn[3] the tent itself. 3. It is necessary for them[4] to descend[4] from the hill and to cross the river, in order that they may encamp in the plain. 4. The same soldiers kept asking the harmost for food.

---

[1] When the subj. of a clause is different from that just preceding, the change is often indicated by ὁ δέ, *and he, but he.*

[2] ὅμως δέ at the beginning.

[3] Use fut. partic.

[4] Infin. with subj. acc.

Prepositions.

199. The Greek prepositions, from their frequent use, both separately and in composition, are important. The meanings of each, and the cases that accompany it, should be carefully learned.

200. Some prepositions are used with one case only, — either the genitive, the dative, or the accusative; others with both the genitive and accusative; and others with all three cases; *e.g.* —

ἀπό and *ἐκ* take the genitive only,
ἐν and *σύν* (*with*) take the dative only,
εἰς takes the accusative only;
διά with the genitive means *through*,
with the accusative, *on account of*;
παρά with the genitive means *from the side of*, *from*,
with the dative, *by the side of*, *by*, *with*,
with the accusative, *to the side of*, *to*, *contrary to*.

201. A general principle that will assist the student in remembering what cases are used with the various prepositions is that the genitive expresses *motion from*, the dative *a being at* or *rest at*, and the accusative *motion toward*; *e.g.* *παρά* (**200**) has with the various cases the general notion of

(gen.) *from the side of*,
(dat.) *by the side of*,
(acc.) *to the side of*.

202. *a.* The final vowel of any preposition, except *περί* and *πρό*, may be elided before a vowel, and (except in compound verbs) is replaced by an apostrophe; *e.g.* *παρ' ἐμοί*, *with me*; *ἀπέρχομαι* (*ἀπό* + *ἔρχομαι*), *come* or *go away*.

b. The accent also, when it stands on the elided vowel, is lost; *e.g.* παρ᾽ ἐμοί.

c. When the final vowel is elided, the preceding consonant, if a mute (see **227**), is roughened before a rough vowel; *e.g.* ἀφ᾽ ἵππου, *on horseback*; ἀφικνέομαι (ἀπό + ἱκνέομαι), *arrive.*

203. In verbs compounded with prepositions, the augment is prefixed to the simple verb, and if the last letter of the preposition is a vowel it is elided (see **202** *a*); *e.g.* διαβαίνω, *I cross*, διέβαινον, *I was crossing*; ἀπέχω, *I am distant*, ἀπεῖχον,[1] *I was distant.*

204. If the preposition in a compound verb ends in a consonant, that consonant is, when necessary, assimilated to the initial consonant of the simple verb; *e.g.* συμβουλεύω (σύν + βουλεύω), *plan with, advise*; συλλέγω (σύν + λέγω), *collect.*

Substantive and Adjective Uses.

205. In Greek, an adjective, an infinitive, a participle, an adverb, or a phrase or clause, may be used substantively, when preceded by the article; *e.g.* οἱ ἀγαθοί, *the good men*; οἱ ἄρχοντες,[2] *the rulers* (lit., *those who rule*); οἱ τότε, *the men of that time*; οἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ, *the people in the house.*

206. A participle, an adverb, or a phrase may be used adjectively (see **177**).

207. Translate: 1. παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς τὴν γέφῡραν καὶ τὸ ἔξω τεῖχος τὸ πρὸ Συρίᾱς οἱ ὁπλῖται λῦουσιν. 2. εἰς τὸν λόφον ἀπέρχονται ὃς παρὰ ἐκείνῳ τῷ ποταμῷ ἐστιν. 3. οἱ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ μου φίλοι τὸ πεδίον

[1] The accent in secondary tenses of compound verbs does not go back of the augment.

[2] Pres. partic., nom. plur.

τότε διέβαινον καὶ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ κώμῃ ᾗ βασίλεια Δᾱρείῳ ἦν ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. 4. οὐδὲ οἱ τότε ἄρχοντες τοῦτον ἄξιον ἡγοῦντο τῆς ἀρχῆς,[1] οὐδ' οἱ νῦν ἡγοῦνται. 5. οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ εἰσὶ καλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοί, οἱ δὲ ὑπὲρ τὸν ποταμὸν οἰκοῦντες[2] τοῖς πολεμίοις συμβουλεύουσιν ἡμᾶς κακὸν ποιεῖν. 6. ἴσως δὲ οἱ τοξόται νῦν διδάξουσιν ὑμᾶς τοξεύειν ἀφ' ἵππων.[3] 7. οὐ γὰρ παίσουσιν ὑμᾶς οὐδὲ βλάψουσιν. 8. οἱ βασίλειοι λοχᾱγοὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τὸν λόφον πολεμίους ὄψονται.

208. TRANSLATE: 1. Since you are come into the camp of Proxenus, I advise you not[4] to waste the whole day. 2. Let him march with me up along the plain into the village itself. 3. Let each man go up to the palace, which is opposite the camp, and say what he intends to do. 4. But Cyrus himself was marching inland with his whole army, to deprive his brother of his province. 5. Those[5] (who were) with[5] me[5] ran down from the heights with[6] a shout. 6. The satrap was doing harm to our friends. 7. Every[7] (man) who[7] speaks[7] of[7] this danger wishes to persuade us not[4] to march back to the coast.

209. **Vocabulary.**

αἰτέω, *ask, demand.*
ἀναβαίνω (theme *βα-*), fut. **-βήσομαι**, *go up, mount, march inland.*
ἀφαιρέω, *take away;* mid., *deprive, rob.*
ἀφικνέομαι (theme *ικ-*), fut. **ἀφίξομαι**, *arrive.*
δέω, *need.* Used impersonally, **δεῖ**, *it is necessary.* Mid., *need, desire, beg, ask* (takes gen.).

---

[1] Taken with *ἄξιον.* [2] Pres. partic., nom. plur.
[3] The plur. of *ἵππος* is used when there are more than one *on horseback.*
[4] *μή*, because a prohibition is implied; see **122** *b.*
[5] *οἱ παρ' ἐμοί.* [6] *σύν.* [7] *πᾶς ὁ λέγων.*

διαβαίνω, *cross.*
καταβαίνω, *go down, march back to the coast.*
λέγω, *say; tell, speak of.*
οἰκέω, *dwell, live, inhabit.*
στρατοπεδεύω, usually depon., στρατοπεδεύομαι, *encamp.*
συμβουλεύω, *plan together, advise;* mid., *ask advice, consult.* Takes dative.
βασίλειος, *kingly, royal;* τὸ βασίλειον or τὰ βασίλεια, *palace.*
μισθός, *pay.*
δέκα, *ten.*
ᾗ, *where, how.*
νῦν, *now;* οἱ νῦν, *the men of today.*
τότε, *then, at that time;* οἱ τότε, *the men of that time.*
οὐδέ, *nor, not even;* οὐδέ . . . οὐδέ, *neither . . . nor.*
ἀνά, with acc., *up, up along.*
κατά, with gen., *down from;* with acc., *along, throughout, opposite.*
ὑπέρ (cf. Lat. *super*), with gen., *in behalf of;* with acc., *beyond.*

CHAPTER XIV.

εἰμί. — FUTURE SYSTEM OF CONTRACT VERBS. — PROCLITICS AND ENCLITICS.

210. εἰμί (theme ἐσ-; cf. Lat. *esse*), *be*, has only the present and future systems.

	Ind. Pres.	Subjv.	Opt. Pres.	Imperative.	Infin. Pres.
Sing. 1	εἰμί	ὦ	εἴην		
2	εἶ	ᾖς	εἴης	ἴσθι	εἶναι
3	ἐστί	ᾖ	εἴη	ἔστω	
Dual 2	ἐστόν	ἦτον	εἴητον, εἶτον	ἔστον	Partic. Pres.
3	ἐστόν	ἦτον	εἰήτην, εἴτην	ἔστων	
Plur. 1	ἐσμέν	ὦμεν	εἴημεν, εἶμεν		Masc. ὤν
2	ἐστέ	ἦτε	εἴητε, εἶτε	ἔστε	Fem. οὖσα
3	εἰσί	ὦσι	εἴησαν, εἶεν	ἔστων, ὄντων	Neut. ὄν

	Indic. Impf.	Indic. Fut.	Opt. Fut.	Infin. Fut.
Sing. 1	ἦν or ἦ	ἔσομαι	ἐσοίμην	ἔσεσθαι
2	ἦσθα	ἔσει	ἔσοιο	
3	ἦν	ἔσται	ἔσοιτο	
Dual 2	ἦστον or ἦτον	ἔσεσθον	ἔσοισθον	Partic. Fut.
3	ἤστην or ἤτην	ἔσεσθον	ἐσοίσθην	
Plur. 1	ἦμεν	ἐσόμεθα	ἐσοίμεθα	Masc. ἐσόμενος
2	ἦτε or ἦστε	ἔσεσθε	ἔσοισθε	Fem. ἐσομένη
3	ἦσαν	ἔσονται	ἔσοιντο	Neut. ἐσόμενον

Suggestions.

211. Observe that: —

a. The imv. (ἴσθι) has the original ending of the active imv. (*-θι*). In λῦε (**41**), for λῡ́εθι, this ending has been dropped, but it is retained in some verbs ending in *-μι*. *-σο* is the original ending of the imv. mid., λῦ́ου being for λῡ́εσο (see **116** *c*).

b. The fut. has the mid. form throughout. The 3d sing. indic. has dropped the thematic vowel.

212. Rule. — **A predicate substantive or adjective** (see **132**) **takes the same case as the substantive to which it refers**; *e.g.* Δᾱρεῖος βασιλεύς ἐστιν, *Darius is king*; ἐβούλετο αὐτὸν στρατιώτην εἶναι, *he wished him to be a soldier.*

213. **ἐστί** and **εἰσί** máy take *ν*-movable before a vowel or at the end of a sentence (see **45** *c*, *a*).

Future System of Contract Verbs.

214. As was stated in **166,** most verbs with themes ending in *α-*, *ε-*, and *ο-* (*i.e.* most contract verbs) lengthen the final vowel of the theme in forming the future, *α-* and

ε- becoming η-, and ο- becoming ω-, but α- preceded by ε, ι, or ρ (cf. **128**) becoming ᾱ;[1] *e.g.* —

τῑμάω, τῑμήσω; φιλέω, φιλήσω; δηλόω, δηλώσω;
but ἐάω, *permit*, ἐάσω;
αἰτιάομαι, *accuse, blame*, αἰτιάσομαι;
πειράομαι, *try, attempt*, πειράσομαι.

215. In these verbs in -άω, -έω, and -όω, the contraction takes place only in the present system, because in the future and all the other tense-systems, the final vowel of the theme does not come together with the thematic vowel. These verbs, therefore, present no peculiarities of inflection, except in the present and imperfect; *e.g.* —

fut., τῑμήσω,
τῑμήσεις,
τῑμήσει, etc.

216. TRANSLATE: 1. ὁ μὲν λοχᾱγὸς ἐκεῖνος τῶν πεζῶν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ ἐπείθοντο, ἐπεὶ μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα ἔδει φρονεῖν. 2. τοῦτον γὰρ τὸν ποταμὸν καλοῦσιν Εὐφρᾱ́την. 3. καὶ οἱ τότε πεζοὶ καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἐβούλοντο φίλοι τε εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ πιστοί. 4. οἱ ὁπλῖται κατὰ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐτάττοντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφευγον. 5. οἱ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ξένοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων νῦν καταβαίνουσιν. 6. οἱ στρατηγοὶ πειρᾶσονται ἡμᾶς πείθειν μὴ[2] προσέρχεσθαι δέκα ἡμερῶν, ἀλλ'[3] ἐνταῦθα στρατοπεδεύεσθαι. 7. οἱ τοξόται Κῦρον ἰσχῡρῶς φιλήσουσιν. 8. οἱ ἐνταῦθα τὸ στράτευμα συλλέγουσιν ἵνα διαβαίνωσι τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ σατράπου μάχωνται.

---

[1] This lengthening occurs in all tense-stems of such verbs except the present.

[2] See p. 69, foot-note 4.

[3] ἀλλά, *but*.

217. TRANSLATE: 1. My brother, the king, will not allow the army to bivouac by the side of the road. 2. But who will accuse him of this deed, for he is able to collect an army to[1] plunder[1] our villages? 3. The stronghold to which they will go on foot is thirty parasangs distant from us. 4. And in truth, it is the custom to honor the faithful, both of the soldiers and of the strangers. 5. The harmosts who dwell beyond the sea need friends, and wish to be friendly themselves.

Proclitics and Enclitics.

218. A *proclitic* is a monosyllable that has no accent, and is pronounced as an unaccented syllable of the word following. They are: —

οὐ, εἰ, ὡς,
ἐκ, ἐν, εἰς,
ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ.

219. An *enclitic* is a word so closely attached to the preceding word as to be regarded as forming part of it. Enclitics, therefore, in most cases, lose their own accent.

220. The enclitics are: —

a. The *indefinite* τὶς, τὶ, *some, any* (**302**), to distinguish it from the interrogative τίς, τί, *who? what?*

b. The *personal pronouns* (**189**), μοῦ, μοί, μέ; σοῦ, σοί, σέ; οὗ, οἷ, ἕ.

c. The *present indicative of* εἰμί (**210**) *and* φημί (**550**), except the second person singular (εἶ and φῄς).

d. The *indefinite adverbs*, πώς, *somehow*, πού, *anywhere*, ποτέ, *at some time, once*, etc., to distinguish them from

[1] Use fut. partic.; see **184**.

the interrogative adverbs, πῶς, *how?* ποῦ, *where?* πότε, *when?* etc.

e. The *particles*, γέ, *at least*, τέ, *and*, τοί, *surely*, etc.

Accent of Enclitics.

221. *a.* The word before an enclitic never changes its acute to a grave (see **15**); *e.g.* ἐνταῦθα ἡ στρατιά ἐστιν.

b. If the word before an enclitic is accented on the ultima, the enclitic loses its accent; *e.g.* ὁδός τις (*some road*).

c. If the word before an enclitic is proparoxytone or properispomenon, it receives a second accent on the ultima; *e.g.* ἄνθρωποί εἰσιν and Κῦρός ἐστιν.

d. If the word before an enclitic is paroxytone, it receives no additional accent. Here the enclitic, if dissyllabic, retains its accent, but loses it if monosyllabic; *e.g.* οἰκίᾱ ἐστίν, but οἰκίᾱ τις.

222. TRANSLATE: 1. εἶτα δὲ οἱ ἄρχοντες αἰτιάσονται τοὺς στρατηγούς, ὅμως δὲ οὐχ οἷοί τε ἔσονται πείθειν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 2. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἀνάγκη ἐστί, διώξει ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων τὸν ἥλιον. 3. κατὰ τοῦ λόφου θεόντων οἱ ἄνω, καὶ λίθοις βαλλόντων τοῦτον τὸν στρατηγὸν ὃς τοὺς φίλους τοιαῦτα ποιεῖ. 4. πῶς οἷός τε ἔσται τούτους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τὸ ἀργύριον ἀφαιρεῖσθαι; 5. ἀγαθὸν μέν τι οὗτοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι αὐτόν ποτε ἐποίουν, κακὸν δέ τι νῦν αὐτοὺς ποιεῖν πειρᾶσεται. 6. οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ δηλώσουσί σοι πότε βούλονται ἀναβαίνειν.

223. TRANSLATE: 1. You, at least, will summon the general to advise you. 2. Who is this captain that is approaching on horseback along the plain?

3. Some[1] mercenaries are come to[2] ask[2] the general for thirty days' pay, but he has gone into the satrap's province, contrary to the truce. 4. Where is Clearchus? When will he arrive in[3] the plain, where the king has his palace?

224. **Vocabulary.**

ἄπειμι, *be away, be distant.*
αὐλίζομαι, *encamp for the night, bivouac.*
καλέω (καλῶ), fut. **καλῶ**[4] (for καλέσω), *call, summon.*
οἴχομαι, *be gone, have gone.*
προσέρχομαι, *come on, advance, approach.*
φρονέω, *understand, be wise.*
ἀργύριον, *silver, silver money.*
ἥλιος, *sun.*
νόμος, *custom, law.*
ξένος, *stranger, guest-friend, mercenary.*
δεξιός, *right;* **ἐν (τῇ) δεξιᾷ**, *on the right.*
οἷος, *such as;* **οἷός τε**, *able.*
πεζός, *on foot;* plur., **πεζοί**, *infantry;* **πεζῇ**, *on foot.*
πιστός, *trusty, faithful.*
φίλιος, *friendly.*
ἄνω (adv.), *up, above.*
εἶτα, *next, furthermore.*
μήν, *in truth, however.*
τέ, postpositive conj., *and.*
τέ . . . καί / **καί . . . καί** } *both . . . and.*

CHAPTER XV.

THIRD DECLENSION (MUTE AND LIQUID STEMS).

225. *Consonants* are divided into two classes, **semi-vowels** and **mutes.**

226. The *semi-vowels* are **λ, μ, ν, ρ,** and **ς.** The first four are called **liquids,** and the last a **sibilant.**

---

[1] *τινές.* Always place the enclitic after the word it modifies.
[2] *αἰτήσοντες.* [3] *εἰς.*
[4] An **Attic future**, which drops *σ* and contracts, often making the fut. like the pres.

227. The *mutes* are

π, β, φ,
κ, γ, χ,
τ, δ, θ.

228. Any vowel may end a Greek word, but of consonants only *ν*, *ρ*, and *ς*.

229. The third or **consonant declension** (see **51**) includes nouns whose stems end (1) in a *consonant*, or (2) in a *close vowel* (*i.e.* *ι* or *υ*).

230. Consonant stems are those ending

a. in a *mute* (**227**);
b. in a *liquid* (**226**);
c. in a *sibilant* (**226**);
d. in a *diphthong*, *ευ*, *ου*, *αυ*,
of which the *υ* was originally F (see **3**).

231. The case-endings of the third declension are as follows:—

	Masc. and Fem.		Neuter.
Sing. Nom.	-ς or none		none
Gen.		-ος (-ως)	
Dat.		-ι	
Acc.	-α (-ν)		like nom.
Voc.	like nom. or like stem		like nom.
Dual N. A. V.		-ε	
G. D.		-οιν	
Plur. Nom.	-ες		-α
Gen.		-ων	
Dat.		-σι	
Acc.	-ας		-α

232. The declension of **mute stems** (**230** *a*) and of **liquid stems** (**230** *b*) are illustrated by the following: —

	(ὁ)[1] κῆρυξ (*κηρυκ-*), *herald.*	(ἡ)[1] φάλαγξ (*φαλαγγ-*), *phalanx.*	(ἡ) ἐλπίς (*ἐλπιδ-*), *hope.*	(ἡ) χάρις (*χαριτ-*), *favor.*
Sing. Nom.	κῆρυξ	φάλαγξ	ἐλπίς	χάρις
Gen.	κήρῡκος	φάλαγγος	ἐλπίδος	χάριτος
Dat.	κήρῡκι	φάλαγγι	ἐλπίδι	χάριτι
Acc.	κήρῡκα	φάλαγγα	ἐλπίδα	χάριν
Voc.	κῆρυξ	φάλαγξ	ἐλπί	χάρις
Dual N. A. V.	κήρῡκε	φάλαγγε	ἐλπίδε	χάριτε
G. D.	κηρύκοιν	φαλάγγοιν	ἐλπίδοιν	χαρίτοιν
Plur. Nom. Voc.	κήρῡκες	φάλαγγες	ἐλπίδες	χάριτες
Gen.	κηρῡ́κων	φαλάγγων	ἐλπίδων	χαρίτων
Dat.	κήρῡξι	φάλαγξι	ἐλπίσι	χάρισι
Acc.	κήρῡκας	φάλαγγας	ἐλπίδας	χάριτας

	(τό) ὄνομα (*ὀνοματ-*), *name.*	(ὁ) μήν (*μην-*), *month.*	(ὁ) ἡγεμών (*ἡγεμον-*), *leader, guide.*	(ὁ) πατήρ (*πατερ-*), *father.*
Sing. Nom.	ὄνομα	μήν	ἡγεμών	πατήρ
Gen.	ὀνόματος	μηνός	ἡγεμόνος	πατρός
Dat.	ὀνόματι	μηνί	ἡγεμόνι	πατρί
Acc.	ὄνομα	μῆνα	ἡγεμόνα	πατέρα
Voc.	ὄνομα	μήν	ἡμεμών	πάτερ
Dual N. A. V.	ὀνόματε	μῆνε	ἡγεμόνε	πατέρε
G. D.	ὀνομάτοιν	μηνοῖν	ἡγεμόνοιν	πατέροιν
Plur. Nom. Voc.	ὀνόματα	μῆνες	ἡγεμόνες	πατέρες
Gen.	ὀνομάτων	μηνῶν	ἡγεμόνων	πατέρων
Dat.	ὀνόμασι	μησί	ἡγεμόσι	πατράσι
Acc.	ὀνόματα	μῆνας	ἡγεμόνας	πατέρας

[1] The article denotes the gender, which in the third declen. must be learned chiefly by observation.

Suggestions.

233. Observe that: —

a. The General Rules of Accent (**18**) and the rules for accenting the cases of nouns (**57** *a* and *b*) apply, except that *monosyllables of the third declen.*, like *μήν*, accent the gen. and dat. of all numbers on the ultima, the long endings of the gen. and dat. dual and of the gen. plur. having the circumflex.

b. **-ας** in the acc. plur. of the third declen. is short (cf. **56** *a*).

c. **δ**, **τ**, and **ν** are dropped before **σ**; *e.g.* ἐλπίς, ἐλπίσι; χάρις, χάρισι; μησί, ἡγεμόσι. **κ**, **γ**, **χ**, unite with **σ** and form **ξ**; *e.g.* κῆρυξ, φάλαγξι, etc.

234. Observe that: —

The gen. and dat. sing. and the dat. plur. of *πατήρ* drop the **ε**, and the dat. plur. inserts **-α-**.

235. **Stems in -οντ** drop **ντ** before **σ** and lengthen the preceding vowel by compensation; *e.g.* *γέρων* (*γεροντ-*), *old man*, dat. plur. *γέρουσι*.

236. Translate: 1. ὅτε δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, σὺν ὑμῖν ἐπορευόμην. 2. ἄνευ πυρὸς οἱ πεζοί μου ηὐλίζοντο καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς ηὔχοντο. 3. τίς τοῖς ξένοις ἀγορᾶν παρέξει; 4. καὶ πότε παύσει αἰτιώμενος τοὺς Κύρῳ πιστούς τε καὶ φιλίους στρατιώτᾱς; 5. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ ἄκρα ἀναβαίνει ἔχων ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ τὸν ἥλιον. 6. τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦ μηνὸς ἑκάστου τοῖς θεοῖς θύειν νόμος ἐστίν.

237. Translate: 1. Nevertheless, the general of the phalanx, being hopeful, commanded the herald to give the signal with the trumpet. 2. The soldiers, at least, will see the fires of the enemy by night. 3. The trusty captain marches inland, with the sun on the right.

4. Who will seize the sons of the slave? 5. How shall we allow these old men to depart into those dangers?

Summary of Third Declension.

238. If the following *summary* of the rules for the inflection of the *singular* in the third declension be well learned, most of the difficulties in the paradigms in **232** and in those to come will be removed.[1]

239. The *stem* of a noun of the third declension may usually be found by dropping the genitive ending -ος (or -ως); *e.g.* κήρυκος (κηρυκ-).

It is necessary, therefore, to learn by observation the genitive singular of each noun.

240. The *Nominative:* —

a. The nominative of neuters is the same as the stem, with the necessary euphonic changes; *e.g.* ὄνομα is from the stem ὀνοματ-, τ being dropped, because it cannot stand at the end of a word (see **228**).

b. The nominative of masculines and feminines, except those with stems in -ν and -ρ (see **231** and *c* below), is formed by adding -ς to the stem and making the necessary euphonic changes; *e.g.* κηρυκ-ς becomes κῆρυξ.

c. The nominative of masculines and feminines with stems in -ν and -ρ keeps the stem unchanged, except that the last vowel is lengthened, if it is not already long; *e.g.* —

ἡγεμών from ἡγεμον-,
πατήρ " πατερ-,
but μήν " μην-.

[1] In learning **239–244**, refer constantly to the table in **231**.

241. The *Accusative*: —

a. The accusative of neuters is like the nominative; *e.g.* ὄνομα.

b. The accusative of most masculines and feminines adds *-α* to the stem; *e.g.* κήρυκα.

c. The accusative of nouns in *-ις*, *-υς*, *-αυς*, and *-ους*, with stems ending in a vowel or a diphthong, changes *-ς* of the nominative to *-ν*; *e.g.* πόλις (πολι-), *city*, has πόλιν.

d. The accusative of nouns in *-ις*, etc., with stems ending in a consonant, is formed,

for barytones, in *-ν*; *e.g.* χάρις (χάριν),
for oxytones, in *-α*; *e.g.* ἐλπίς (ἐλπίδα).

242. The *Vocative*: —

a. *Stems* in a *mute* have the vocative like the *nominative*; *e.g.* κῆρυξ.

b. *Stems* in *-ιδ-* have the vocative like the *stem*; *e.g.* ἐλπίς (ἐλπιδ-) has ἐλπί.

c. *Oxytones* in a *liquid* have the vocative like the *nominative*; *e.g.* μήν and ἡγεμών.

d. *Barytones* in *-ντ-* have the vocative like the *stem*; *e.g.* γέρων (γεροντ-) has γέρον.

243. The *converse* of **242** *c* is also true; *i.e.* nouns in a liquid, *not oxytones*, have a vocative like the stem; *e.g.* δαίμων (δαιμον-), *divinity*, has δαῖμον.

244. *Oxytones in -ηρ* are exceptions to **242** *c*; *e.g.* πατήρ has πάτερ. *Participles in -ντ* are exceptions to **242** *d*, since all participles have the vocative like the nominative (see **334** *c*); *e.g.* λύω has λύων.

Syncopated Nouns.

245. The suppression of a short vowel between two consonants, as in πατήρ (see **234**), is called *syncopation*. Like πατήρ is declined μήτηρ (μητερ-), *mother*. ἀνήρ (ἀνερ-), *man*, is syncopated and inserts δ.

It is thus declined: —

Sing. Nom.	ἀνήρ	Dual N. A. V.	ἄνδρε	Plur. Nom. Voc.	ἄνδρες
Gen.	ἀνδρός	G. D.	ἀνδροῖν	Gen.	ἀνδρῶν
Dat.	ἀνδρί			Dat.	ἀνδράσι
Acc.	ἄνδρα			Acc.	ἄνδρας
Voc.	ἄνερ				

246. TRANSLATE: 1. ἐν τοιαύταις ἀπορίαις οὖσα ἡ μήτηρ μου βούλεται παρεῖναι καὶ ὑμῖν συμβουλεύεσθαι. 2. ἓξ μῆνας καταβαίνουσιν[1] οἱ πεζοὶ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. 3. τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀπῆσαν[2] σταθμοὺς ἕξ. 4. ὑμῖν δὲ δηλώσω ἃ κακὰ τοὺς γέροντας ἐποίει. 5. οὗτός γε οὐ πειράσεται τοὺς ἄνδρας βλάπτειν οἳ αὐτὸν κακὰ οὐ ποιοῦσιν.

247. TRANSLATE: 1. The father, therefore, wished both children to have these things and to be grateful to their mother. 2. The son of the herald summons his father to give the signal. 3. The children will go through the snow to see their mother. 4. We are, in truth, grateful to Hermes, the son of Zeus.

[1] With expressions of duration of time, Greek uses a pres. tense when English would use a pf. Transl., *have been on their way down.*

[2] See p. 68, foot-note 1.

248. RULE. — **Some verbs compounded with prepositions take the genitive;** *e.g.* καταγελῶμεν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ, *we laugh at the man at his very doors.*

249. RULE. — **Many compounds take the dative, especially those with ἐν-, ἐπι-, συν-;** *e.g.* τῷ ἀδελφῷ ἐπεβούλευεν, *he was plotting against his brother.*

250. RULE. — **The accusative is used with the adverbs of swearing, νή,** *yes by*, **and μά,** *no by; e.g.* ἦσαν νὴ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἳ ἐφοβοῦντο, *yes, by Zeus, there were some even among us who feared.*

ἔστι.

251. ἐστί (**210**), which is regularly enclitic (**220** *c*), is written ἔστι,

a. when it means *it is possible*,
b. " " signifies *existence*,
c. " " comes at the *beginning of a sentence*,
d. " " comes after οὐκ, μή, καί, εἰ, ὡς.

252. TRANSLATE: 1. πῶς αὖ ἔστι τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἡμῶν τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰς χεῖρας ἔρχεσθαι; 2. ἐπιβουλεύων τῷ ἀδελφῷ προσέρχεται διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίᾱς ἔχων ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ Εὐφράτην ὄνομα. 3. Μὰ Δία οὐκ ἔστι Κύρῳ ποιεῖν ταῦτα ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἷον αὐτὸς ἔχει. 4. μὴ μὲν καταγελᾶσθε τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν, νομίζετε δὲ αὐτοὺς χρημάτων δεῖσθαι. 5. οὐ διὰ τὸ ἀργύριον ὃ ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις αὐτοῦ ἦν ἐπεβούλευε Κῦρος τῷ ἀδελφῷ Ἀρταξέρξῃ, ἀλλὰ ὅτι ἤθελεν αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς εἶναι.

253. TRANSLATE: 1. My father was grateful to the captain, since he did not allow the cowardly soldiers to seize our slaves. 2. During the night, however, it is

not possible to proceed on foot, because we are not able to see the road. 3. Next, mercenaries will cause trouble to the country of the satrap. 4. The men[1] on the heights[1] will understand what it is necessary to do or say. 5. Yes, by Zeus, these men were marching through the snow.

254. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT:—

Πρόξενος.

Πρόξενος δὲ Κύρου στρατηγὸς ἦν Βοιώτιος. καὶ ἔτι νεᾱνίᾱς ὢν ἐβούλετο γίγνεσθαι ἀνὴρ ἄξιος ἄρχειν. τοιοῦτος μὲν εἶναι βουλόμενος, ἐδήλου ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν ἀδικεῖν ἵνα αὐτὸς μέγας[2] γίγνοιτο οὐκ ἤθελεν, ἀγαθὸς δ' ἀεὶ εἶναι καὶ καλός. τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν οἷός τ' ἦν ἄρχειν, τῶν δὲ κακῶν οὔ· οὗτοι γὰρ οὐκ ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τοίνυν τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν αὐτῷ εὖνοι[3] ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ κακοὶ οὐκ ἐπείθοντο οὐδ' ἐν μάχῃ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς Κύρου στρατηγοὺς ἀπέκτεινε,[4] Πρόξενος ἦν ἐτῶν[5] τριᾰ́κοντα.

255. **Vocabulary.**

ἐπιβουλεύω, *plot against.*
καταγελάω, *laugh at, ridicule.*
νομίζω, *regard as a custom, consider, think.*
πάρειμι (παρά + εἰμί), fut. **παρέσομαι**, impf. **παρῆν**, *be present, arrive.*
παρέχω, *furnish.*
σημαίνω, *make a sign, give the signal.*
ἀνδράποδον, *captive, slave.*
ἐλπίς, ἰδος, ἡ, *hope;* **ἐν ἐλπίσιν εἰμί**, *be hopeful.*
Ζεύς, gen. Διός, dat. Διί, acc. Δία, voc. Ζεῦ, *Zeus.*
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night;* **νυκτός**, *by night.*
παῖς, παιδός, gen. dual παιδοιν, gen. plur. παίδων, contrary to **233** *a*, ὁ or ἡ, *child; boy, girl; son.*

[1] οἱ ἄνω. [2] *great.* [3] εὖ + νοῦς. [4] *put to death.* [5] *years.*

πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό, *deed;* plur., sometimes, *trouble;* πράγματα παρέχω, *cause trouble.*
πῦρ, -ός, τό, *fire;* irreg. plur., τὰ πυρά, *fires, fire-signals.*
σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ἡ, *trumpet.*
χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ, *favor, gratitude;* χάριν ἔχω, *be thankful.*
χείρ, -ός, ἡ, dat. plur. χερσί, *hand.*
χιών, -όνος, ἡ, *snow.*
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό, *thing;* plur. *money.*
ὅτε, relative adv., *when.*
ὅτι, conj., *that* (after verbs of *saying, writing,* etc.); *because.*
αὖ, adv., *again, moreover.*
τοίνυν (postpositive), *therefore, moreover.*
ἄνευ, prep. with gen., *without.*
διά, prep. with gen., *through;* with acc., *on account of.*

CHAPTER XVI.

REVIEW.

256. Review of Vocabulary (see **105**).

1. ἀγαθός. 2. ἀδελφός. 3. αἰτέω. 4. αἰτιάομαι. 5. ἄκρος. 6. ἄλλος. 7. ἀμφότερος. 8. ἄμφω. 9. ἀνά. 10. ἀναβαίνω. 11. ἀνδράποδον. 12. ἄνευ. 13. ἀνήρ. 14. ἄνω. 15. ἄξιος. 16. ἄπειμι (εἰμί). 17. ἀπέρχομαι. 18. ἀπέχω. 19. ἀποπέμπω. 20. ἀργύριον. 21. ἀργυροῦς. 22. ἀριθμός. 23. ἁρπάζω. 24. ἄρχω. 25. αὖ. 26. αὐλίζομαι. 27. αὐτός. 28. ἀφαιρέω. 29. ἀφικνέομαι. 30. βάλλω. 31. βασίλειος. 32. βλάπτω. 33. βούλομαι. 34. γάρ. 35. γέ. 36. γέρων. 37. γίγνομαι. 38. γράφω. 39. δαίμων. 40. δέ. 41. δεινός. 42. δέκα. 43. δεξιός. 44. δέχομαι. 45. δέομαι. 46. διά. 47. διαβαίνω. 48. διατρίβω. 49. διδάσκω. 50. δρόμος. 51. δύο. 52. ἐάω. 53. ἐγώ. 54. εἰ. 55. εἰμί. 56. εἶτα. 57. ἕκαστος. 58. ἐκεῖνος. 59. ἐλπίς. 60. ἔξω. 61. ἐπί. 62. ἐπιβουλεύω. 63. ἔπομαι. 64. ἔργον. 65. ἔρχομαι. 66. ἕτερος. 67. ἔτι. 68. εὔχομαι. 69. ἦ. 70. ἡγεμών. 71. ἡγέομαι. 72. ἥδομαι. 73. ἥκω. 74. ἥλιος. 75. θαυμάζω. 76. ἵλεως. 77. ἴσος.

78. ἴσως. 79. καί. 80. κακός. 81. καλέω. 82. καλός. 83. κατά. 84. καταβαίνω. 85. καταγελάω. 86. κῆρυξ. 87. κραυγή. 88. λέγω. 89. λίθος. 90. λόφος. 91. μάχομαι. 92. μέν. 93. μέσος. 94. μεταπέμπομαι. 95. μή. 96. μηκέτι. 97. μήν. 98. (ὁ) μήν. 99. μήτηρ. 100. μῑκρός. 101. μισθός. 102. μόνος. 103. νομίζω. 104. νόμος. 105. νῦν. 106. νύξ. 107. ξένος. 108. ξύλον. 109. ὅδε. 110. οἰκέω. 111. οἶνος. 112. οἷος. 113. οἷός τε. 114. οἴχομαι. 115. ὅλος. 116. ὅμως. 117. ὄνομα. 118. ὅπλα. 119. ὁράω. 120. ὅς. 121. ὅτε. 122. ὅτι. 123. οὗ. 124. οὐδέ. 125. οὐκέτι. 126. οὗτος. 127. οὕτως. 128. ὄχλος. 129. παρά. 130. πάρειμι (εἰμί). 131. παρέχω. 132. πᾶς. 133. πατήρ. 134. παύω. 135. πεζῇ. 136. πεζοί. 137. πειράομαι. 138. πιστός. 139. ποιέω. 140. πολέμιος. 141. πορεύω. 142. ποτέ. 143. πότε. 144. πού. 145. ποῦ. 146. πρᾶγμα. 147. πρό. 148. προσέρχομαι. 149. πῦρ. 150. πῦροί. 151. πώς. 152. πῶς. 153. σάλπιγξ. 154. σημαίνω. 155. σῖτος. 156. στενός. 157. στρατοπεδεύω. 158. στρατόπεδον. 159. στρέφω. 160. σύ. 161. συλλέγω. 162. συμβουλεύω. 163. σύν. 164. τάττω. 165. τέ. 166. τεῖχος. 167. τὶς. 168. τοί. 169. τοίνυν. 170. τοιόσδε. 171. τοιοῦτος. 172. τοσόσδε. 173. τοσοῦτος. 174. τότε. 175. τρέπω. 176. τρέφω. 177. τρίτος. 178. τρόπος. 179. ὑπέρ. 180. ὑποζύγιον. 181. φάλαγξ. 182. φιλίᾱ. 183. φίλιος. 184. φοβέω. 185. φρονέω. 186. φυγή. 187. χάρις. 188. χείρ. 189. χιών. 190. χρῆμα. 191. χρόνος. 192. χρῡσοῦς. 193. χωρίον. 194. ὧδε.

257. Review the **paradigms** in the last seven chapters:—

a. Third Declension of Nouns, mute and liquid stems, **232–235** and **245.**

b. *Adjectives of the First and Second Declension*,
regular, **127–131,**
contract, **141–144,**
Attic, **145–146.**

c. *Pronouns*, relative and demonstrative, **150–154,**
personal, **189–192.**

d. *Present System Middle and Passive*, of λύω, **115–117,**
of contract verbs, **136.**

e. *Future System*, of λύω, **166–170.**
of consonant themes, **171,**
of contract verbs, **214–215.**

f. εἰμί, **210–211.**

258. Review the following **miscellaneous topics**: —

a. Proclitics and Enclitics, **218–221.**
b. Division of Consonants, **225–227.**
c. Substantive and Adjective Uses, **205–206.**
d. Prepositions, **199–204.**
e. Use of οὗτος and ὅδε, **159.**
f. The Negatives, **121–124.**
g. Attributive and Predicate Position, **175–180.**
h. Deponent Verbs, **137.**
i. ἔστι, **251.**
j. Uses of αὐτός, **181–182.**

259. Review the rules of **syntax** in the last seven chapters: —

a. *Genitive Case*, cause, **160,** I.,
material, **160,** IV.,
plenty and want, **193,**
separation, **160,** III.,
source, **160,** II.,
time within which, **194,**
with compound verbs, **248.**

b.	*Dative Case*,	cause, **161,** I. *a*, likeness and unlikeness, **195,** II., manner, **161,** I. *b*, means, **161,** I. *c*, possessor, **195,** I., time when, **161,** II., with compound verbs, **249.**
c.	*Accusative Case*,	adverbial, **183,** with adverbs of swearing, **250,** two accusatives, **196.**
d.	*Agreement*,	of adjectives and participles, **132,** of relatives, **162,** of predicate substantives, **212.**
e.	*Moods*,	command, **118,** exhortation, **119,** deliberative subjunctive, **138,** circumstantial participle, **120,** purpose by future participle, **184.**

260. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT: —

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, Ἀρταξέρξης καὶ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπώπτευε[1] Δᾱρεῖος τελευτὴν[2] τοῦ βίου,[3] ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. Ἀρταξέρξης μὲν οὖν[4] παρῆν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε,[5] καὶ[6] στρατηγὸν δὲ ἐποίησε[5] τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον συλλέγονται. ἀναβαίνει δὲ ὁ Κῦρος σὺν Τισσαφέρνει, ὃν φίλον ἡγεῖτο εἶναι. καὶ Κῦρος ἔχων ὁπλῖτᾱς ἀναβαίνει τριακοσίους,[7] ἡγεμόνα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον.

---

[1] *suspect.*
[2] *end.*
[3] *life.*
[4] *now* (used to continue the narrative).
[5] aor. of ποιέω, here rendered by plupf.
[6] *also.*
[7] *three hundred.*

CHAPTER XVII.

REFLEXIVES. — εἶμι.

261. *a.* The **reflexive pronouns,** ἐμαυτοῦ (*of myself*), σεαυτοῦ (*of yourself*), and ἑαυτοῦ (*of himself*), in the singular are a combination of ἐμε-, σε-, and ἑ-, the stems of the personal pronouns, with the oblique cases of αὐτός.

b. The combination ἐμεαυτου always appears as ἐμαυτοῦ, while σεαυτοῦ and ἑαυτοῦ often contract into σαυτοῦ and αὑτοῦ.

262.

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Sing. G.	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	σαυτοῦ	σαυτῆς
D.	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σαυτῷ	σαυτῇ
A.	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σαυτόν	σαυτήν
Plur. G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν		ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	
D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
G.	αὑτοῦ	αὑτῆς	αὑτοῦ	αὑτῶν	αὑτῶν	αὑτῶν
D.	αὑτῷ	αὑτῇ	αὑτῷ	αὑτοῖς	αὑταῖς	αὑτοῖς
A.	αὑτόν	αὑτήν	αὑτό	αὑτούς	αὑτάς	αὑτά

Suggestions.

263. Observe that: —

a. The reflexives occur only in the oblique cases.

b. In the plurals of ἐμαυτοῦ and σαυτοῦ the two parts (see **261** *a*)

are declined separately, but αὑτοῦ forms its plur. after the manner of the singular.

264. The reflexive pronouns in the genitive do not have the predicate position, as the personal pronouns do (see **180** *e*).

265. RULE. — **Some verbs of sense perception or mental action take the genitive. Such verbs are** ἀκούω,[1] *hear*, μιμνῄσκω, *remind*, ἐπιμελέομαι, *care for*, ἐπιθῡμέω, *desire; e.g.* Κῦρος τοῦ θορύβου ἀκούει, *Cyrus hears the noise.*

266. RULE. — **The genitive is used with many verbs, adjectives, and adverbs which imply various genitive relations already explained.** Thus: —

I. Verbs meaning *share*, *touch*, *take hold of*, *hit*, *miss*, *begin*, etc., take the *partitive genitive* (**68,** II.); *e.g.* τοῦ λόγου δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε, *and he began his speech as follows.*

II. Adjectives in the *superlative degree* and adverbs of *place* may take the *partitive genitive; e.g.* οἱ τοξόται τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἄριστοι ἦσαν, *the bowmen were the bravest of the soldiers;* ποῦ γῆς; *where in* (lit., *of*) *the world?*

III. Verbs meaning *surpass*, *be inferior to*, *rule*[2] *over*,[2] etc., take a genitive, because they imply *comparison* (**411**); *e.g.* τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὔποτε ἡττᾶτο Κῦρος εὖ ποιῶν, *Cyrus was never outdone by his brother in doing good.*

IV. Adjectives signifying *worthy of*, etc., take the genitive of *price* (**80,** I.); *e.g.* ὁ λοχᾱγὸς τῑμῆς ἄξιος ἦν, *the captain was worthy of honor.*

V. Verbs meaning *cease*, *differ from*, *be apart*, etc., take the genitive of *separation* (**160,** III.); *e.g.* τὰ στρατεύματα

---

[1] See vocab.

[2] ἄρχω, *rule*, and other like verbs may also be regarded as implying a noun with which the gen. would be used; *e.g. be ruler of.*

ἀλλήλων σταθμοὺς δύο διέχει, the armies are two days' journey apart from each other.

267. RULE. — **Adjectives, adverbs, or substantives, containing a similar meaning to that of verbs taking the dative of indirect object, also take the dative;** as *πιστός, faithful to, ἐναντίος, hostile to, φίλος* or *φίλιος, friendly to; e.g. τούτῳ τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ φίλος ἐστίν, he is friendly to this man.*

268. TRANSLATE: 1. *οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνῳ τῷ λοχᾱγῷ ἔτι σύμμαχοί ἐσμεν, οὔτ' ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ὁ κρατῶν ἡμῶν.*[1] 2. *ἔγωγε τοίνυν Κῦρον ἐπεθύμουν τοῖς ἐμαυτοῦ*[2] *στρατιώταις μὴ ἐναντίον γίγνεσθαι, νομίζων αὐτὸν μάλιστα τῶν τότε ἱκανὸν εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν τοὺς φίλους.* 3. *ξένος τις παρὼν ἐκ τῆς Ἐφέσου, Γαυλίτης ὄνομα, πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, ἔλεγε, "καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσιν ὅτι ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖ διὰ τὰ νῦν*[3] *δεινά."* 4. *οὔτε πατὴρ οὔτε μήτηρ τῷ ἀνδραπόδῳ ἐστίν.* 5. *ὁ κῆρυξ σημαίνει τοῖς στρατιώταις πορεύεσθαι διὰ τῆς χιόνος καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἔχειν ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ.* 6. *πῶς ἱκανοὶ ἔσεσθε ἄρχειν ὑμῶν αὐτῶν;* 7. *ὁ ἡγεμὼν οὐχ ἡττήσεται τούτου τοῦ ἀνδρὸς εὖ ποιῶν.*

269. TRANSLATE: 1. No, by Zeus, it is not possible for the guide to be without money for six months, and still[4] lead this army. 2. O cowardly man, although[5] you[5] see[5] this, you do not perceive the danger, nor, although you hear such things, do you long for battle. 3. In[6] what[6] part[6] of the plain will they begin battle again?

---

[1] See **205.** [2] See **264.** [3] See **206.** [4] *ὅμως.* [5] See **120.** [6] *ποῦ.*

4. The king will promise to assist these[1] leaders,[1] who are well disposed to the satrap's rule. 5. When the heralds had come to give the signal with the trumpet, the soldiers became hopeful. 6. Let them neither laugh at Cyrus, nor plot against him.

270. εἶμι (theme *ἰ-*; cf. Lat. *ire*), *go, come.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subjv.	Pres. Opt.	Pres. Imv.	Impf. Ind.	Pres. Inf.
S. 1	εἶμι	ἴω	ἴοιμι or *ἰοίην*		ᾖειν or ᾔα	ἰέναι
2	εἶ	ἴῃς	ἴοις	ἴθι	ᾔεις or *ἤεισθα*	
3	εἶσι	ἴῃ	ἴοι	ἴτω	ᾔει or *ἤειν*	
D. 2	ἴτον	ἴητον	ἴοιτον	ἴτον	ᾖτον	Pres. Partic.
3	ἴτον	ἴητον	*ἰοίτην*	ἴτων	ᾔτην	
P. 1	ἴμεν	ἴωμεν	ἴοιμεν		ᾖμεν	Masc. ἰών
2	ἴτε	ἴητε	ἴοιτε	ἴτε	ᾖτε	Fem. ἰοῦσα
3	ἴᾶσι	ἴωσι	ἴοιεν	ἴτωσαν or ἰόντων	ᾖσαν or *ἤεσαν*	Neut. ἰόν

SUGGESTIONS.

271. Observe that:—

a. εἶμι is found only in the pres. system.

b. The theme is *ἰ-*. This will explain many apparent irregularities. Compare the forms of εἶμι with those of εἰμί, theme *ἐσ-* (**210**).

272. The present indicative of εἶμι has often the force of a future; cf. Eng. "I am going to-morrow."

273. RULE. — **After verbs meaning to *strive for, care for, effect,* the future indicative with ὅπως is used**

[1] See **69**, I., note.

after both primary and secondary tenses. The negative is μή (see **122** *a*); *e.g.* *ἐπιμελεῖται ὅπως μήποτε ἄσιτοι ἔσονται, he takes care that they shall never be without food; ἔπρᾱττον ὅπως τις βοηθήσει, they were trying to bring (it) about, that some one should assist (them).*

These clauses, since they constitute the object of the principal verb, are called **object clauses.**

NOTE.—Sometimes the main verb before *ὅπως* is not expressed, but *σκόπει* or *σκοπεῖτε* (imv. sing. and plur. of *σκοπέω, see*), or some such verb, is understood; *e.g.* *ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίᾱς, (see to it) that you be men worthy of freedom.*

274. TRANSLATE: 1. *τί πάλιν εἰς τὸ αὐτῶν στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἴᾶσιν οἱ λόχοι;* 2. *καὶ τῶν παρ'*[1] *ἑαυτῷ*[1] *δὲ βαρβάρων Κῦρος ἐπιμελεῖται ὅπως πολεμεῖν ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται.* 3. *ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄριστοι τῶν ἀνδρῶν, ἵνα ἄξιοι ἦτε τοῦ*[2] *κρατεῖν*[2] *ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς.* 4. *τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀκοῦον τὸ στράτευμα ἐπιθῡμήσεται μάχης.* 5. *ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ ἔλεγε, "νὴ Δία, ὦ ἡγεμών, ἔχομέν σοι χάριν."* 6. *νομίζομεν δὲ μᾶλλον δεῖν ἄνω εἰς τὰ ἄκρα ἀπιέναι πειρᾶσθαι· σὺ οὖν πείθου καὶ ἐπιμελοῦ ὅπως ἀποπέμψεις ἡμᾶς.*

275. TRANSLATE: 1. The king was always outdone by Cyrus in doing good. 2. The mother will take the boy[3] by the hand.[3] 3. The gods seem to be hostile to the enemy, but allies to us. 4. The king will perceive that you are trying to harm his slaves, and will bring it about that you shall no longer be able to cause him

[1] Prepositional phrase used as adj.; see **206.**

[2] Inf. used as noun; see **205.**

[3] *Boy*, dir. obj. in acc.; *hand*, gen., see **266, I.**

trouble. 5. The hoplites that are well disposed to Cyrus will go away from the phalanx to the river Euphrates. 6. Let the general see to it that the beacon-fires are a parasang apart from each other.

276. **Vocabulary.**

ἀκούω, fut. **ἀκούσομαι**, *hear*, takes gen. of the person and acc. of the thing.

γιγνώσκω (theme *γνο-*),[1] fut. **γνώσομαι**, *recognize, perceive, know, learn.*

διέχω, *hold apart, be apart.*

βοηθέω (*βοηθε-*; *βοή, cry,* + *θέω*), *run to a cry for help, assist.* Takes dat.

δοκέω (*δοκ-*), fut. **δόξω**, *seem, seem good, seem best.*

κρατέω (*κρατε-*), *be powerful, rule over, rule.*

ἐπιθῡμέω (*ἐπιθῡμε-*), *desire, long for.*

ἡττάομαι, *be surpassed, be outdone, be conquered.*

λαμβάνω (*λαβ-*), fut. **λήψομαι**, *take, take hold of.*

πράττω (*πραγ-*), fut. **πράξω**, *do, accomplish, bring about.*

σκοπέω (*σκοπε-, σκεπ-*), fut. **σκέψομαι**, *see, see to it, look at.*

ὑπισχνέομαι (*σεχ-*: *ὑπό* + *ἰσχνέυμαι*, expanded from *ἴσχω* = *ἔχω*), *promise.*

σύμμαχος (*σύν* + *μάχομαι*), *ally.*

τῑμή, *honor.*

εὔνους (*εὖ* + *νοῦς*, **92**) masc. and fem., **εὔνουν** neut., etc., *well disposed.*

ἱκανός, *sufficient, able.*

ἔγωγε, *I at least.*

εὖ, adv., *well;* **εὖ ποιῶ**, *do good to.*

μᾶλα, adv., *very, very much;* compar. **μᾶλλον**, *more, rather;* superl. **μάλιστα**, *most, especially.*

πάλιν, adv., *back, again.*

καί, conj., *and, also, even;* **καί . . . δέ**, *and also.*

οὔτε . . . οὔτε, *neither . . . nor.*

CHAPTER XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (SIBILANT AND F STEMS). AORIST SYSTEM.

277. The declension of **stems in a sibilant** (**230** *c*) and of **stems in F** (**230** *d*) is illustrated by the following: —

[1] Do not fail to learn the theme of every new verb. See **172.**

	(τό) ὄρος (ὀρεσ-), *mountain.*		(ἡ) τριήρης (τριηρεσ-), *trireme.*	
Sing. N.	ὄρος		τριήρης	
G.	(ὄρεος)	ὄρους	(τριήρεος)	τριήρους
D.	(ὄρεϊ)	ὄρει	(τριήρεϊ)	τριήρει
A.	ὄρος		(τριήρεα)	τριήρη
V.	ὄρος		τριῆρες	
Dual N. A. V.	(ὄρεε)	ὄρει	(τριήρεε)	τριήρει
G. D.	(ὀρέοιν)	ὀροῖν	(τριηρέοιν)	τριήροιν
Plur. N. V.	(ὄρεα)	ὄρη	(τριήρεες)	τριήρεις
G.	ὀρέων	ὀρῶν	(τριηρέων)	τριήρων
D.	ὄρεσι		τριήρεσι	
A.	(ὄρεα)	ὄρη	(τριήρεας)	τριήρεις

	(ὁ) βασιλεύς (βασιλεϝ-), *king.*		(ὁ or ἡ) βοῦς (βοϝ-), *ox, cow.*	(ἡ) ναῦς (ναϝ-), *ship.*
Sing. N.	βασιλεύς		βοῦς	ναῦς
G.	βασιλέως		βοός	νεώς
D.	(βασιλέϊ)	βασιλεῖ	βοΐ	νηΐ
A.	βασιλέᾱ		βοῦν	ναῦν
V.	βασιλεῦ		βοῦ	ναῦ
Dual N. A. V.	βασιλέε		βόε	νῆε
G. D.	βασιλέοιν		βοοῖν	νεοῖν
Plur. N. V.	(βασιλέες)	βασιλεῖς	βόες	νῆες
G.	βασιλέων		βοῶν	νεῶν
D.	βασιλεῦσι		βουσί	ναυσί
A.	βασιλέᾱς		βοῦς	ναῦς

Suggestions.

278. Observe that:—

a. The Summary of the Third Declension (**238–244**) applies in the main to stems in -σ-, but these exceptions (*b* and *c*) occur.

b. The final -σ- of each stem is dropped before all case-endings, and contraction results; *e.g.* ὄρε(σ)ος becomes ὄρους.

c. The neuter stem in -εσ- (ὀρεσ-) becomes -ος in nom., acc., and voc. sing., instead of remaining unchanged (see **240** *a*).

d. The contract forms in ὄρος, τριήρης, and βασιλεύς follow the Rules for Contraction (see **77–79**), except in the gen. and dat. dual and gen. plur. of τριήρης, which are paroxytone, and in the form of τριήρεις (acc. plur.)

279. Observe that: —

a. Stems in F follow the rules given in the Summary of the Third Declension (**238–244**).

b. The original F (see **230** *d*) passes into its vowel form, -υ-, before a consonant, and disappears before a vowel; *e.g.* βασιλεύς, but βασιλέως.

c. In ναῦς, the stem να(ϝ)- becomes νε- before a long vowel, and νη- before a short vowel, but is ναυ- before a consonant; *e.g.* νεώς νῆε, ναῦς.

280. (τό) **κέρας**, *horn, wing*, is declined regularly, with the stem κερᾱτ-, like ὄνομα (**232**), and also with a contract sibilant stem, as follows: —

Singular.		Dual.		Plural.	
N.	**κέρας**	N. A. V.	(κέραε) **κέρᾱ**	N.	(κέραα) **κέρᾱ**
G.	(κέραος) **κέρως**	G. D.	(κεράοιν) **κερῷν**	G.	(κεράων) **κερῶν**
D.	(κέραϊ) **κέραι**			D.	**κέρᾱσι**
A.	**κέρας**			A.	(κέραα) **κέρᾱ**
V.	**κέρας**			V.	(κέραα) **κέρᾱ**

281. Translate: 1. ὁ βασιλεὺς τοίνυν ἐπεθύμει τῶν νεῶν· αἱ δὲ οὐ παρῆσαν. 2. οἱ πολέμιοι τὰ ἄκρα λείψουσιν, ἐπεὶ γιγνώσκουσιν ὅτι ἡ πεζῶν στρατιὰ ἤδη ἐστὶν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ἀκούουσιν ὅτι αἱ τριήρεις ἀπ' Ἐφέσου πλέουσιν. 3. ταύτης τῆς τῑμῆς ἄξιος

ἀνὴρ ποῦ γῆς ἔστιν; 4. τέλος δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ξένοι παρῆσαν, οἱ μὲν ἱππεῖς ἐτόξευον, οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ ἔθεον δρόμῳ καὶ ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς τῶν πολεμίων. 5. ὁ μὲν κῆρυξ σημαίνει, ὁ δὲ λοχᾱγὸς ἀκούων οὐκ ἐπιμελεῖται ὅπως τοὺς ὁπλίτᾱς συλλέξει. 6. καὶ οὐκέτι τριάκοντα στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων.

282. TRANSLATE: 1. In this village, however, there was also a multitude of cattle. 2. Both wings of the army, therefore, were advancing on a run into battle. 3. But the generals both see and recognize the brother of the king. 4. Let us go where it seems good to the allies, who promised to be faithful and well-disposed to the king.

AORIST SYSTEM.

283. In the indicative the **aorist** is a simple past tense, like the English past (*did*) or the Latin historical perfect. The imperfect, on the other hand, denotes action continued, customary, or attempted, in the past, like the Latin imperfect or the English *was doing*, *used to do*, or *tried to do*.

284. The aorist is often used, particularly in temporal clauses, where the English employs the pluperfect; *e.g.* ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἔθῡσαν, *when they had done this, they sacrificed*.

285. In the subjunctive, optative, imperative, and infinitive, except in indirect discourse, the present and

aorist have no special distinction in time, but the present is used for continued action and the aorist for the simple occurrence.

286. *a.* The stem of the aorist is formed, except in liquid verbs, by adding *-σα* to the theme, the final vowel of which is lengthened in many verbs[1]; *e.g.* λυ-, λῡσα-; ποιε-, ποιησα-.

b. Like the other secondary tenses, the aorist takes the augment in the indicative only; *e.g.* indic. ἔλῡσα, subjv. λύσω, opt. λύσαιμι, etc.

287. The aorist[2] system is thus inflected: —

Active Voice.

	Indicative.	Subjv.	Optative.	Imperative.
Sing. 1	ἔλῡσα, *I loosed.*	λύσω	λύσαιμι	
2	ἔλῡσας	λύσῃς	λύσαις, λύσειας	S. 2 λῦσον
3	ἔλῡσε	λύσῃ	λύσαι, λύσειε	3 λῡσάτω
				D. 2 λύσατον
				3 λῡσάτων
Dual 2	ἐλύσατον	λύσητον	λύσαιτον	P. 2 λύσατε
3	ἐλῡσάτην	λύσητον	λῡσαίτην	3 λῡσάτωσαν, λῡσάντων
Plur. 1	ἐλύσαμεν	λύσωμεν	λύσαιμεν	
2	ἐλύσατε	λύσητε	λύσαιτε	Infinitive.
3	ἔλῡσαν	λύσωσι	λύσαιεν, λύσειαν	λῦσαι
				Participle.
				λύσᾱς, -σᾶσα, -σαν

[1] See **214** and foot-note 1.

[2] Another set of forms, based directly on the theme, without the syllable *-σα*, is frequent in many verbs. These constitute the *second aorist* system. See **429–430.**

MIDDLE VOICE.

	Indicative.	Subjv.	Optative.	Imperative.
Sing. 1	ἐλῡσάμην	λύσωμαι	λῡσαίμην	S. 2 λῦσαι
2	ἐλύσω	λύσῃ	λύσαιο	3 λῡσάσθω
3	ἐλύσατο	λύσηται	λύσαιτο	D. 2 λύσασθον
				3 λῡσάσθων
Dual 2	ἐλύσασθον	λύσησθον	λύσαισθον	P. 2 λύσασθε
3	ἐλῡσάσθην	λύσησθον	λῡσαίσθην	3 λῡσάσθωσαν or λῡσάσθων
Plur. 1	ἐλῡσάμεθα	λῡσώμεθα	λῡσαίμεθα	Infinitive.
2	ἐλύσασθε	λύσησθε	λύσαισθε	λύσασθαι
3	ἐλύσαντο	λύσωνται	λύσαιντο	Participle.
				λῡσάμενος, -η, -ον

288. RULE. — **A prohibition** (i.e. *a negative command*) **is expressed by μή with the present imperative or aorist subjunctive.** Between these forms the distinction stated in **285** is drawn; *e.g.* —

μὴ ποιήσῃς τοῦτο, *do not do this* (referring to a special case); *μὴ ποίει τοῦτο*, *do not do this* (as a general rule).

289. TRANSLATE: 1. κελευσάτω δὲ αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος τι παρ᾽ ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. 2. μὴ ἡγήσησθε ἡμῖν, ὦ στρατηγοί, κατὰ τὰ τοῦ χωρίου τείχη. 3. καὶ ἐκέλευσε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἄρχειν, Πρόξενον δὲ τοῦ ἑτέρου· αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἔταξεν. 4. ἔγωγε τοῦ πατρὸς τοιούτους λόγους ἀκούσᾱς ἀγαθὸς γενήσομαι καὶ τῇ μητρὶ πείσομαι. 5. τὰς τριήρεις ἃς ἐποίησαν[1] ἔπλησαν σίτου[2] καὶ εἰς

[1] See **284.**

[2] See **193.**

Σάμον ἔπλευσαν. 6. ἐκείνῳ τῷ χρόνῳ τοῦ λόγου ἤρξατο ὧδε.

290. TRANSLATE: 1. Do not, therefore, obey the words of bad men. 2. And this was the end of this day. 3. Let them be neither hostile to us, nor friends to the satrap. 4. Do you, O fellow[1] soldiers,[1] care for the shields in the palace. 5. Let us send for the remaining horsemen, that we may learn why they did these (things).

291. **Vocabulary.**

λείπω (λιπ-), **λείψω**, *leave, forsake, abandon.*
πίμπλημι (πλα-), **πλήσω**, **ἔπλησα**, *fill.*
πλέω (πλευ-, for πλεϝ-), **πλεύσομαι** or **πλευσοῦμαι**, **ἔπλευσα**, *sail.*
σφενδονάω, **ἐσφενδόνησα**,[2] *use the sling.*
τιτρώσκω (τρο-), **τρώσω**, **ἔτρωσα**, *wound.*
ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *shield.*
ἱππεύς, -έως, ὁ, *horseman.*
μέρος, -ους, τό, *part, share.*
πλῆθος, -ους, τό, *number, amount, multitude.*
τεῖχος, -ους, τό, *wall, rampart.*
τέλος, -ους, τό, *end;* as adv. acc., *finally.*
λοιπός, *left, remaining, rest of.*
εἴσω, adv., *within;* also with gen., *within, inside of.*
ἤδη, adv., *now, already.*

CHAPTER XIX.

LIQUID VERBS. — RECIPROCAL, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

292. Liquid verbs (*i.e.* those whose themes end in a liquid; see **226**), in forming the *present stem*, often add -ι to the theme.[3] The following euphonic changes result: —

[1] ἄνδρες στρατιῶται.
[2] See **214** and foot-note 1.
[3] Some liquid verbs, like μένω (μεν-), *remain*, do not add ι to the theme.

a. In themes ending in *-ν* or *-ρ*, the *-ι* is transposed and forms a diphthong (*-αι* or *-ει*) with the theme vowel; *e.g.*—

(*φαν-*, *φανι-*, *φαιν-*), *φαίνω*, *show*;
(*κτεν-*, *κτενι-*, *κτειν-*), *κτείνω*, *kill*.

b. But in themes containing the vowel *-ι-* or *-υ-*, the added *-ι* is transferred, and unites with the theme vowel, forming *-ῑ-* or *-ῡ-*; *e.g.*—

(*κριν-*, *κρινι-*, *κρῑν-*), *κρίνω*, *pick out*, *decide*;
(*αἰσχυν-*, *αἰσχυνι-*, *αἰσχῡν-*), *αἰσχύνω*, *shame*.

c. In themes ending in *-λ*, the *-ι* unites with the λ, forming *-λλ-*; *e.g.* (*βαλ-*, *βαλι-*, *βαλλ-*), *βάλλω*, *throw*.

293. Liquid verbs form the *future stem* by adding *-ε* (instead of *-σ*) to the theme, and contracting it with the thematic vowel (see rules, **77–79**); *e.g.* *φαίνω* (*φαν-*); fut. (*φανέω*) *φανῶ*.

294. Liquid verbs form the aorist stem by adding *-α* (not *-σα*) to the theme, the vowel of which is lengthened,

α to *η* (or to *ᾱ* after *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ*),
ε to *ει*,
ι to *ῑ*,
υ to *ῡ*; *e.g.*—

φαίνω (*φαν-*), aor. *ἔφηνα*, *show*;
περαίνω (*περαν-*), aor. *ἐπέρᾱνα*, *accomplish*;
κτείνω (*κτεν-*), aor. *ἔκτεινα*, *kill*;
κρίνω (*κριν-*), aor. *ἔκρῑνα*, *pick out*, *decide*;
αἰσχύνω (*αἰσχυν-*), aor. *ᾔσχῡνα*, *shame*.

295. Taking *φαίνω* as a model, the inflection of the future and aorist systems of a liquid verb is as follows:—

	FUTURE.		AORIST.	
	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
	Indicative.	**Indicative.**	**Indicative.**	**Indicative.**
Sing. 1	φανῶ	φανοῦμαι	ἔφηνα	ἐφηνάμην
2	φανεῖς	φανεῖ	ἔφηνας	ἐφήνω
3	φανεῖ	φανεῖται	ἔφηνε	ἐφήνατο
Dual 2	φανεῖτον	φανεῖσθον	ἐφήνατον	ἐφήνασθον
3	φανεῖτον	φανεῖσθον	ἐφηνάτην	ἐφηνάσθην
Plur. 1	φανοῦμεν	φανούμεθα	ἐφήναμεν	ἐφηνάμεθα
2	φανεῖτε	φανεῖσθε	ἐφήνατε	ἐφήνασθε
3	φανοῦσι	φανοῦνται	ἔφηναν	ἐφήναντο
	Subjunctive.	**Subjunctive.**	**Subjunctive.**	**Subjunctive.**
Sing. 1			φήνω	φήνωμαι
2			φήνῃς	φήνῃ
3			φήνῃ	φήνηται
Dual 2	*None*	*None*	φήνητον	φήνησθον
3			φήνητον	φήνησθον
Plur. 1			φήνωμεν	φηνώμεθα
2			φήνητε	φήνησθε
3			φήνωσι	φήνωνται
	Optative.	**Optative.**	**Optative.**	**Optative.**
Sing. 1	φανοῖμι, φανοίην	φανοίμην	φήναιμι	φηναίμην
2	φανοῖς, φανοίης	φανοῖο	*φήναις*, φήνειας	φήναιο
3	φανοῖ, φανοίη	φανοῖτο	*φήναι*, φήνειε	φήναιτο
Dual 2	φανοῖτον	φανοῖσθον	φήναιτον	φήναισθον
3	φανοίτην	φανοίσθην	φηναίτην	φηναίσθην
Plur. 1	φανοῖμεν	φανοίμεθα	φήναιμεν	φηναίμεθα
2	φανοῖτε	φανοῖσθε	φήναιτε	φήναισθε
3	φανοῖεν	φανοῖντο	*φήναιεν*, φήνειαν	φήναιντο

	FUTURE.		AORIST.	
	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
	Imperative.	**Imperative.**	**Imperative.**	**Imperative.**
Sing. 2			**φῆνον**	**φῆναι**
3			**φηνάτω**	**φηνάσθω**
Dual 2	*None*	*None*	**φήνατον**	**φήνασθον**
3			**φηνάτων**	**φηνάσθων**
Plur. 2			**φήνατε**	**φήνασθε**
3			*φηνάτωσαν* or **φηνάντων**	*φηνάσθωσαν* or **φηνάσθων**
Inf.	**φανεῖν**	**φανεῖσθαι**	**φῆναι**	**φήνασθαι**
Part.	**φανῶν, -οῦσα, -οῦν**	**φανούμενος, -η, -ον**	**φήνᾱς -ᾶσα, -αν**	**φηνάμενος, -η, -ον**

SUGGESTIONS.

296. Observe that: —

a. The forms of the fut. of liquid verbs are like the pres. of *φιλέω*.

b. The aor. is inflected like *ἔλῡσα*, except for the omission of *σ*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

297. A conditional sentence is called **simple particular** when the supposition refers to a single occasion in the present or past.

RULE. — **In simple particular conditions, the "if" clause has εἰ with the present or past indicative, and the conclusion has the indicative or any appropriate form**; *e.g.* *εἰ ἔλῡε τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει, if he broke the truce, he is receiving the penalty.*

298. A conditional sentence is called **a more vivid future** when the supposition refers to the future and implies considerable likelihood of fulfilment.

RULE. — **In more vivid future conditions, the "if" clause has ἐάν**[1] **(ἤν or ἄν) with the subjunctive** (*present or aorist*), **the conclusion has the future indicative or some other future form**; *e.g.* *ἐὰν ταῦτα ποιήσῃ, αὐτῷ πολεμήσω, if he shall do this, I will make war on him.*

299. TRANSLATE: 1. ὁ λοχᾱγὸς ἐν τῇ νηὶ ὢν καὶ ἐπὶ Βυζάντιον πλέων εἶχε τὸν ἥλιον ἐν δεξιᾷ. 2. τοῦ τῶν ἱππέων πλήθους οὐχ οἷοί τ' ἔσεσθε ἀποκτεῖναι οὐδένα.[2] 3. οἱ κήρῡκες, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἤγγειλαν τοῖς Κύρου φίλοις ὅτι τῇ σῇ χώρᾳ οἱ πολέμιοι πράγματα ἤδη παρέχουσιν. 4. ἐὰν Κῦρος φήνηται, τί ἔτι μενοῦμεν;

300. TRANSLATE: 1. If this wing of the army leaves the heights, the enemy will appear. 2. They fill four of my ships with cattle. 3. What shall we do, if it does not seem best to the foot-soldiers to become allies to us?

301. The **reciprocal pronoun,** meaning *each other, one another*, is necessarily found only in the oblique cases of the dual and plural. It has the regular endings of the first and second declensions.

	DUAL.			PLURAL.		
Gen.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
Dat.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
Acc.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἄλληλα

[1] *I.e.* εἰ + ἄν.

[2] In Greek a double negative does not usually make an affirmative.

302. The **interrogative pronoun,** τίς, *who*, and the **indefinite pronoun,** τὶς, *some*, *any*, are thus declined: —

	Interrogative.		Indefinite.	
	M. and F.	**Neut.**	**M. and F.**	**Neut.**
Sing. Nom.	τίς	τί	τὶς	τὶ
Gen.	τίνος or τοῦ		τινός or του	
Dat.	τίνι or τῷ		τινί or τῳ	
Acc.	τίνα	τί	τινά	τὶ
Dual N. A. V.	τίνε		τινέ	
G. D.	τίνοιν		τινοῖν	
Plur. Nom.	τίνες	τίνα	τινές	τινά
Gen.	τίνων		τινῶν	
Dat.	τίσι		τισί	
Acc.	τίνας	τίνα	τινάς	τινά

Suggestions.

303. Observe that: —

a. The interrogative and indefinite are spelled alike, but accented differently in every form.

b. The indefinite is enclitic (see **220** *a*). All its dissyllabic forms accent the last syllable, while all the dissyllabic forms of the interrogative accent the first.

304. The **indefinite relative pronoun** ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, *whoever*, *whichever*, is formed by the union of ὅς (**150**) and τὶς (**302**), each being declined separately. It has shorter forms in the genitive and dative singular, like those of τὶς, and also in the genitive and dative plural.

Note. — This pronoun is also often used as an indirect interrogative; *e.g.* ὥρα ἐστὶ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, *it is time to plan what it is necessary to do.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
Gen.	οὑτινος or ὅτου	ἧστινος	οὑτινος or ὅτου
Dat.	ᾧτινι or ὅτῳ	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι or ὅτῳ
Acc.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
Dual N. A.	ὥτινε	ὥτινε	ὥτινε
G. D.	οἵντινοιν	οἵντινοιν	οἵντινοιν
Plur. Nom.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
Gen.	ὧντινων or ὅτων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων or ὅτων
Dat.	οἷστισι or ὅτοις	αἷστισι	οἷστισι or ὅτοις
Acc.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

305. The **possessive pronouns,** ἐμός (*my*), σός (*your*), ἡμέτερος (*our*), ὑμέτερος (*your*), and σφέτερος (*their*), are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

306. The **numerals,** εἷς (*one*), δύο (*two*), τρεῖς (*three*), and τέτταρες (*four*), are declined as follows: —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc., Fem., and Neut.
Nom.	εἷς	μία	ἕν	N. A.	δύο
Gen.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	G. D.	δυοῖν
Dat.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί		
Acc.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν		

	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	τρεῖς	τρία	Nom.	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
Gen.	τριῶν		Gen.	τεττάρων	
Dat.	τρισί		Dat.	τέτταρσι	
Acc.	τρεῖς	τρία	Acc.	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

307. Like εἷς are declined οὐδείς and μηδείς, *no one; e.g.* οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, etc.

308. TRANSLATE: 1. αἱ μὲν ἡμέτεραι τρεῖς τριήρεις οὐκέτι πάρεισιν· μῑκρὰ δὲ πλοῖά τινα λοιπά ἐστιν ἐν οἷς τὰς ἀσπίδας καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὑμέτερα ὅπλα οἴσομεν πρὸς Ἀριαῖον. 2. τούτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων, ὦ ἄνδρες[1] στρατιῶται,[1] ὑμεῖς κρίνατε τίνες ἀγαθοί εἰσι, τίνες δ' αὖ κακοί. 3. τοῦ μὲν δεξιοῦ παρὰ τῷ ποταμῷ ταττομένου ἦρχε Πρόξενος, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον πορευόμενον εἰς τὴν κώμην ἦγεν ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός. 4. τῶν παίδων ὅντινα βούλει, πρὸς τὸ ὄρος ἡγεμὼν ἔστω. 5. τῶν πρόσθεν ἄλλος τις φανεῖται. 6. λέγειν τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε μὴ αἰσχύνασθε. 7. ἐὰν οἱ ἱππεῖς μου ἀπίωσιν εἰς τὰ ἔρημα ὄρη, ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐχ οἷός τ' ἔσται χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς. 8. ἀγγείλατε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἡμᾶς[2] περάναντας[2] ἃ ἐκέλευσεν. 9. καὶ πρόσθεν Κῦρος ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις ᾗ νῦν ἐθέλει.

309. TRANSLATE: 1. Moreover, if the enemy answer nothing[3] in regard to these things, let the two messengers go back to the army. 2. Finally, those in the rear pelted one another with stones. 3. If any of the van throw their spears and use the sling, they will wound the enemy within the walls. 4. But when it was now time to go back to the camp, they stationed one company of the hoplites in the rear. 5. If some of the peltasts do not arrive within three days, we shall leave the stronghold. 6. Do not kill the messengers of the king.

---

[1] *Fellow-soldiers.*

[2] *That we have accomplished.*

[3] Use μηδέν in the *if*-clause of a condition; see **122** *c*.

310. Vocabulary.

ἀγγέλλω (*ἀγγελ-*), **ἀγγελῶ**, **ἤγγειλα**, *announce.*

αἰσχύνω (*αἰσχυν-*), **αἰσχυνῶ**, **ᾔσχῡνα**, *shame;* mid., *be* or *feel ashamed.*

ἄπειμι (*εἶμι*), impf. **ἀπῆειν**, *go away* or *back.*

ἀποκρῑ́νομαι (*κριν-*), **-κρινοῦμαι**, **-εκρῑνάμην**, *answer.*

ἀποκτείνω (*κτεν-*), **-κτενῶ**, **-έκτεινα**, *kill, put to death.*

ἐθέλω (*ἐθελ-*), or **θέλω**, **ἐθελήσω**, **ἠθέλησα**, *be willing, wish.*

φαίνω (*φαν-*), **φανῶ**, **ἔφηνα**, *show;* mid., *appear.*

φέρω (*φερ-*, *οἰ-*, *ἐνεκ-*), fut. **οἴσω**, aor. **ἤνεγκα**, *bear, carry.*

χράομαι, **χρήσομαι**,[1] **ἐχρησάμην**, *use* (takes dat.).

ἄγγελος, *messenger.*

οὐδείς, **οὐδεμία**, **οὐδέν**, *no one, nothing;* **οὐδέν**, adv., *not at all.*

δεξιός, *right;* **ἐν δεξιᾷ**, *on the right;* **τὸ δεξιόν**, *the right* (*wing*).

ἔρημος, *lonely, deserted.*

εὐώνυμος (*εὖ* + *ὄνομα*, a euphemism), *left;* **τὸ εὐώνυμον**, *the left* (*wing*).

ὄπισθεν, *from behind, behind;* **οἱ ὄπισθεν**, *those in the rear.*

πρόσθεν, *before, in front;* **οἱ πρόσθεν**, *those in front, the van.*

ἐπί, prep. with acc., *to, against.*

πρός, with acc., *to, towards, against, in respect to.*

CHAPTER XX.

PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM. — ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

311. The **perfect active system** includes the perfect and pluperfect tenses, which correspond respectively to the English perfect definite (*have done*) and the pluperfect (*had done*).

312. *a.* The **perfect active stem** is formed from the theme by adding *-κα*. A syllable is also prefixed, consisting of the initial consonant followed by *ε*; *e.g.* theme **λυ-**, pf. act. stem **λελυκα-**.

[1] Some verbs (*χράομαι*, *ζάω*, etc.) contract *αε* into *η*, contrary to **78** *b*.

b. The prefixing of this syllable is called **reduplication.** It is the sign of *completed action*, and occurs in all moods.

313. PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM.

(Formed on the perfect active stem λελυκα-.)

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	**Pluperfect.**	**Perfect.**
Sing. 1	λέλυκα	ἐλελύκη	λελύκω[1]
2	λέλυκας	ἐλελύκης	λελύκῃς
3	λέλυκε	ἐλελύκει	λελύκῃ
Dual 2	λελύκατον	ἐλελύκετον	λελύκητον
3	λελύκατον	ἐλελυκέτην	λελύκητον
Plur. 1	λελύκαμεν	ἐλελύκεμεν	λελύκωμεν
2	λελύκατε	ἐλελύκετε	λελύκητε
3	λελύκᾶσι	ἐλελύκεσαν	λελύκωσι

	Optative.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
	Perfect.	**Perfect.**	**Perfect.**
Sing. 1	λελύκοιμι[1]		λελυκέναι
2	λελύκοις	[λέλυκε[1]	
3	λελύκοι	λελυκέτω	
			Participle.
Dual 2	λελύκοιτον	λελύκετον	
3	λελυκοίτην	λελυκέτων	**Perfect.**
Plur. 1	λελύκοιμεν		Masc. λελυκώς
2	λελύκοιτε	λελύκετε	Fem. λελυκυῖα
3	λελύκοιεν	λελυκέτωσαν]	Neut. λελυκός

[1] The pf. subjv. and opt. active rarely occur, and the pf. imv. active existed for few verbs. They are given here chiefly for the sake of completeness.

Suggestions.

314. Observe that: —

a. The perfect is a primary tense (see **35** *b*) and has primary endings, except in the opt., which has secondary endings in all tenses (see **42** *c*).

b. The pluperfect prefixes the syllabic augment to the perfect stem, and, like the imperfect (see **37**), occurs only in the indicative.

315. Observe that: —

The accent of the pf. infin. and partic. is not recessive (see **39**).

Perfect System of Various Verbs.

316. *a.* Many *pure verbs* (see **166**), especially contracts,[1] lengthen the final vowel of the theme in forming the perfect; *e.g.* *τῑμάω*, *τετῑμηκα*; *φιλέω*, *πεφίληκα*.

b. Verbs with themes in *-τ*, *-δ*, or *-θ*, drop those consonants in forming the perfect; *e.g.* *σῴζω* (*σωδ-*), *σέσωκα*[2]; *πείθω* (*πιθ-*), *πέπεικα*.

317. *a.* Verbs beginning with a *rough mute* change it in the reduplication to the smooth mute of the same class (see **352**); *e.g.* *θύω*, pf. *τέθυκα*.

b. Verbs beginning with a *vowel* lengthen the vowel in reduplicating, so that reduplication has in these verbs the same form as the temporal augment; *e.g.* *ἁρπάζω*, *ἥρπακα*.

c. Verbs beginning

1. with a *double consonant* (*ξ*, *ψ*, or *ζ*),
2. with *two consonants* (except a mute and a liquid),

or 3. with *ῥ*,

---

[1] See **214**, foot-note 1.

[2] See p. 59, foot-note 1.

omit the consonant in reduplicating, so that reduplication in these cases is the same as syllabic augment; *e.g.* —

1. ζάω, *live*, ἔζηκα,
2. σκευάζω, *get ready*, ἐσκεύακα,
3. ῥέω (ῥυ-), *flow*, ἐρρύηκα.[1]

318. When the reduplication consists merely of *the temporal* or *the syllabic augment*, the pluperfect does not prefix ἐ-, as it does in the case of all verbs taking the regular reduplication (**312**).

319. *Compound verbs* take the reduplication, like the augment (**203**), after the preposition; *e.g.* ἀναπαύω, *cause to cease*, ἀναπέπαυκα.

320. TRANSLATE: 1. ἡρπάκᾱσιν ἅτινα ἐπιτήδεια ἕκαστος οἷός τ' ἦν. 2. ἐπεὶ ἡμῖν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, σεσώκαμεν τὰ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ὅπλα καὶ νῦν παρασκευάζομεν ὅπως τὸ στρατόπεδον τῶν πολεμίων διαρπάσομεν. 3. ἔγωγε, ἐὰν μὲν τῶν μῡρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις αὐτοῖς φαίνηται σῴζεσθαι, συμβουλεύσω αὐτοῖς ἐπιέναι. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες νυκτὸς καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν ἐρήμην κώμην ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων, οἱ πολέμιοι φαίνονται καὶ αὐτῶν τινας ἀποκτείνουσιν. 5. ὁ Κλέαρχος ξένος Κύρου καὶ Ἑλλήνων στρατηγὸς ἀγαθὸς ἀποτέθνηκεν.

321. TRANSLATE: 1. The soldiers, if they see our camp, will halt and pour a libation to the gods. 2. Are you not ashamed to[2] do[2] such things? 3. He will live

[1] Observe that initial ρ is doubled in the pf., as also after the augment in the impf. and aor.; *e.g.* ἔρρεον.

[2] Use partic.

as[1] long[1] (a time) as[2] he wishes to live.[3] 4. And the heralds answered that the companies which were going away were striking their shields against their spears. 5. Those in front have persuaded the general to say in[4] reply[4] to[4] this that the rear shall remain in the plain.

322. Adjectives of the third declension have only one form for the masculine and feminine. Their declension is illustrated by ἀσφαλής (ἀσφαλεσ-), *sure, safe*, and εὐδαίμων (εὐδαιμον-), *fortunate, prosperous*.

Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
ἀσφαλής	ἀσφαλές	εὐδαίμων	εὔδαιμον
(ἀσφαλέος) ἀσφαλοῦς		εὐδαίμονος	
(ἀσφαλέϊ) ἀσφαλεῖ		εὐδαίμονι	
(ἀσφαλέα) ἀσφαλῆ	ἀσφαλές	εὐδαίμονα	εὔδαιμον
ἀσφαλές		εὔδαιμον	
(ἀσφαλέε) ἀσφαλεῖ		εὐδαίμονε	
(ἀσφαλέοιν) ἀσφαλοῖν		εὐδαιμόνοιν	
(ἀσφαλέες) ἀσφαλεῖς (ἀσφαλέα)	ἀσφαλῆ	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
(ἀσφαλέων) ἀσφαλῶν		εὐδαιμόνων	
ἀσφαλέσι		εὐδαίμοσι	
(ἀσφαλέας) ἀσφαλεῖς (ἀσφαλέα)	ἀσφαλῆ	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

Suggestions.

323. Observe that: —

a. ἀσφαλής is declined like a noun with a sibilant stem (cf. τριήρης, **277**), and εὐδαίμων like one with a liquid stem (cf. ἡγεμών, **232**).

b. The contraction of ἀσφαλής, except ἀσφαλεῖς (acc. plur.), follows the rules in **77–79**.

c. In adjectives in *-ων*, the accent of the nom. neut. and of the voc. masc. and fem. does not follow the nom. masc., but is recessive.

[1] τοσοῦτον. [2] ὅσον.

[3] ζάω irregularly has ζῆν as infin. See p. 107, foot-note. [4] πρός with acc.

324. RULE. — **Purpose may be expressed by:** —

a. **Final clauses** (*see* **47**) **introduced by ἵνα, ὅπως, or ὡς, *that, in order that*, with the subjunctive after primary tenses, and the optative after secondary tenses;** *e.g.* *τὸν βασιλέᾱ αἰτοῦσι πλοῖα, ἵνα ἀποπλέωσιν, they ask the king for boats, that they may sail away; τὸν βασιλέᾱ ᾔτουν πλοῖα, ἵνα ἀποπλέοιεν, they were asking the king for boats, that they might sail away.*

NOTE. — The subjunctive is often found depending on secondary tenses. This makes the purpose more vivid; *e.g.* *τὰ πλοῖα ἔκαυσαν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβαίνῃ, they burned the boats, that Cyrus might not cross.*

b. **The future participle, which in this use is often introduced by ὡς** (*see* **184**)**;** *e.g.* *Κῦρον μεταπέμπεται, ὡς ἀποκτενῶν, he sends for Cyrus, to kill him.*

c. **The relative with the future indicative;** *e.g.* *ἡγεμόνας ἔπεμψεν οἳ ὑμᾶς ἄξουσιν, he sent guides to lead you* (lit., *who shall lead you*).

d. **The infinitive;** *e.g.* *ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, he turned over this country to the Greeks to plunder.*

325. RULE. — **After verbs of fearing, object clauses introduced by μή** (cf. Lat. *nē*) **are used, with the subjunctive after primary tenses, and the optative after secondary tenses** (cf. **324** *a*). **If the object clause is negative, μὴ οὐ** (cf. Lat. *nē nōn*) **is used;** *e.g.* *φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρέχῃ, I am afraid that he will cause us trouble; ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οὐκ ἔχοι ἱκανοὺς φίλους, he was afraid that he should not have friends enough.*

326. TRANSLATE: 1. ὅπως δὲ καὶ γιγνώσκητε εἰς οἵαν καὶ ὅσην ἔρχεσθε χώρᾱν, ὑμᾶς διδάξω. 2. τοὺς δ' ἀγγέλους ἔπεμψεν οἳ λέξουσιν ὅτι αἱ μὲν κῶμαι

ἀσφαλεῖς εἰσιν, οἱ δὲ οἰκούμενοι τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἔχουσιν οὐδέν. 3. οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανὰς ναῦς τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχωμεν φίλους ἱκανοὺς οἳ πλεύσονται. 4. διὰ δὲ τὸ[1] χαλεπὴν εἶναι[1] τὴν ὁδόν, ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἡ ἀνάβασις ἡμῖν ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἡ κατάβασις εἰς τὴν κώμην. 5. τίς τοιαῦτα κακὰ περᾶνᾶς οὐκ αἰσχύνεται; 6. φοβοῦμαι μὴ οὐ ταῦτα περαίνηται.

327. TRANSLATE: 1. The barbarians did not encamp there, fearing that the right wing of the Greeks would come to kill them. 2. And this country, since it was hostile, he turned over to the Greeks to plunder. 3. But he sent back the three children into the prosperous village, which was distant four parasangs. 4. For they saw no enemy, and the plain was announced to be safe on account of the mass of snow. 5. But your soldiers will finally cease fighting.

328. **Vocabulary.**

ἀναπαύω, *cause to cease* or *halt*; mid., *halt, rest.*

ἀποθνῄσκω (*θαν-*[2]), fut. **-θανοῦμαι**, pf. **-τέθνηκα**, *die, be killed.* Used as pass. of **ἀποκτείνω**.

δείδω (*δειδ-*), fut. **δείσομαι**, aor. **ἔδεισα**, pf. **δέδοικα**,[3] always used for the pres. in Attic, *fear, be afraid.*

διαρπάζω, *plunder.*

ἔπειμι (*εἶμι*), *go on, advance, come on*; **ἡ ἐπιοῦσα ἡμέρα**, *the next day.*

ἐπιτρέπω, *turn over to, entrust.*

μάχομαι (*μαχ-, μαχε-*), fut. (*μαχέσομαι*) **μαχοῦμαι**, aor. **ἐμαχεσάμην**, pf. **μεμάχημαι**, *fight; fight with, fight against* (takes dat.).

ὁράω (*ὁρα-, ὀπ-*), impf. **ἑώρων**, fut. **ὄψομαι**, pf. **ἑώρᾱκα** or **ἑόρᾱκα**, *see.*

παρασκευάζω (*σκευαδ-*), *get ready, prepare, procure.*

---

[1] See **205**.

[2] Themes consisting of two consonants with a vowel between often show this shifting of the letters (*θαν-, θνα-*).

[3] *δέδοικα* is used of a more lasting fear than *φοβοῦμαι* (see **149**).

σπένδω (σπενδ-), fut. σπείσω, aor. ἔσπεισα (cf. σπονδή), *pour a libation;* mid., *make a truce.*
ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *ascent, march inland.*
Ἕλλην, -ος, ὁ, *a Greek.*
κατάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *descent, march to the coast.*
ἐπιτήδειος, *suitable, fit;* τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *provisions.*
ὀλίγος, *little;* plur. *few.*
ὅσος, -η, -ον, *as great as, as many as; how great, how many.*
χαλεπός, *difficult, severe.*
ἀλλά, *but; yet.*

CHAPTER XXI.

NUMERALS. — DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES. — THIRD DECLENSION (CLOSE VOWELS).

329. The **numerals,** cardinal and ordinal, are as follows: —

	Cardinal.	Ordinal.
1	εἷς, μία, ἕν,[1] *one.*	πρῶτος, *first.*
2	δύο	δεύτερος
3	τρεῖς, τρία	τρίτος
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος
5	πέντε[2]	πέμπτος
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος
7	ἑπτά	ἕβδομος
8	ὀκτώ	ὄγδοος
9	ἐννέα	ἔνατος
10	δέκα	δέκατος
11	ἕνδεκα	ἑνδέκατος
12	δώδεκα	δωδέκατος
13	τρεισκαίδεκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος
14	τετταρεσκαίδεκα	τέταρτος καὶ δέκατος

[1] For the declen. of εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς, τέτταρες, see **306.**
[2] The cardinals from πέντε to ἑκατόν are indeclinable.

	Cardinal.	Ordinal.
15	πεντεκαίδεκα	πέμπτος καὶ δέκατος
16	ἑκκαίδεκα	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος
17	ἑπτακαίδεκα	ἕβδομος καὶ δέκατος
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα[1]	ὄγδοος καὶ δέκατος
19	ἐννεακαίδεκα	ἔνατος καὶ δέκατος
20	εἴκοσι	εἰκοστός
21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι or εἴκοσιν εἷς	πρῶτος καὶ εἰκοστός
30	τριάκοντα	τριᾱκοστός
40	τεττεράκοντα	τετταρακοστός
50	πεντήκοντα	πεντηκοστός
60	ἑξήκοντα	ἑξηκοστός
70	ἑβδομήκοντα	ἑβδομηκοστός
80	ὀγδοήκοντα	ὀγδοηκοστός
90	ἐνενήκοντα	ἐνενηκοστός
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός
200	διᾱκόσιοι,[2] αι, α	διᾱκοσιοστός
300	τριᾱκόσιοι, αι, α	τριᾱκοσιοστός
400	τετρακόσιοι, αι, α	τετρακοσιοστός
500	πεντακόσιοι, αι, α	πεντακοσιοστός
600	ἑξακόσιοι, αι, α	ἑξακοσιοστός
700	ἑπτακόσιοι, αι, α	ἑπτακοσιοστός
800	ὀκτακόσιοι, αι, α	ὀκτακοσιοστός
900	ἐνακόσιοι, αι, α	ἐνακοσιοστός
1000	χίλιοι,[2] αι, α	χῑλιοστός
2000	δισχίλιοι, αι, α	δισχῑλιοστός
3000	τρισχίλιοι, αι, α	τρισχῑλιοστός
10,000	μύριοι, αι, α	μῡριοστός

Suggestions.

330. Observe that: —

a. The tens end in *-κοντα* (cf. Lat. *-ginta*), the hundreds in *-κόσιοι* (cf. Lat. *-centi*), and the thousands in *-χίλιοι*.

[1] Other expressions sometimes occur for some numbers, but these will cause no trouble in reading; *e.g.* *δυοῖν δέοντες εἴκοσι*, *eighteen*.

[2] The hundreds and thousands are declined like the plural of *ἀγαθός*.

b. τριάκοντα and τετταράκοντα have ᾱ and α respectively before -κοντα, but the other tens have η, and the hundreds all have ᾱ or α before -κόσιοι.

c. The thousands are formed by prefixing the numeral advs. to -χίλιοι.

331. Numeral adverbs denote *the number of times*, as follows: ἅπαξ, *once;* δίς, *twice;* τρίς, *thrice;* τετράκις, *four times*, πεντάκις, etc., all the rest having the suffix -άκις.

Declension of Participles.

332. The present and future active participles have masculine and neuter stems ending in -οντ-, and feminine in -ουσα- (for -οντια-[1]). The masculine and neuter, therefore, are like nouns of the third declension, the feminine like nouns of the first.

333. The inflection of λύων, *loosing*, which will illustrate the inflection of participles in -ων and -ών, of ὤν,[2] *being*, and of the adjective ἑκών, *willing*, is as follows: —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom. Voc.	λύων	λύουσα	λῦον
Gen.	λύοντος	λυούσης	λύοντος
Dat.	λύοντι	λυούσῃ	λύοντι
Acc.	λύοντα	λύουσαν	λῦον
Dual N. A. V.	λύοντε	λυούσᾱ	λύοντε
G. D.	λυόντοιν	λυούσαιν	λυόντοιν
Plur. Nom. Voc.	λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα
Gen.	λυόντων	λυουσῶν	λυόντων
Dat.	λύουσι	λυούσαις	λύουσι
Acc.	λύοντας	λυούσᾱς	λύοντα

[1] Originally οντ-ια.

[2] ὤν and all other monosyllabic partics. are not accented on the ultima in the gen. and dat., contrary to **233** *a*, but are accented like λύων.

Suggestions.

334. Observe that: —

a. The *-τ-* of the masc. and neut. stem is dropped in the nom., and the masc. lengthens the vowel of the stem.

b. Where *-ντ-* of the stem is followed by *σ-*, throughout the fem. and in the dat. plur. of the masc. and neut., *οντσ-* becomes *-ουσ-*, the *ντ* being dropped and the vowel lengthened (cf. **37,** Note, and **235**).

c. The voc., masc. and neut., is like the nom. (see **244**).

335. Participles in *-ῶν* (for *-άων*, *-έων*, *-όων*) have endings like *λύων* (**333**), but are subject to the Rules for Contraction (**77–79**); *e.g.* —

(*τῑμάων*) *τῑμῶν*, (*τῑμάουσα*) *τῑμῶσα*, (*τῑμάον*) *τῑμῶν*;
(*φιλέων*) *φιλῶν*, (*φιλέουσα*) *φιλοῦσα*, (*φιλέον*) *φιλοῦν*, etc.

Genitive Absolute.

336. A substantive and a participle often stand together, entirely unconnected in grammatical construction with the rest of the sentence, although they may add something of importance to the meaning. They are then said to be used *absolutely; i.e. separately* or *independently.*

337. Rule. — **A substantive and a participle may be used absolutely in the genitive**[1] **to express some attendant circumstance**; *e.g.* *Κύρου ταῦτα παρασκευάζοντος Τισσαφέρνης στράτευμα συνέλεγεν*, *while* (*since*, or *although*[2]) *Cyrus was making these preparations, Tissaphernes was collecting an army.*

---

[1] Cf. Lat. ablative absolute.

[2] The partic. in the gen. absol. may have all the meanings of the circumst. partic. (**120**).

338. TRANSLATE: 1. τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον Κῦρος σέσωκεν· ἐκ δὲ τῶν σκηνῶν τοῦ δεξιοῦ οἱ πολέμιοι διηρπάκᾶσιν ὅσα ἐβούλοντο. 2. ἡμᾶς μὲν οὖν ἐξηπάτησεν ἅπαξ, Δία δὲ ξένιον οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν ἐξαπατῆσαι οὐδέν.[1] 3. δέδοικα μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες οἰόμενοι ὀλίγους εἶναι τοὺς λοιποὺς τοῦ μάχεσθαι ἄρχωνται. 4. ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀποτέθνηκεν, οἱ ἐθέλοντες τῷ βασιλεῖ πιστοὶ[2] εἶναι οὐκ ἐπιτρέψουσι τὴν τοῦ σατράπου ἀρχὴν τοῖς στρατιώταις διαρπάζειν. 5. ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οὐχ οἱ στρατιῶται τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ θύοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ τὰ πρόβατα σπένδοιντο. 6. ὁ πατήρ μου τοσοῦτον ἔζηκεν ὅσον ἐθέλει. 7. τῶν ἱερῶν καλῶν ὄντων ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις εἰς δύναμιν μάχεσθαι.

339. TRANSLATE: 1. From the mountain they[3] came[3] down[3] into a plain through which the Euphrates river flows. 2. The width of the sacred river is twelve plethra. 3. If the general of his own will remains eight days, thirty-seven ships will arrive for him on the ninth day. 4. Cyrus has persuaded them to proceed on the following day five days' journey through[4] a[4] desert,[4] thirty-one parasangs, to the prosperous country of the Cardūchi. 5. Is it not necessary, therefore, that the van should refrain from[5] burning[5] the village?

340. The declension of **stems in a close vowel** (ι or υ; see **229**), and of the irregular noun (ἡ) γυνή (γυναικ-), is as follows: —

---

[1] See p. 103, foot-note 2.

[2] If the subj. of an infin. is not expressed, a predicate adj. or noun is put in the case in which the subj. was last referred to.

[3] Transl., *the descent was for them.* [4] ἐρήμους. [5] Use infin.

	(ἡ) πόλις (πολι-), *city.*	(τό) ἄστυ (ἀστυ-) *town.*	(ὁ) ἰχθύς (ἰχθυ-), *fish.*	(ἡ) γυνή (γυναικ-), *woman, wife.*
Sing. Nom.	πόλις	ἄστυ	ἰχθύς	γυνή
Gen.	πόλεως	ἄστεως	ἰχθύος	γυναικός
Dat.	(πόλεϊ) πόλει	(ἄστεϊ) ἄστει	ἰχθύϊ	γυναικί
Acc.	πόλιν	ἄστυ	ἰχθύν	γυναῖκα
Voc.	πόλι	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ	γύναι
Dual N. A. V.	(πόλεε) πόλει	(ἄστεε) ἄστει	ἰχθύε	γυναῖκε
G. D.	πολέοιν	ἀστέοιν	ἰχθύοιν	γυναικοῖν
Plur. Nom. Voc.	(πόλεες) πόλεις	(ἄστεα) ἄστη	ἰχθύες	γυναῖκες
Gen.	πόλεων	ἄστεων	ἰχθύων	γυναικῶν
Dat.	πόλεσι	ἄστεσι	ἰχθύσι	γυναιξί
Acc.	(πόλεας) πόλεις	(ἄστεα) ἄστη	ἰχθῦς	γυναῖκας

Suggestions.

341. Observe that: —

a. Most stems in -ι- and -υ- change to -ε-, except in the nom., acc., and voc. sing., but most nouns in -ῡς, like ἰχθύς, keep the -υ- throughout.

b. Although the gen. sing. of most stems in -ι- and -υ- ends in -ως, the accent is on the antepenult, contrary to **18** *a*; and the gen. plur. follows the gen. sing. in this respect.

342. Besides γυνή (**340**), the following important nouns may be mentioned on account of various irregularities: —

a. (ὁ) πούς (ποδ-), *foot*, drops the δ in the nominative singular and lengthens the stem; thus, —

N. πούς, G. ποδός, D. ποδί, A. πόδα, V. πούς, etc., but the dative plural is regularly ποσί.

b. (τό) δόρυ, *spear*, has δόρυ in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular, but the other cases are from a different stem, δορατ- (cf. ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, etc., **232**).

c. Similar to δόρυ is (τό) ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, etc., *water*.

Less Vivid Future Condition.

343. A conditional sentence is called **a less vivid future,** when the supposition refers to the future and implies little likelihood of fulfilment.

Rule. — **In less vivid future conditions, the "if" clause has εἰ with the optative, and the conclusion has the optative with ἄν;** *e.g.* *εἰ τοῦτο ποιήσειε, εὖ ἂν πράξειε, if he should do this, he would succeed.*

344. Translate: 1. ὁ Κῦρος κρίνας τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως γυναῖκα κατὰ δύναμιν ἀδικεῖν, ἐφ' ἁμάξης εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἀπέπεμψεν. 2. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν ὕδατος δεομένων ἐπῆσαν ἑκατὸν πεζοὶ ἐπὶ πόλιν εὐδαίμονα Ταρσοὺς ὄνομα ἣ παρασάγγας δύο ἀπεῖχεν. 3. ἀλλ'[1] εἰ οἱ δέκα στρατηγοὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας πόλεως ἀξιοῖεν ἡμᾶς τὰ ἱερὰ διαπράττειν, τὰ πρόβατα ἡμῶν ἂν ἀποκτείνοιμεν. 4. οὐκοῦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπετρέψαμεν ἑκόντες τούτους τοὺς ἄνδρας ἵνα δόρασι αὐτοὺς ἀποκτείνειαν; 5. οἱ ὁπλῖται πρῶτοι ἐν τῇ χαλεπῇ ἀναβάσει ἀναπαύονται ὡς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἁρπάσοντες. 6. οὐκοῦν ἐντεῦθεν τοῖς ποσὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔσται κατάβασις ἀσφαλὴς εἰς τὴν πόλιν;

345. Translate: 1. On the second day they came to a river two hundred and twenty-nine feet in width. 2. It seemed best to the soothsayers, since[2] the sacrifices[2] were[2] favorable, to prepare an encampment here and remain eight or nine days. 3. Do you not, therefore, think (that) the force[3] of the enemy is[3] exceedingly

[1] For ἀλλὰ, by elision. [2] Gen. absol. [3] Infin. with subj. acc.

small? 4. Cyrus bade the interpreter say that he had[1] turned[1] over this prosperous city to the Greeks to plunder. 5. I am afraid that they, breaking the truce, will march against us and seize our spears. 6. The soothsayer will see the fishes in the sacred river, and will suppose (them) to be gods.

346. **Vocabulary.**

ἀξιόω (cf. ἄξιος), *deem worthy; ask, demand.* Often takes infin. (with subject accusative).

ἀπέχω, fut. **ἀφέξω**,[2] *be distant;* mid., *refrain from.*

διαπράττω, fut. **-πράξω**, aor. **-ἐπρᾶξα**, act. and mid., *accomplish.*

ἐξαπατάω, *deceive.*

οἴομαι (or **οἶμαι**), fut. **οἰήσομαι**, *think, suppose.* Takes infin. (with subject accusative).

δύναμις, *-εως*, *ἡ*, *ability, power, force;* **εἰς** or **κατὰ δύναμιν**, *according to one's ability, as much*

ἑρμηνεύς, *-έως*, *ὁ*, *interpreter.*

μάντις, *-εως*, *ὁ*, *prophet, soothsayer.*

πρόβατον, generally in plur., **τὰ πρόβατα**, *cattle, sheep.*

ἑκών, **ἑκοῦσα**, **ἑκόν**, *willing, of one's own will, voluntarily.*

ἱερός, *holy, sacred;* **τὰ ἱερά**, *the sacrifices.*

ξένιος, *hospitable;* **Ζεὺς ξένιος**, *Zeus, protector of guests.*

οὐκοῦν, adv., *not therefore.* Often used to introduce a question expecting an affirmative answer.

οὖν, postpositive adv., *therefore, then.*

CHAPTER XXII.

PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. — ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND THIRD DECLENSION. — DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES.

347. The **perfect middle and passive stem** is the theme reduplicated, but as a rule, except for euphonic

[1] Use *ὅτι* with pf. ind.

[2] See **202** *c*.

changes in mutes (see **353–354**), not otherwise modified[1]; *e.g.* theme λυ-, pf. mid. stem λελυ-. The inflection is as follows: —

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	**Pluperfect.**	**Perfect.**
Sing. 1	λέλυμαι	ἐλελύμην	λελυμένος ὦ
2	λέλυσαι	ἐλέλυσο	λελυμένος ᾖς
3	λέλυται	ἐλέλυτο	λελυμένος ᾖ
Dual 2	λέλυσθον	ἐλέλυσθον	λελυμένω ἦτον
3	λέλυσθον	ἐλελύσθην	λελυμένω ἦτον
Plur. 1	λελύμεθα	ἐλελύμεθα	λελυμένοι ὦμεν
2	λέλυσθε	ἐλέλυσθε	λελυμένοι ἦτε
3	λέλυνται	ἐλέλυντο	λελυμένοι ὦσι

	Optative.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
	Perfect.	**Perfect.**	**Perfect.**
Sing. 1	λελυμένος εἴην		λελύσθαι
2	λελυμένος εἴης	λέλυσο	
3	λελυμένος εἴη	λελύσθω	
			Participle.
Dual 2	λελυμένω εἴητον or εἶτον	λέλυσθον	
3	λελυμένω εἰήτην or εἴτην	λελύσθων	**Perfect.**
Plur. 1	λελυμένοι εἴημεν or εἶμεν		Masc. λελυμένος
2	λελυμένοι εἴητε or εἶτε	λέλυσθε	Fem. λελυμένη
3	λελυμένοι εἴησαν or εἶεν	λελύσθωσαν or λελύσθων	Neut. λελυμένον

[1] The vowel of the theme is sometimes lengthened; *e.g.* theme μνα-, pf. mid. μέμνημαι, *I remember*; so regularly in verbs in -άω, -έω, and -όω; *e.g.* τετίμημαι (see p. 72, foot-note 1).

Suggestions.

348. Observe that: —

a. The pf. and plupf. middle have no thematic vowel, the personal endings being added directly to the reduplicated theme.

b. As in the active, the plupf. takes an augment before the reduplication, and is found only in the indic.

c. For the subjv. and opt., periphrastic forms are used, consisting of the pf. partic. with the subj. and opt. of εἰμί.

d. The accents of the pf. infin. and partic. are not recessive (see **39**).

349. Translate: 1. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἠξίωσαν ἡμᾶς πάντας, ὅτι δίκαιόν ἐστι, κατὰ δύναμιν τοῦτο πράττειν. 2. ἐὰν τῷ κωμάρχῃ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ δοκῇ, ἀπάξει εὐθὺς εἰς τὴν κώμην. 3. ὅπως οἱ στρατιῶται τοῦ ἁρπάζειν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων δόρατα καὶ τὰς πέλτας ἀφέξονται Κύρῳ μελήσει. 4. εἰ ὁρῷμεν τὴν τῶν πολεμίων δύναμιν, δρόμῳ ἂν θέοιμεν.

350. Translate: 1. Is he not, therefore, going to lead away the light-armed men to the city? 2. Even if the village-chief has been deceived, they will not accomplish what they wish. 3. If the bowmen should flee, they would at the same time shoot at our van. 4. If they shall of their own will put to death any of our light-armed men, they will suffer in return for these evil (deeds).

Most Vivid Future Condition.

351. A conditional sentence is called **a most vivid future,** when the supposition refers to the future, and implies the greatest likelihood of fulfilment.

Rule. — **In most vivid future conditions, the "if" clause has εἰ with the future indicative, and the con-**

clusion has the future indicative or some other future form; *e.g.* εἰ ἀλλήλοις μαχεῖσθε, ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ κατακοπήσεσθε, *if you fight with each other, on that day you will be cut to pieces.*

352. Mute consonants (**227**) are of three **classes,** *labial*, *palatal*, and *lingual*; they are also of three **orders,** *smooth*, *middle*, and *rough*. The following table will show both the classes and the orders: —

		Orders.		
		Smooth	*Middle*	*Rough*
Classes.	*Labial*	π	β	φ
	Palatal	κ	γ	χ
	Lingual	τ	δ	θ

353. The following paradigms illustrate the inflection of the pf. and plupf. middle of verbs with themes in *a.* π-, β-, φ-; *b.* κ-, γ-, χ-; *c.* τ-, δ-, θ-: —

	a. πέμπω (πεμπ-)		*b.* ἄγω (ἀγ-)		*c.* πείθω (πιθ-)	
	Perfect.	Pluper.	Perf.	Pluper.	Perfect.	Pluper.
S. 1	πέπεμμαι	ἐπεπέμμην	ἦγμαι	ἤγμην	πέπεισμαι	ἐπεπείσμην
2	πέπεμψαι	ἐπέπεμψο	ἦξαι	ἦξο	πέπεισαι	ἐπέπεισο
3	πέπεμπται	ἐπέπεμπτο	ἦκται	ἦκτο	πέπεισται	ἐπέπειστο
D. 2	πέπεμφθον	ἐπέπεμφθον	ἦχθον	ἤχθον	πέπεισθον	ἐπέπεισθον
3	πέπεμφθον	ἐπεπέμφθην	ἦχθον	ἤχθην	πέπεισθον	ἐπεπείσθην
P. 1	πεπέμμεθα	ἐπεπέμμεθα	ἤγμεθα	ἤγμεθα	πεπείσμεθα	ἐπεπείσμεθα
2	πέπεμφθε	ἐπέπεμφθε	ἦχθε	ἦχθε	πέπεισθε	ἐπέπεισθε
3	πεπεμμένοι εἰσί	πεπεμμένοι ἦσαν	ἠγμένοι εἰσί	ἠγμένοι ἦσαν	πεπεισμένοι εἰσί	πεπεισμένοι ἦσαν

Suggestions.

354. Observe that: —

a. Before μ a labial becomes μ, a palatal γ, and a lingual is changed to σ; *e.g.* —

βεβλαβμαι	becomes	βέβλαμμαι,
δεδοκμαι	"	δέδογμαι,
πεπειθμαι	"	πέπεισμαι.

b. Before a lingual, a labial or palatal is changed to the same order as the lingual, and another lingual is changed to σ; *e.g.* —

βεβλαβται	becomes	βέβλαπται,
ἠγται	"	ἦκται,
πεπειθται	"	πέπεισται.

c. Labials combine with σ and form ψ; palatals combine with it and form ξ; linguals before σ are dropped; *e.g.* —

πεπεμπσαι	becomes	πέπεμψαι,
ἠγσαι	"	ἦξαι,
πεπειθσαι	"	πέπεισαι.

d. As always in middle and passive endings, σ is dropped between two consonants; *e.g.* πεπεμπσθον becomes πέπεμφθον (see *b*).

e. Where such a combination as $\mu\mu\mu$ would occur, one consonant is dropped; *e.g.* πεπεμπμαι (πεπεμμμαι, see *a*), πέπεμμαι.

f. The 3d plural of mute verbs is periphrastic, since the consonant of the theme with the regular ending would not be euphonious; *e.g.* πεπεμμένοι εἰσί, not πεπεμπνται.

355. The perfect in the other moods of these mute verbs shows the same euphonic changes as in the indicative. In the subjunctive and optative, as in λύω, periphrastic forms are used (cf. **348** *c*); *e.g.* πεπεμμένος ὦ, ἠγμένος εἴην, and πέπεισο.

356. Inflect like πέμπω: λέλειμμαι (λείπω, λιπ-), βέβλαμμαι (βλάπτω, βλαβ-), γέγραμμαι (γράφω, γραφ-);

Like ἄγω: δέδογμαι (δοκέω, δοκ-), τέταγμαι (τάττω, ταγ-), τέτυγμαι (τυγχάνω, τυχ-);

Like πείθω: ἔσπεισμαι (σπένδω, σπενδ-), σέσωσμαι (σῴζω, σωδ-).

357. The **future perfect,** which occurs usually only with passive meanings, is formed from the perfect middle stem with the addition of *σ%-*, the sign of the future. The final vowel of the theme is always lengthened; *e.g.* theme λυ-, pf. mid. stem λελυ-, fut. pf. stem λελῡσ%-. This tense, like the future, does not occur in the subjunctive or imperative. In form it is like a reduplicated future middle.

358. The inflection is as follows: —

	Indicative.	Optative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 1	λελύσομαι	λελῡσοίμην	λελύσεσθαι
2	λελύσει	λελύσοιο	
3	λελύσεται	λελύσοιτο	
			Participle.
Dual 2	λελύσεσθον	λελύσοισθον	
3	λελύσεσθον	λελῡσοίσθην	
			Masc. λελῡσόμενος
Plur. 1	λελῡσόμεθα	λελῡσοίμεθα	Fem. λελῡσομένη
2	λελύσεσθε	λελύσοισθε	Neut. λελῡσόμενον
3	λελύσονται	λελύσοιντο	

359. Translate: 1. *τῶν Ἑλλήνων θελόντων τὰ πρόβατα Διὶ ξενίῳ θύειν, ὁ μάντις καὶ ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς μεταπεπεμμένοι εἰσίν.* 2. *ἐὰν οἱ Ἕλληνες τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τεττάρων*[1] *ἑλῶσιν, οἱ ἱππεῖς φοβήσονται προσέρχεσθαι.* 3. *καὶ ἅμαξαι δέκα ἔρημαι ηὑρηνται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.* 4. *αὕτη ἡ γνώμη τοῖς γυμνήταις δεδόξεται.* 5. *τούτῳ δ' οὖν τῷ ἀνδρὶ ἡδέως πέπεισμαι, ἵνα διδάξω ὅτι ἄρχεσθαι οἷός τ' εἰμί.*

360. Translate: 1. When the soldier had been led to the town, he said that he was going to send three

[1] *four deep.*

hundred darics to the harmost. 2. At daybreak the guides will have been released.[1] 3. To the village-chief these things have seemed safe to do. 4. The soothsayers first demanded that the fishes in the sacred river should be considered gods.

Adjectives of the First and Third Declensions.

361. Some adjectives have the masculine and neuter of the third declension, and the feminine of the first. The inflection of these adjectives is illustrated by πᾶς (παντ-), *all, every*, and ἡδύς (m. and n. ἡδυ-, f. ἡδεια-), *sweet*. They are declined as follows: —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
Gen.	παντός	πάσης	παντός	ἡδέος	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέος
Dat.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ
Acc.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
Voc.				ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
Dual N. A. V.				ἡδέε	ἡδείᾱ	ἡδέε
G. D.				ἡδέοιν	ἡδείαιν	ἡδέοιν
Plur. Nom. Voc.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα	(ἡδέες) ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
Gen.	πάντων	πᾱσῶν	πάντων	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
Dat.	πᾶσι	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι	ἡδέσι	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι
Acc.	πάντας	πάσᾱς	πάντα	(ἡδέας) ἡδεῖς	ἡδείᾱς	ἡδέα

Suggestions.

362. Observe that: —

a. The fem. of πᾶς is πᾶσα, πάσης, and πᾱσῶν, like a noun of the first declen., not like the fem. of an adj. of the first and second (see **128** and **130**).

[1] Use λύω.

b. The forms παντός, παντί, conform to the rule for accent of monosyllables of the third declen. (see **233** *a*), but πάντων, πᾶσι, do not.

Declension of Participles.

363. All participles, except those in **-ος, -η, -ον** (see **131**), are of the first and third declensions.

364. Review those in **-ων** (**333**).

365. Those in **-ᾱς** or **-ᾶς** are declined thus (cf. πᾶς) : —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	λύσᾱς	λύσᾶσα	λῦσαν
Gen.	λύσαντος	λῡσάσης	λύσαντος, etc.
Plur. Dat.	λύσᾶσι	λῡσάσαις	λύσᾶσι, etc.

366. Those in **-ώς** are declined thus : —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
Gen.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίᾶς	λελυκότος, etc.
Plur. Dat.	λελυκόσι	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι, etc.

367. Those in **-είς** (see **378** and **453**) are declined thus : —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
Gen.	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος, etc.
Plur. Dat.	λυθεῖσι	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι, etc.

Result.

368. Rule. — **ὥστε is used with the indicative or infinitive to express result. The indicative presents the result as a fact, the infinitive as a tendency or consequence of the action of the main verb;** *e.g.* *οἱ ὁπλῖται τότε οὐχ ἥκον, ὥστε οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἐφοβοῦντο, the hoplites had not come at that time, so that the other Greeks were afraid; τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πεῖσαι ταῦτα; who is so skilful a speaker as to persuade you of this?* The negative for the indicative in result clauses is *οὐ*, for the infinitive *μή*.

Potential Optative.

369. Rule. — **A statement or question less positive than the indicative would denote is expressed by the potential optative with ἄν;** *e.g.* *ἔτι οὖν ἂν γίγνοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος; would you, then, again become an enemy to my brother? οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώρᾱν κακὰ ποιεῖν, nor is there (any reason) on account of which we should wish to do harm to the king's country.* This may be regarded as the conclusion of a less vivid future condition, the implied *if* clause of which is too indefinite to be expressed.

370. Translate: 1. *ἔχω γὰρ ταχείᾱς τριήρεις πεντήκοντα καὶ ἰσχῡρῶν γυμνήτων λόχους εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ὥστε αἱρεῖν τούτους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.* 2. *ὁ βασιλεὺς πᾶν ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα προϊέναι μέλλει.* 3. *ὁ σατράπης οὖν νομίζει ἀδικεῖσθαι, καὶ τρὶς μεταπεμπομένου αὐτὸν Δᾱρείου ἰέναι οὐκ ἐθέλει.* 4. *Κῦρος οὐκ ἂν ἀπίοι ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς, μεῖναι δ' ἂν ἀναγκά-*

ζοιτο. 5. καὶ ὡς[1] ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον οἱ Ἕλληνες προσῄεσαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νῑκᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν[2] ἐν τῇ Ἀναβάσει Ξενοφῶντος δεδήλωται. 6. οἱ δὲ γυμνῆτες χίλιοι καὶ δᾱρεικοὶ τρισχίλιοι τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπέμποντο, ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ πάσχοιεν ἀντὶ τῶν κακῶν ὧν[3] αὐτὸν πεποιήκᾱσιν. 7. οἶομαι τὰς τάφρους πόδας ἑπτὰ εὖρος εἶναι.

371. TRANSLATE: 1. He thinks that the wine which they have found in this city is sweet. 2. It has been written in the Anabasis of Xenophon that five generals were put to death when the army was drawn up at the Zapatas river. 3. Having remained here three days, the horsemen suffer exceedingly for[4] lack[4] of[4] water. 4. The soldiers of Menon passed by all the others. 5. It is a care to us all that the king's wife and children shall be saved.

372. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT:—

τὸ σύνθημα.[5]

καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ τὸ μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων στράτευμα προῄει, τὸ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο[6] ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος θορύβου τινὸς ἀκούσᾱς διὰ τῶν λόχων ἰόντος ἐθαύμαζε τίς ὁ θόρυβός ἐστι καὶ Κλέαρχον ἤρετο.[7] ὁ δ' ἔλεξεν ὅτι τὸ σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον[8] ἤδη. καὶ Κῦρος

---

[1] *How.* [2] See p. 107, foot-note 1.

[3] If the antecedent is in the gen. or dat., the relative is usually assimilated to the case of the antecedent, when it would naturally have been in the acc.

[4] Use partic. of δέομαι.

[5] *Watchword.* [6] σύν + τάττω.

[7] 2d aor. of ἐρωτάω. [8] Used as an adv.

ἤρετο ὅ τι τὸ σύνθημά ἐστιν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο "Ζεὺς σωτὴρ[1] καὶ νίκη." ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσᾱς ἔλεξε, "δέχομαί τε καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω."

373. **Vocabulary.**

ἀναγκάζω (cf. *ἀνάγκη*), *force, compel.*
ἀπάγω, *lead back, march back.*
εὑρίσκω (*εὑρ-*), fut. **εὑρήσω**, pf. **ηὕρηκα**, pf. mid. **ηὕρημαι**, *find.*
μέλει, fut. **μελήσει**, aor. **ἐμέλησε**, pf. **μεμέληκε**. Used impersonally, *it is a care.*
μέλλω, fut. **μελλήσω**, aor. **ἐμέλλησα**, *be about to, be going to, delay.* Takes pres., aor., or fut. infin.
πάσχω (*παθ-, πενθ-*), fut. **πείσομαι**, *suffer.*
παρέρχομαι, *go past, go along, pass by.*
πρόειμι (*εἶμι*), *go forward, advance* (from a starting-point).
πρόσειμι (*εἶμι*), *approach, advance* (toward the goal).
γυμνής, -ῆτος, ὁ, γυμνήτης, -ου, *light-armed soldier.*
δᾱρεικός, *daric* (a gold coin worth about $5.50).
κωμάρχης (*κώμη* + *ἄρχω*), *village-chief.*
πέλτη, *shield* (of a peltast).
δίκαιος, *just, proper.*
ἰσχῡρός (cf. *ἰσχῡρῶς*), *strong, severe.*
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *swift, quick.*
ἅμα, adv., *at the same time;* as prep., w. dat., *at the same time with;* **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**, *at daybreak.*
εὐθύς, *immediately.*
ἡδέως, *pleasantly, gladly.*
ἀντί, prep. with gen., *instead of, in return for.*

CHAPTER XXIII.

FIRST PASSIVE SYSTEM. — DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES (*continued*).

374. The **aorist passive stem** adds *-θε-* to the theme, this suffix becoming *-θη-* in the indicative, infinitive, and imperative (except in *λυθέντων*). The vowel of the

[1] A noun derived from *σῴζω*.

theme is lengthened in many verbs; *e.g.* *ποιέω* (*ποιε-*),[1] *ἐποιήθην*. This tense has the striking peculiarity of having the active voice endings throughout. The aorist and future passive together compose the **first passive system.**

375. The inflection of the aorist passive is as follows:—

(Formed on the aorist passive stem, *λυθε-*.)

	Indicative.	Subjv.	Optative.	Imperative.
Sing. 1	ἐλύθην, *I was*	λυθῶ	λυθείην	S. 2 λύθητι
2	ἐλύθης [*loosed*	λυθῇς	λυθείης	3 λυθήτω
3	ἐλύθη	λυθῇ	λυθείη	D. 2 λύθητον
				3 λυθήτων
Dual 2	ἐλύθητον	λυθῆτον	λυθείητον, λυθεῖτον	P. 2 λύθητε
3	ἐλυθήτην	λυθῆτον	λυθειήτην, λυθείτην	3 λυθήτωσαν, λυθέντων
Plur. 1	ἐλύθημεν	λυθῶμεν	λυθείημεν, λυθεῖμεν	Infin. λυθῆναι
2	ἐλύθητε	λυθῆτε	λυθείητε, λυθεῖτε	Participle.
3	ἐλύθησαν	λυθῶσι	λυθείησαν, λυθεῖεν	λυθείς, -εῖσα, -έν

Suggestions.

376. Observe that:—

a. The indic. has the regular secondary tense endings of the act. voice (see **37**), with *-σαν* in the 3d plur.

b. In the subjv., contraction occurs between the regular (active) personal endings and the thematic vowel *ε*, which disappears.

c. The opt. shows the two mood-suffixes, *-ιη-* (*-ιε-*) and *-ι-* (see **42** *b*), both of which contract with the thematic vowel.[2]

[1] See p. 72, foot-note 1.

[2] Compare the inflection of *λυθείην* with that of *εἴην*, and of both with that of *λύοιμι*. Where the suffix *-ιη-* appears, the 1st sing. always has the ending *-ν*, not *-μι*.

d. The imperative retains the original ending *-θι* in the 2d sing. (see **211** *a*), but it appears as *-τι* by dissimilation.[1]

e. The infin. has the ending *-ναι* (cf. λελυκέναι, εἶναι, ἰέναι).

377. Observe that:—

The accent of the infinitive, as of all infinitives in *-ναι*, and of the participle, is irregular (see **39**).

378. The **aorist passive participle** has the masculine and neuter stem λυθεντ-, and the feminine λυθεισᾱ- (for λυθενσᾱ-[2]). *-ντ-* of these stems disappears before, or is replaced by, *σ*, and the vowel is lengthened in retaining the quantity of the syllable. Cf. πᾶς (παντ-ς), λύσᾱς (λῡσαντ-ς), λυθείς (λυθεντ-ς), etc. For the declension of λυθείς, see **367**.

379. Mute stems undergo certain modifications before the *θ* in the aorist and future (see **380**) passive, according to the laws stated in **354** *b*. Thus,—

ἐπεμπθην	becomes	ἐπέμφθην,
ἠγθην	"	ἤχθην,
ἡδθην (ἥδομαι)	"	ἥσθην,
ἐπειθθην (πείθω)	"	ἐπείσθην.

380. The stem of the future passive is the same as the lengthened form (in *-η-*) of the aorist passive, with the addition of *-σ°/ε*; *e.g.* theme λυ-, aor. pass. stem λυθε-, fut. pass. stem λυθησ°/ε-. Like the other futures, the future passive is not used in the subjunctive or imperative.

---

[1] *I.e. a making different*, — the opposite of *assimilation*. Thus συν-λεγω by assimilation becomes συλλέγω; φεφιληκα, by dissimilation, πεφί-ληκα. The same rough mute cannot begin two successive syllables.

[2] Originally λυθεντ-ιᾱ-.

381. The inflection is as follows: —

	Indicative.	Optative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 1	λυθήσομαι	λυθησοίμην	λυθήσεσθαι
2	λυθήσει	λυθήσοιο	
3	λυθήσεται	λυθήσοιτο	
Dual 2	λυθήσεσθον	λυθήσοισθον	Participle.
3	λυθήσεσθον	λυθησοίσθην	
Plur. 1	λυθησόμεθα	λυθησοίμεθα	λυθησόμενος λυθησομένη λυθησόμενον
2	λυθήσεσθε	λυθήσοισθε	
3	λυθήσονται	λυθήσοιντο	

382. Translate at sight: —

An Incident of the Κατάβασις.

οἱ Ἕλληνές ποτε ἐν τῇ καταβάσει ἠρήκεσαν ἐν κώμῃ τινὶ οὗ ηὐλίσθησαν τὸν κωμάρχην καὶ ἐν φυλακῇ δεδεμένον[1] εἶχον· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξε τῷ Χειρισόφῳ· "εἰ ὁ κωμάρχης λυθείη, εὖ ἂν ἡγοῖτο ἡμῖν ἔξω τῶν ὀρῶν." "δοκεῖ κἄμοὶ[2] ταῦτα," ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Χειρίσοφος· καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἄνθρωπον τετραμμένος,[3] "ὦ κωμάρχα," ἔφη,[4] "πότερον[5] βούλει, ἐὰν λυθῇς, ἡγεῖσθαι ἡμῖν ὅπῃ ἀφικνεῖσθαι βουλόμεθα;" ὁ[6] δὲ "μάλα γε,"[7]

[1] Pf. pass. of δέω, *bind*, which may be easily distinguished from δέω, *need, ask*, by the fact that it does not lengthen the theme, except in the fut. and aor.

[2] For καὶ ἐμοί. Such union of two words is called *crasis*, and is indicated by a *coronis* (᾽).

[3] Pf. mid. of τρέπω. [4] *Said he.*

[5] *Whether.* When used, as here, to introduce a direct question, it is not translated. Cf. Lat. *utrum.*

[6] See **197**, note 1. [7] *Certainly* (lit., *much indeed*).

ἔφη, "βούλομαι." καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἔλεγε· "μελήσει οὖν ἐμοὶ ὅπως ταῦτα πραχθήσεται." ἔνθα μὲν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀπῆει, ἵνα παραγγέλλοι τι τῷ Προξένῳ· ὕστερον δὲ παρερχόμενος ὁρᾷ τὸν ἄνθρωπον οὐ λελυμένον, καὶ χαλεπαίνων αἰτιᾶται τὸν Χειρίσοφον λέγων "τί μέλλεις, ὦ Χειρίσοφε; ἢ οὐχ ὑπισχνοῦ μελήσειν σοι ὅπως λυθήσεται ὁ κωμάρχης; δέομαί σου,[1] μηκέτι οὕτω δεδεμένον ἔχε τὸν ἄνθρωπον." εἶτα δὲ δεηθέντος[2] τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ὁ Χειρίσοφος γυμνήτῃ τινὶ παρόντι ἔλεξε "νῦν μὲν οὖν λυθήτω ὁ κωμάρχης· εἰ δὲ μὴ εὖ ἡγήσεται, αὖθις δήσομεν." ἐλύθη οὖν ὁ ἄνθρωπος, καὶ λυθεὶς ἡγεῖτο ὥσπερ ὑπέσχητο.[3]

Verbal Adjectives.

383. From the theme, usually as it appears in the aorist passive, is formed a verbal adjective with the endings **-τέος, -τέᾱ, -τέον,** corresponding to the Latin gerundive; *e.g.* ποιητέος (*faciendus*), *needing to be made* or *done*; ποταμὸς διαβατέος, *a river which must be crossed.*

Note. — Verbal adjectives in **-τός** also occur, with the force of the Latin perfect passive participle, which has the corresponding ending (*-tus*); *e.g.* ποιητός (*factus*), *made*; but usually these have the force of the verbal in *-bilis*; *e.g.* τρωτός (*vulnerabilis*), *vulnerable*; ποταμὸς διαβατός, *a river which may be crossed.*

Deponent Verbs.

384. Most of the forms of the middle and passive voices are the same; but for the future and aorist there

---

[1] δέομαι, *ask*, used as a pass. depon. (**384**), takes the gen. Transl., *I beg of you.*

[2] Gen. absol. (**337**).

[3] Plupf. of ὑπισχνέομαι.

are distinct sets of forms (see **117**). Some common deponent verbs (**137**) employ the aorist passive form (in the active sense). These are called **passive deponents,** and the others, which use the aorist middle, are called **middle deponents;** *e.g.* *βούλομαι, I wish; ἐβουλήθην, I wished;* but *μάχομαι, I fight; ἐμαχεσάμην, I fought.*

385. *a.* In the same way some deponents use the future passive (in the active sense); *e.g.* *ἥδομαι, I am glad,* has *ἥσθην, I was glad,* and *ἡσθήσομαι, I shall be glad.* Such futures, however, are not so common as the aorists; thus *βούλομαι* has aor. *ἐβουλήθην,* but fut. *βουλήσομαι.*

b. Many verbs that have most of the active forms are deponent in the future; *e.g.* *λαμβάνω* (*λαβ-*), fut. *λήψομαι; φεύγω,* fut. *φεύξομαι* (and *φευξοῦμαι*).

c. The future passive is not a very common tense. Some verbs employ the middle form in the passive sense; *e.g.* *ἀδικέω, I wrong; ἀδικήσω, I shall wrong; ἀδικήσομαι, I shall be wronged.*

Agency.

386. Rule. — **Agency is usually expressed in Greek by ὑπό and the genitive;** *e.g.* *ἡ γέφῡρα ἐλύθη ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, the bridge was destroyed by the general.*

387. Rule. — **The dative of agency is used:** —

a. **Generally with perfects and pluperfects;** *e.g.* *παρεσκεύαστο αὐτοῖς, preparations had been made by them.*

b. **With verbals in -τέος**[1]; *e.g.* *ὁ ἀνὴρ λυτέος ἐστὶν αὐτῷ, the man must be set free by him.*

[1] Cf. Lat. dat. of agency with the gerundive.

Condition Contrary to Fact.

388. When a conditional sentence implies that the supposition is not or was not fulfilled, it is called **a condition contrary to fact.**

Rule. — **In a condition contrary to fact, the "if" clause has εἰ with a secondary tense of the indicative, and the conclusion has a secondary tense of the indicative with ἄν. The imperfect is used for present time, the aorist for past time;** *e.g.* *εἰ τοῦτο ἐποίει, εὖ ἂν ἔπρᾱττεν, if he were doing this, he would be succeeding; εἰ τοῦτο ἐποίησεν, εὖ ἂν ἔπρᾱξεν, if he had done this, he would have succeeded.*

389. Translate: 1. αἱρετέος ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ὁ λόφος, εἰ παρέρχεσθαι βουλόμεθα. 2. πρῶτον[1] μὲν οὐκ ἐβουλήθη ὁ Χειρίσοφος λῦειν τὸν ἡγεμόνα, ὕστερον δ' ἔλῡσεν· ὁ δὲ εἶτα εἰ μὴ εὖ ἡγήσατο, ἐδέθη ἂν ὑπὸ τῶν γυμνητῶν. 3. καταληφθέντων οὖν ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου τῶν φυλάκων Ξενοφῶν ἀπῄει πάλιν πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὡς τοῖς ἐνταῦθα καταλειφθεῖσι παραγγείλειεν εὐθὺς πάντα συσκευάζεσθαι. 4. τούτους γε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐὰν νῑκῶμεν, σωθησόμεθα[2] εἰς[2] τὴν Ἑλλάδα· εἰ[3] δὲ μή,[3] ἀεὶ ἐσόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ. 5. εἰ μὴ διέβαινον ἤδη οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν τάφρον, οὐχ οὕτως ἐφοβούμην ἄν. 6. ἡμῖν μὲν πάντα ἤδη πεποίηται· ὑμᾶς δὲ πρὸς τούτοις δεῖ δύο ἔτη στρατεύεσθαι.

390. Translate: 1. If the encampment should be seized by the king, it would not be possible for the Greeks

---

[1] *At first.* [2] Transl., *get back safe to.* [3] *Otherwise.*

to go past. 2. If they shall once get[1] into[1] the power of the king, they will be injured by him, in return for the evil they have done him. 3. If those[2] who were sent[2] by Cyrus had fought, the enemy would not have conquered. 4. Proxenus was never abandoned by the soldiers. 5. The bridge must be destroyed by the light-armed soldiers.

391. The adjectives *μέγας*, *great*, and *πολύς*, *much* (plur. *many*), have each two stems, *μεγα-* and *μεγαλ°/ᾱ-*, and *πολυ-* and *πολλ°/ᾱ-*, respectively. They are thus declined: —

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
Gen.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
Dat.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
Acc.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
Voc.	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα			
Dual N. A. V.	μεγάλω	μεγάλᾱ	μεγάλω			
G. D.	μεγάλοιν	μεγάλαιν	μεγάλοιν			
Plur. N. V.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
Gen.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
Dat.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
Acc.	μεγάλους	μεγάλᾱς	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλᾱ́ς	πολλά

Suggestion.

392. Observe that: —

The nom. and acc. sing., masc. and neut., are formed from the short stems, and are of the third declension, while all other cases are formed from the long stems, and are of the 1st and 2d declensions.

[1] *I.e. become in.*

[2] Aor. pass. partic. used as a noun.

Wishes.

393. Rule. — **A wish referring to the future is expressed by the optative**[1] **with or without εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, *O that*;** *e.g.* εἴθε σὺ φίλος ἡμῖν εἴης, *O that you may be a friend to us.*

394. Rule. — **A wish referring to present or past time that is not or was not fulfilled is expressed by a secondary tense of the indicative with εἴθε or εἰ γάρ. The imperfect is used for present time and the aorist for past time**[2]; *e.g.* εἴθε ταῦτα ἐποίησας, *O that you had done this.*

395. Rule. — **ὤφελον, *ought*** (the second aorist of ὀφείλω, *owe*), **is sometimes used with the present or aorist infinitive to express unfulfilled wishes, present or past respectively**; *e.g.* ὤφελε Κῦρος ζῆν, *would that Cyrus were alive.*

396. The negative for all wishes is μή (see **122** *b*).

397. Translate: 1. τότε δὲ ἥσθη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐπεὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ᾐσθάνετο ἡδέως ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους προσιόντας, εὖ εἰς[3] μάχην ἐσταλμένους. 2. εἴθε καὶ ἐμοὶ γίγνοιτο ἀγαθὰ πολλά τε καὶ μεγάλα, οἷα δὴ καὶ σὺ ἔχεις. 3. ἔνθα οἱ ἄνω μεγάλους λίθους κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν ἔβαλλον, ὥστε τοὺς στρατιώτας φοβεῖσθαι μὴ βλαφθεῖεν εἰ προΐοιεν. 4. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνεσκευασμένοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξελαύνουσιν, ὕστερον δὲ

---

[1] Hence the name (Lat. *opto, wish*).

[2] Cf. Contrary to Fact Condition, **388.**

[3] *For.*

ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς πεδίον μέγα τε καὶ καλόν· ἔνθα κῶμαι ἦσαν ἐξ ὧν ἤρουν σῖτον καὶ οἶνον πολύν. 5. τί δὲ πρὸς τῶν θεῶν κωλύει ὑμᾶς, ἐὰν ἔξω τῶν τειχῶν μένητε, ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων καταληφθῆναι πολλῶν τε καὶ ἰσχῡρῶν ὄντων; 6. μὴ ὤφελε τὸ στράτευμα ὑπ' Ἀριαίου καταλειφθῆναι· πᾶς γὰρ ποταμὸς σὺν αὐτῷ διαβατὸς ἂν εἴη. 7. τῶν μὲν λίθων κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν βαλλομένων οἱ στρατιῶται μένοντες οὐ παρήρχοντο, ὕστερον δὲ προϊόντες εἰς[1] τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐσώθησαν πάντες.

398. 1. I am afraid that if he perceives them (to be) advancing toward the city, he will dispatch a great army against them. 2. The things[2] which[2] have been[2] done[2] by them are just. 3. May the generals and captains no longer be deceived by these cowardly soldiers! 4. There were many ditches in the plain, but there was not much water in them. 5. And at daybreak there came many light-armed soldiers very swift and strong and seized the tents.

399. **Vocabulary.**

αἰσθάνομαι (*αἰσθ-*), fut. **αἰσθήσομαι**, pf. **ἤσθημαι**, *perceive, learn, observe.*

καταλαμβάνω (λαβ-), **-λήψομαι**, aor. pass. **κατελήφθην**, *seize, overtake, come upon.*

καταλείπω (λιπ-), **-λείψω**, aor. pass. **κατελείφθην**, *leave behind, abandon.*

παραγγέλλω (ἀγγελ-), **-αγγελῶ**, **-ήγγειλα**, etc., *pass the word along, make an announcement, give an order.*

στέλλω (στελ-), **στελῶ**, **ἔστειλα**, **ἔσταλκα**, **ἔσταλμαι**, *equip, dispatch.*

Ἑλλάς, *-άδος, ἡ, Greece.*

ἔτος, *-ους, τό, year.*

πέτρᾱ, *rock.*

---

[1] See **389**, note 2.

[2] Use pf. pass. partic. with the article.

ὕστερος, adj. in comparative degree, *latter, behind ;* superl., **ὕστατος** ; **ὕστερον**, adv., *later, afterward.*

ἔνθα, as demon. adv., *there, then ;* as rel. adv., *where, when.*

ἔξω, adv., *outside ;* prep. with gen., *outside of, without, beyond.*

ἐπί, prep. with gen., *upon, in the time of ;* **ἐπὶ τεττάρων**, *four deep ;* with dat., *upon, near, in addition to, in the power of ;* with acc., *to, toward, against.*

πρός, prep. with gen., *in front of, before, from ;* with dat., *at, in addition to ;* with acc., *to, toward, in respect to.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

REVIEW.

400. **Review of Vocabulary.**

1. ἀγγέλλω. 2. ἄγγελος. 3. αἰσθάνομαι. 4. αἰσχύνω. 5. ἀλλά. 6. ἀλλήλοιν. 7. ἅμα. 8. ἀνάβασις. 9. ἀναγκάζω. 10. ἀναπαύω. 11. ἀντί. 12. ἀξιόω. 13. ἀπάγω. 14. ἅπαξ. 15. ἄπειμι (εἶμι). 16. ἀποθνῄσκω. 17. ἀποκρίνομαι. 18. ἀποκτείνω. 19. ἀποπλέω. 20. ἀσπίς. 21. ἄστυ. 22. ἀσφαλής. 23. βοηθέω. 24. βοῦς. 25. γιγνώσκω. 26. γυμνής. 27. γυμνήτης. 28. δᾱρεικός. 29. δέδοικα. 30. διαπράττω. 31. διαρπάζω. 32. διέχω. 33. δίκαιος. 34. δισχίλιοι. 35. δοκέω. 36. δόρυ. 37. δύναμις. 38. ἑαυτοῦ. 39. ἔγωγε. 40. εἴκοσι. 41. εἶμι. 42. εἷς. 43. εἴσω. 44. ἑκατόν. 45. ἑκών. 46. ἐλευθερίᾱ. 47. Ἑλλάς. 48. Ἕλλην. 49. ἐμαυτοῦ. 50. ἐμός. 51. ἐναντίος. 52. ἔνθα. 53. ἑξακόσιοι. 54. ἐξαπατάω. 55. ἔπειμι. 56. ἐπιθῡμέω. 57. ἐπιμελέομαι. 58. ἐπιτήδειος. 59. ἐπιτρέπω. 60. ἑπτά. 61. ἑρμηνεύς. 62. ἔρημος. 63. ἔτος. 64. εὖ. 65. εὐδαίμων. 66. εὐθύς. 67. εὔνους. 68. εὑρίσκω. 69. εὐώνυμος. 70. ζάω. 71. ἡδέως. 72. ἤδη. 73. ἡδύς. 74. ἡμέτερος. 75. ἡττάομαι. 76. θόρυβος.

77. ἱερός. 78. ἱκανός. 79. ἱππεύς. 80. ἰσχῡρός. 81. ἰχθύς. 82. κατάβασις. 83. καταλαμβάνω. 84. καταλείπω. 85. κέρας. 86. κρατέω. 87. κρίνω. 88. κωμάρχης. 89. λαμβάνω. 90. λείπω. 91. λοιπός. 92. μάλα. 93. μάλιστα. 94. μᾶλλον. 95. μάντις. 96. μέγας. 97. μέλει. 98. μέλλω. 99. μέρος. 100. μηδείς. 101. μήποτε. 102. μιμνῄσκω. 103. μῦριοι. 104. ναῦς. 105. ξένιος. 106. οἴομαι. 107. ὀκτώ. 108. ὀλίγος. 109. ὄπισθεν. 110. ὅπως. 111. ὅσος. 112. ὅστις. 113. οὐδείς. 114. οὐκοῦν. 115. οὖν. 116. οὔποτε. 117. οὔτε. 118. πάλιν. 119. παραγγέλλω. 120. παρασκευάζω. 121. παρέρχομαι. 122. πάσχω. 123. πέλτη. 124. πέντε. 125. πεντήκοντα. 126. περαίνω. 127. πέτρᾱ. 128. πίμπλημι. 129. πλέω. 130. πλῆθος. 131. πόλις. 132. πολύς. 133. πούς. 134. πρᾶττω. 135. πρόβατα. 136. πρόειμι (εἶμι). 137. πρός. 138. πρόσειμι (εἶμι). 139. πρόσθεν. 140. σεαυτοῦ. 141. σκοπέω. 142. σός. 143. σπένδω. 144. στέλλω. 145. σύμμαχος. 146. συσκευάζω. 147. σφενδονάω. 148. ταχύς. 149. τέλος. 150. τέτταρες. 151. τῑμή. 152. τιτρώσκω. 153. τρεῖς. 154. τριᾱκόσιοι. 155. τριήρης. 156. ὕδωρ. 157. ὑμέτερος. 158. ὑπισχνέομαι. 159. ὕστερος. 160. φαίνω. 161. φέρω. 162. χαλεπός. 163. χίλιοι. 164. χράομαι. 165. ὥστε.

401. Review of Paradigms.

a. Nouns of Third Declension, sibilant and digamma stems, **277–280,**
close vowel stems, **340–341,**
irregular, **342.**

b. Adjectives, of third declension, **322–323,**
of first and third declensions, **361–362,**
irregular, **391–392.**

c. Participles, in *-ων*, **332–335,**

Participles, in *-āς*, **365**,
in *-ώς*, **366**,
in *-εἰς*, **367**.

d. *Pronouns*, possessive, **305**,
interrogative, **302–303**,
indefinite, **302–303**,
indefinite relative, **304**,
reflexive, **261–263**,
reciprocal, **301**.

e. *Aorist Active System* of λύω, **286–287**.

f. *Perfect Active System*, of λύω, **311–315**,
of various verbs, **316–319**.

g. *Perfect Middle System*, of λύω, **347–348**,
of mute verbs, **353–355**.

h. *Future Perfect* of λύω, **357–358**.

i. *Aorist Passive*, of λύω, **374–378**,
of mute verbs, **379**.

j. *Future Passive* of λύω, **380–381**.

k. *Liquid Verbs*, **292–296**.

l. εἶμι, **270–271**.

m. *Numerals*, declension of εἷς (οὐδείς), δύο, τρεῖς, τέτταρες, **306–307**,
cardinals and ordinals, **329–330**,
adverbs, **331**.

402. Review of Miscellaneous Topics.

a. *Classes and Orders of Mutes*, **352**.

b. *Deponent Verbs*, **384–385**.

c. *Verbal Adjectives*, **383** and Note.

403. Review of Syntax.

a. *Genitive Case*, with verbs of sense perception, **265**,
with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, **266**,

Genitive Case, absolute, **337**,
agency with ὑπό, **386**.

b. *Dative Case*, with adjectives, adverbs, and substantives, **267**.
agency, **387**.

c. *Potential Optative*, **369**.

d. *Prohibition*, **288**.

e. *Wish*, **393–396**.

f. *Purpose*, **324**.

g. *Result*, **368**.

h. *Verbs of Fearing*, **325**.

i. *Object Clauses with* ὅπως, **273**.

j. *Condition*, simple particular, **297**,
contrary to fact, **388**,
more vivid future, **298**,
most vivid future, **351**,
less vivid future, **343**.

404. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT: —

The Battle of Cunaxa.

τότε δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες δρόμῳ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι τὰ δόρατα ἔπαιον φόβον ποιοῦντες[1] τοῖς τῶν βαρβάρων ἵπποις, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι εὐθὺς στρέφονται καὶ φεύγουσι· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐδίωκον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνὰ[2] κράτος.[2] Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νῑκῶντας[3] τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας καὶ ἡδόμενος ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ βασιλέα τὸ μέσον ἔχοντα τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁρῶν εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο,[4] ἀλλὰ λέγων "τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ" ἴετο[5] ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀποθνήσκει ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων τινός.

[1] partic. from ποιέω.
[2] *at full speed.*
[3] partic. from νῑκάω.
[4] *restrain himself.*
[5] *rush.*

CHAPTER XXV.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Comparison of Adjectives.

405. *a.* The comparative and superlative of adjectives are usually formed by adding **-τερος** and **-τατος** to the stem of the positive; *e.g.* —

pos. δεινός (stem δεινο-), comp. δεινότερος, sup. δεινότατος;

pos. ἀσφαλής (stem ἀσφαλεσ-), comp. ἀσφαλέστερος, sup. ἀσφαλέστατος.

b. Stems ending in *o*-, with the penult short (see **16–17**), lengthen the *o* to *ω* in comparison. Thus a succession of four short syllables is avoided; *e.g.* —

	ἄξιος,	ἀξιώτερος,	ἀξιώτατος;
but	δεινός,	δεινότερος,	δεινότατος,
and	πιστός,	πιστότερος,	πιστότατος.

c. Adjectives in *-ων* add *-εστερος* and *-εστατος* to the stem; *e.g.* εὐδαίμων (stem εὐδαιμον-), εὐδαιμονέστερος, εὐδαιμονέστατος.

406. A less common form of comparison is sometimes used, generally in the case of adjectives in *-υς* and *-ρος*, where *-υς* or *-ρος* is changed to *-ίων* for the comparative and to *-ιστος* for the superlative; *e.g.* —

ἡδύς	(stem ἡδυ-),	ἡδίων,	ἥδιστος;
ἐχθρός	(stem ἐχθρο-),	ἐχθίων,	ἔχθιστος.

407. *a.* Comparatives in *-τερος* and superlatives in *-τατος* and *-ιστος* belong to the first and second declensions (see **129**); *e.g.*—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. Nom.	δεινότερος ἔχθιστος	δεινοτέρᾱ ἐχθίστη	δεινότερον, etc. ἔχθιστον, etc.

b. Comparatives in *-ῑων* are declined like *εὐδαίμων* (**322**), but have no separate vocative, and have some shorter forms. The accent is recessive. Thus *ἡδίων* is declined as follows:—

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ἡδίων	ἥδῑον	ἡδίονες, ἡδίους	ἡδίονα, ἡδίω
Gen.	ἡδίονος		ἡδῑόνων	
Dat.	ἡδίονι		ἡδίοσι	
Acc.	ἡδίονα, ἡδίω	ἥδῑον	ἡδίονας, ἡδίους	ἡδίονα, ἡδίω

Dual.

Masc., Fem., and Neut.

N. A. V. ἡδίονε
G. D. ἡδῑόνοιν

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

408. Adverbs in the positive are formed from adjectives, the ending and accent being like that of the genitive plural, masculine and neuter, with *-ς* in place of *-ν*; *e.g.*—

adj.	ἀσφαλής,	gen. plur.	ἀσφαλῶν,	adv.	ἀσφαλῶς;
"	καλός,	" "	καλῶν,	"	καλῶς;
"	πᾶς,	" "	πάντων,	"	πάντως.

409. For the comparative of an adverb, the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective is used; and for the superlative, the neuter accusative plural of the superlative; *e.g.* pos. ἡδέως, comp. ἥδιον, sup. ἥδιστα.

410. Compare the following adjectives and adverbs: πολέμιος, αἰσχρός, ἀσφαλής, δῆλος, δίκαιος, ἱκανός, φίλιος, χαλεπός; αἰσχρῶς, ἀσφαλῶς, φιλίως, δικαίως.

411. RULE. — **The genitive is used with comparatives when ἤ (*than*) is not expressed;**[1] *e.g.* πιστότερός ἐστι τοῦ πατρός, *he is more trustworthy than his father.*

412. RULE. — **The dative expresses the degree of difference;**[2] *e.g.* ὕστερον δὲ οὐ πολλῷ παρῆσαν, *and not long afterward they arrived.*

413. **Vocabulary.**[3]

ἄχθομαι (ἀχθ-), fut. **ἀχθέσομαι**, aor. **ἠχθέσθην**, *be troubled, be vexed.*

ἐκπίπτω (πετ-, πτο-), fut. **-πεσοῦμαι**, 2d aor. **-έπεσον**, pf. **-πέπτωκα**, *fall out, fall down;* used as pass. to ἐκβάλλω, *be thrown out, be exiled.*

ἔξειμι, only used impersonally (ἔξεστι) and in partic. (ἐξόν) as acc. absol. (**444**), *it is possible* or *permitted.*

ἐξελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), fut. **-ελῶ**, aor. **-ήλασα**, pf. **-ελήλακα**, pf. mid. **-ελήλαμαι**, aor. pass. **-ηλάθην**, *drive out, march forth.*

θαρρέω, *be courageous, take courage.*

θνῄσκω (cf. ἀποθνῄσκω, **328**), fut. **θανοῦμαι**, 2d aor. **ἔθανον**, pf. **τέθνηκα**, *die;* used as pass. of κτείνω, *be killed, be put to death.*

ὁρμάω, *hasten on, rush, start.*

---

[1] Cf. Latin ablative with comparatives without *quam.*

[2] Cf. Latin ablative of degree of difference.

[3] From this point on the special vocabularies immediately precede their exercises.

συγκαλέω, fut. (exception to **214** and foot-note 1) **-καλέσω**, aor. **-εκάλεσα**, etc., *call together, assemble.*
αἰσχρός, *shameful, base.*
ἅπᾶς,[1] **ἅπᾶσα**, **ἅπᾶν**, *all, the whole.*
νέος (*νέϝος*; cf. Lat. *novus*), *new, young.*
πρέσβυς, *-εως*, adj., *old;* as a noun, *old man, ambassador.*
καλῶς ἔχει, *it is well, it is right.*

414. TRANSLATE: —

Xenophon's Exhortation.

ἔνθα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὁ νεώτατος τῶν στρατηγῶν, αἰσθόμενος[2] ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων ἱππέᾶς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος ἐφοβοῦντο, παρήγγειλε συγκαλεῖν πάντας καὶ τάττειν ἐπὶ τεττάρων. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐτάχθησαν ἔλεξεν ὧδε· "εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἄχθεται ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσιν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισι, μιμνήσκετε ὅτι μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν δεινότερόν εἰσι μῡρίων ἀνθρώπων· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδείς ποτε τέθνηκεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ἅπαντα ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. καὶ τῶν ἱππέων πολλῷ ἀσφαλέστεροί ἐσμεν· οὗτοι γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων ὄντες φοβοῦνται οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ μὴ ἐκπίπτωσιν. ἔξεστιν οὐκοῦν ἡμῖν θαρροῦσι προϊέναι, οὕτως δὲ πάντα καλῶς ἕξει." μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἡδίονες ὥρμων πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον νίκην μεγάλην ἐνίκησαν.

415. TRANSLATE: When the general had ordered all the men younger than thirty years to be dispatched from the stronghold to the king, leaving behind the most trustworthy of the older men, the enemy took courage and attacked the stronghold. They threw the men outside the walls down from the rocks, and seizing the stronghold, put to death most shamefully those inside.

[1] Longer form of *πᾶς*.

[2] 2d aor. partic.

Indirect Discourse.

416. Reported speech or thought is quoted in various ways in Greek, the most common of which is much like the English. Thus, as *I see the man*, when quoted indirectly, becomes *he said that he saw the man*, in the same way τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ becomes ἔλεξεν ὅτι τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρᾴη. In both languages the necessary substitutions of pronouns are made, the word *that* or ὅτι is inserted to introduce the quotation, and the form of the verb is changed. There is one important difference: the English changes the tense of the quoted verb, but not the mood; the Greek may change the mood, but not the tense. Such reported speech or thought is called **indirect discourse.**

417. Rule. — **Clauses quoted indirectly**[1] **and introduced by ὅτι (or ὡς) retain the mood and tense of the original form, if the verb after which they are quoted is in a primary tense; if it is secondary, they may be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative,**[2] **or may retain the original form for vividness**[3]; *e.g.* —

τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ, *I see the man;*
λέγει ὅτι τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρᾷ, *he says that he sees the man;*
ἔλεξεν ὅτι τὸν ἄνδρα { ὁρᾴη or ὁρᾷ }, *he said that he saw the man.*

---

[1] Sentences quoted directly retain the exact words of the original speech or thought, ὅτι being sometimes prefixed.

[2] The necessary changes of person, of course, always take place.

[3] Imperfects and pluperfects of the direct form usually keep their mood and tense unchanged when quoted with ὅτι, even after secondary tenses; but if they are changed to the optative, the present and perfect respectively represent them.

418. *Questions are quoted indirectly* exactly like declarative sentences, except that ὅτι is not used. If the original sentence contained an interrogative word, that serves to introduce the indirect question. Otherwise εἰ (*if, whether*) or πότερον (*whether*) may be used; *e.g.* —

τί λέγουσιν, *what do they say?*
ἐρωτᾷ τί λέγουσιν, *he asks what they say;*
ἠρώτα τί { λέγοιεν or λέγουσιν }, *he asked what they said.*

419. Some verbs govern the infinitive in indirect discourse. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative; *e.g.* ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, *they did this;* νομίζει αὐτοὺς ταῦτα ποιῆσαι, *he thinks that they did this;* ἐνόμισεν αὐτοὺς ταῦτα ποιῆσαι, *he thought that they did* (or *had done*) *this.*

NOTE. — If the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the main verb (*i.e.* the verb of *saying* or *thinking*), it is not expressed with the infinitive, and any adjective or predicate noun referring to this subject is in the nominative; *e.g.* αὐτὸς ταῦτα ποιήσω, *I shall do this myself;* ᾤετο αὐτὸς ταῦτα ποιήσειν, *he thought that he should do this himself.* Cf. p. 118, foot-note 2.

420. RULE. — **When the quoted verb is changed to the infinitive, it retains its tense, except that the imperfect and pluperfect are represented by the present and perfect respectively.** For examples, see **419** and NOTE.

421. Verbs of *thinking* and φημί (*say*) regularly take the infinitive (**419**); but verbs of *saying*, except φημί, and often verbs of *knowing* and *perceiving*[1] take ὅτι clauses (**416**).

NOTE. — λέγω may take either construction, but in the active it usually takes ὅτι clauses.

422. It is important to distinguish between the infinitive in indirect discourse and its use in other construc-

[1] Cf. **443.**

tions. In indirect discourse the tenses all have their regular time relation, and refer to time present, past, or future with respect to the verb they depend on. In all other constructions there is no distinction *in time* between the present and aorist (see **285**); *e.g.* *ἐνόμιζε τοὺς ἄνδρας ταῦτα ποιεῖν, he thought the men were doing this; ἐνόμιζε τοὺς ἄνδρας ταῦτα ποιῆσαι, he thought the men had done this; ἐνόμιζε τοὺς ἄνδρας ταῦτα ποιήσειν, he thought the men would do this;*

but *βούλεται ταῦτα ποιεῖν,*
or *βούλεται ταῦτα ποιῆσαι,* } *he wishes to do this.*

423. The negative for the infinitive in indirect discourse is regularly *οὐ*, because only such clauses can be quoted in the infinitive as would have *οὐ* in the direct form. For the other uses of the infinitive *μή* is generally employed (see **122**).

424. **Vocabulary.**

ὑποπτεύω, *be suspicious, suspect.*
ὠφελέω, *assist, benefit;* takes acc., contrary to **69**, I., NOTE.
ἐχθρός, *hateful, hostile.* As a noun, *a (personal) enemy* (cf. Lat. *inimīcus*).
πότερος, *which (of two)?* (cf. Lat. *uter*); **πότερον**, adv. (cf. Lat. *utrum*), *whether.*
πρότερος, πρῶτος, compar. and superl., with pos. lacking (cf. Lat. *prior, prīmus*), *former, first.*

425. TRANSLATE:—

Clearchus persuades his soldiers to advance.

ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρᾱς εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ[1] *ἔφασαν προϊέναι· ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη Κῦρον ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ ἐπιέναι μέλλειν, ἥκειν δ'*

[1] In English the negative is placed with the quoted verb, but the Greek often places *οὐ* with the main verb when the quoted verb is in the infinitive, especially with *φημί*; cf. Lat. *negavit se venturum.*

ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ διὰ ταῦτα ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτας ἀναγκάζειν ἐπειρᾶτο ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τ' ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν ἰσχῡρῶς ἀχθόμενος συνεκάλεσεν αὐτοὺς καὶ ἔλεξεν ὅτι θέλοι μὲν μόνον ὠφελεῖν Κῦρον, αὐτοὺς δὲ οὐ βλάπτειν· τοὺς γὰρ στρατιώτας μᾶλλον πολλῷ φιλοίη ἢ τοὺς ἄλλους φίλους πάντας οὓς ἔχοι. εἶτα δὲ ἐρωτᾷ πότερον βούλονται προϊέναι ἢ οὔ· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες μεγάλως ἡδόμενοι ἀποκρίνονται ὅτι πείσονται καὶ ἕψονται εὐθύς.

426. TRANSLATE: These things seemed good to the army, and they sent men to Cyrus, who asked him why he was marching into this country. And he answered that Abrocomas, a (personal) enemy of his, was here, and that he wished to overtake him and his army at a village beyond the river Euphrates.[1]

CHAPTER XXVI.

SECOND TENSES. — CAUSAL CLAUSES. — SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE. — PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

427. Beside the forms thus far presented, some verbs have other sets of forms, called **second tenses.** These are: —

[1] The Greek usually puts the name of the river before ποταμός.

a. A second aorist, active and middle;
b. " " perfect and pluperfect active;
c. " " aorist and future passive.

428. A verb which has any second tense usually lacks the other forms for the same tense, the second tense forms being used with the ordinary meaning. If any verb has both sets of forms for any tense, as occasionally happens, there is generally a difference of meaning between the two.

429. The **second aorist active and middle,** being formed from the same tense-stem, constitute a system. These forms are very common, and very simple in their formation. The stem consists of the theme with the thematic vowel added: *e.g.* λείπω (theme λιπ-), 2d aor. stem λιπ%-. It takes the augment in the indicative, and the secondary personal endings throughout. Its inflection is as follows:—

430. SECOND AORIST ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJV.	OPTATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Sing. 1	ἔλιπον	λίπω	λίποιμι	S. 2 λίπε
2	ἔλιπες	λίπῃς	λίποις	3 λιπέτω
3	ἔλιπε	λίπῃ	λίποι	D. 2 λίπετον
				3 λιπέτων
Dual 2	ἐλίπετον	λίπητον	λίποιτον	P. 2 λίπετε
3	ἐλιπέτην	λίπητον	λιποίτην	3 λιπόντων
				INFIN. λιπεῖν
Plur. 1	ἐλίπομεν	λίπωμεν	λίποιμεν	PARTICIPLE.
2	ἐλίπετε	λίπητε	λίποιτε	
3	ἔλιπον	λίπωσι	λίποιεν	λιπών, -οῦσα, -όν

SECOND AORIST MIDDLE.

	Indicative.	Subjv.	Optative.	Imperative.
Sing. 1	ἐλιπόμην	λίπωμαι	λιποίμην	S. 2 λιποῦ
2	ἔλιπου	λίπῃ	λίποιο	3 λιπέσθω
3	ἔλιπετο	λίπηται	λίποιτο	D. 2 λίπεσθον
				3 λιπέσθων
Dual 2	ἐλίπεσθον	λίπησθον	λίποισθον	P. 2 λίπεσθε
3	ἐλιπέσθην	λίπησθον	λιποίσθην	3 λιπέσθων
				Infin. λιπέσθαι
Plur. 1	ἐλιπόμεθα	λιπώμεθα	λιποίμεθα	Participle.
2	ἔλιπεσθε	λίπησθε	λίποισθε	
3	ἔλιποντο	λίπωνται	λίποιντο	λιπόμενος, -η, -ον

Suggestion.

431. Observe that: —

The accents of λιπεῖν, λιπών, λιποῦ, and λιπέσθαι are not recessive.

432. The **second perfect and pluperfect active** constitute a second perfect system,[1] which is formed throughout like the first perfect, except that: —

a. The stems do not take κ, but end in *-α-* and *-η-* (*-ει-*) instead of *-κα-* and *-κη-* (*-κει-*); *e.g.* γράφω (theme γραφ-), 2d pf. stem γεγραφα-.

b. The vowel of the theme is often modified, being usually lengthened or strengthened. ε becomes ο, α becomes ᾱ or η, and verbs with strengthened themes (see **488** II.) may change ι to οι; *e.g.* —

γίγνομαι (theme γεν-), 2d pf. γέγονα,
φαίνω (" φαν-), " " πέφηνα,
λείπω (" λιπ-), " " λέλοιπα.

[1] It may be noted that comparatively few verbs have a 2d pf., and almost all of these are verbs with themes ending in a consonant.

c. Themes ending in π, β, or κ, γ, commonly roughen the mute; *e.g.* τρέπω (theme τρεπ-), 2d pf. τέτροφα.

433. Learn the second perfect system of λείπω (**544**).

434. The **second aorist and second future passive** constitute a second passive system, the stems being formed like those of the first passive, except that: —

a. θ is not used, and the stems end in -ε- (-η-) and -ησ%- instead of -θε- (-θη-) and -θησ%-; *e.g.* φαίνω (φαν-), 2d aor. pass. stem φανε- (φανη-), 2d fut. pass. stem φανησ%-.

b. In the theme ε usually changes to α; *e.g.* στέλλω (στελ-), 2d aor. pass. ἐστάλην.

435. Learn the second passive system of φαίνω (**545**).

436. **Vocabulary.**

ἀπολείπω, *leave behind, desert, forsake* (cf. καταλείπω).

εἶπον, 2d aor. (other systems lacking), *say, speak.* Regularly takes ὅτι constructions.

ἐμβάλλω, fut. **-βαλῶ**, 2d aor. **-ἔβαλον**, pf. **-βέβληκα**, pf. mid. **-βέβλημαι**, aor. pass. **-εβλήθην**, *rush into, invade, attack.*

ἐφέπομαι, fut. **-ἕψομαι**, 2d aor. **-εσπόμην**, impf. **-ειπόμην**, *follow after, pursue, attack.*

κατακαίνω, fut. **-κανῶ**, 2d aor. **-έκανον**, 2d pf. **-κέκονα**, *cut down, slay, kill.*

κλέπτω, fut. **κλέψω**, aor. **ἔκλεψα**, 2d pf. **κέκλοφα**, pf. mid. **κέκλεμμαι**, 2d aor. pass. **ἐκλάπην**, *steal.*

φεύγω, fut. **φεύξομαι** or **φευξοῦμαι**, 2d aor. **ἔφυγον**, 2d pf. **πέφευγα**, *flee, be an exile.*

ἐπειδή, *when, since.*

καίπερ, conj. (with partic.), *although.*

οὔπω, adv., *not yet.*

437. TRANSLATE: *a.* οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι θαρροῦντες τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐξελάσαντες ἐφείποντο τῷ μέσῳ ἡμῶν οὗ Ἀριαῖος ἦρχε καὶ νικήσαντες ἐδίωκον, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος σὺν τῷ δεξιῷ ἐμβαλὼν εἰς τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων

μέσον ἐνίκησεν εὐθὺς τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ ἱππέας πολλοὺς κατέκανεν.

b. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους τῶν στρατηγῶν εἶπεν· ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων· πεφεύγασιν γὰρ αἰσχρῶς, κλέψαντες ἅπαντα τὰ πολλοῦ ἄξια. ἀλλὰ οὐ διώξω αὐτούς, καίπερ ἰσχυρῶς ἀχθόμενος, ἐπειδὴ πρότερόν με ὠφελήκασιν.

438. TRANSLATE: *a.* It has been written in the Anabasis of Xenophon that Cyrus, the younger son of Darius, was hostile to his brother, the king, and was killed while attacking him.

b. Cyrus suspected that men had[1] been[1] dispatched[1] to steal the boats, but they had not yet appeared.

439. RULE. — **Causal clauses, introduced by some word meaning *because* or *since*, such as ὅτι, ὡς, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, have the indicative. The negative is οὐ**; *e.g.* *ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐκ ἔμενεν, he blamed him because he did not remain.*

NOTE. — Cause may also be expressed by the participle, which may stand in agreement with the subject or object or any noun in the sentence (**120**), or may be used in the genitive or accusative absolute (see **337** and **444**).

SUPPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLE.

440. The supplementary participle *supplies* a part of the predicate. It may agree with either the subject or object.

441. RULE. — **The supplementary participle is used with verbs and phrases of *appearing* and *showing*,**

[1] 2d aor. infin. pass.

such as φαίνω, δηλόω, δῆλός and φανερός εἰμι; and of *beginning, continuing,* and *ceasing;* *e.g.* —

a. Κῦρος δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθῡμῶν ἄρχειν, *it was evident that Cyrus desired to rule;*

b. παύσω αὐτοὺς ταῦτα ποιοῦντας, *I will make them stop doing this.*

442. RULE. — **With λανθάνω, *escape the notice of,* τυγχάνω, *happen,* and φθάνω, *anticipate,* the supplementary participle is used, in agreement with the subject;** *e.g.* ἔλαθε τοῦτο ποιήσας, *he did this secretly;* παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, *he was present, as it happened;*[1] ἔφθασαν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀφῑκόμενοι, *they arrived before the others.*

NOTE. — It will be noticed that the Greek emphasizes and expresses by the main verb the idea which in English is expressed by an adverb or adverbial phrase, and expresses by the supplementary participle what the English makes the main verb.

PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

443. RULE. — **With verbs of *knowing* and *perceiving,* and ἀγγέλλω, *announce,* quoted statements and thoughts are often expressed in the participle;** *e.g.* οἶδα αὐτὸν ἥκοντα, *I know that he is come;* ἤγγειλε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τεθνηκότας, *he announced that the generals were dead.*[2]

ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE.

444. RULE. — **The participles of impersonal verbs are used absolutely** (see **336**) **in the accusative;** *e.g.* ἀλλὰ τί δή, ὑμᾶς ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἤλθομεν; *but why, pray, when it was possible (for us) to destroy you, did we not set about it?*

---

[1] This may also be translated, *he happened to be present.*

[2] Cf. the ὅτι and the infin. constructions.

445. Vocabulary.

ἀπαγγέλλω, *bring back word, announce.*
ἀφικνέομαι, fut. **-ἵξομαι**, 2d aor. **-ἱκόμην**, pf. **-ἶγμαι**, *arrive.*
ἐντυγχάνω (*τυχ-*, *τευχ-*), fut. **-τεύξομαι**, 2d aor. **-έτυχον**, pf. **-τετύχηκα**, *come upon, find, meet.*
ἐρωτάω, fut. **ἐρωτήσω**, 2d aor. **ἠρόμην**, *ask.*
λανθάνω (*λαθ-*), fut. **λήσω**, 2d aor. **ἔλαθον**, 2d pf. **λέληθα**, pf. mid. **λέλησμαι**, *escape the notice of, be concealed.*
συγγίγνομαι (*γεν-*), fut. **-γενήσομαι**, 2d aor. **-εγενόμην**, 2d pf. **-γέγονα**, pf. mid. **-γεγένημαι**, *come together, meet.*
φθάνω (*φθα-*), fut. **φθήσομαι**, aor. **ἔφθασα**, *anticipate, be before.*

446. Translate: *a.* ἐπειδὴ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς παρὼν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἐτύγχανεν, οὐκ ἤκουσεν ὅτι στράτευμα ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τρεφόμενον λανθάνοι Κῦρῳ. *b.* οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκπεπτωκότων.[1] *c.* ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος καὶ Συέννεσις συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Κῦρος μὲν τοῦτον ἤρετο πότερον βούλοιτο δῶρα δέχεσθαι ἢ οὔ[2]· Συέννεσις δέ, καίπερ ἐξὸν δῶρα λαβεῖν πολλά τε καὶ καλά, ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι μᾶλλον ἐθέλοι τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, εἴ που τοῦ Κύρου στρατεύματος[3] ἐντυγχάνοι, ἀπολαμβάνειν.[4]

447. Translate: *a.* It was clear that Cyrus desired to hasten on, in order that he might arrive upon the heights before the enemy. *b.* Proxenus happened to arrive later, and begged Clearchus and Menon to cease being angry with each other.

---

[1] *The exiles* (see **413**).
[2] See p. 50, foot-note 3.
[3] Part. gen., modifying *που*; see **266, II.**
[4] *Receive back.*

CHAPTER XXVII.

VERBS IN -μι. — GENERAL CONDITIONS.

448. Some verbs in the first person singular of the present indicative active have the original ending *-μι*, instead of *-ω* (see **37** and NOTE). In the present and second aorist systems the *-μι* verbs have no thematic vowel.[1] In the other systems they are inflected like λύω.

449. The *-μι* verbs modify the theme in the present system, by reduplicating with *ι* or by adding *-νυ-*. In the singular of the indicative active the vowel is lengthened: *e.g.* —

THEME.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. IND. ACT.
στα-	ἱστα- (for σιστα-)[2]	ἵστημι, *cause to stand, stand.*
θε-	τιθε- (for θιθε-)	τίθημι, *place.*
δο-	διδο-	δίδωμι, *give.*
δεικ-	δεικνυ-	δείκνῡμι, *show, point out.*

450. Learn the present system, active and middle, of ἵστημι, τίθημι, δίδωμι, and δείκνῡμι (**546** and **548**).

SUGGESTIONS.

451. Observe that: —

In many forms τίθημι and δίδωμι are much alike, and in the same way ἵστημι and δείκνῡμι; *e.g.* ἱστάς and δεικνύς have long vowels, and τιθείς and διδούς have diphthongs.

[1] Except in the subjunctive (see **452** *d*).

[2] Cf. Lat. *sisto*.

452. Observe that:—

a. In the 3d plur. of the *present indicative active*, the ending is *-ᾱσι*. In ἵστημι this contracts with the final *α* of the tense stem.

b. In the 3d plur. of the *imperfect active*, the ending is *-σαν* (see **37**).

c. The *present* and *imperfect active* in the sing. lengthen the vowel of the theme, but τίθημι in the 2d and 3d sing. of the impf. has *ει*, not *η*.

d. The *subjunctive* of stems in *α*, *ε*, and *ο* contracts the final vowel of the theme with the thematic vowel, which appears in this mood. Stems in *α* and *ε* are both inflected like φιλῶ, φιλῶμαι, those in *ο* have *ω* throughout, and those in *νυ* are inflected like λῡ́ω, λῡ́ωμαι.

e. The *optative active* has the mood-suffix *-ιη-* (*-ιε-*), and the ending *-ν* in the first person singular (cf. λυθείην), except that themes in *νυ* are inflected like λῡ́οιμι. For themes in *α*, *ε*, and *ο*, contract forms are more common in the dual and plur.

f. In the *optative middle* the mood-suffix, *-ι-*, contracts with the vowel of the theme, except that themes in *νυ* are inflected like λῡοίμην.

g. The *imperative active*, having no ending in the 2d sing., lengthens the final vowel of the theme, *α* and *υ* to *η* and *ῡ*, *ε* and *ο* to *ει* and *ου*.

h. The *infinitive active* has the ending *-ναι*. Its accent is irregular.

453. The active participle forms its stem in *-ντ-* and adds *σ* to the nominative singular masculine, before which the *ντ* disappears (cf. λῡ́σᾱς, **365**, and λυθείς, **367**). The preceding vowel is lengthened. These participles are declined like λυθείς; *e.g.*—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	τιθείς	τιθεῖσα	τιθέν	διδούς	διδοῦσα	διδόν
G.	τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος	διδόντος	διδούσης	διδόντος

454. *a.* Like ἵστημι in the present system are inflected πίμπλημι, *fill*, and in the middle δύναμαι, *be able*, and ἐπίσταμαι, *understand*.

b. Like δείκνῡμι in the present system are inflected ὄμνῡμι, *swear*, and ἀπόλλῡμι, *destroy*.

455. In ἵστημι the present, imperfect, future (στήσω), and first aorist (ἔστησα) of the active are transitive, and mean *cause to stand, set*. The rest of the active, *i.e.* second aorist (ἔστην; see **465–468**), perfect (ἕστηκα), etc., and all the middle are intransitive, and mean *stand*.

456. **Vocabulary.**

ἀνίστημι, *set up, raise up, rouse;* intrans. forms (see **455**), *rise up.*

ἀπόλλῡμι (*ὀλ-*), **-ολῶ, -ώλεσα**, 2d aor. **-ωλόμην, -ολώλεκα**,[1] 2d pf. **-όλωλα**, *destroy, lose;* mid. and pass., with 2d pf., *perish.*

δείκνῡμι (*δεικ-*), **δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην**, *show, point out.*

δίδωμι (*δο-*), **δώσω, ἔδωκα**,[2] 2d aor. (only in dual and plur.) **ἔδοτον**, etc., **δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην**, *give, offer.*

δύναμαι (*δυνα-*), **δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην**, *be able, can.*

ἐπίσταμαι (*στα-*), **ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην**, *know, know how, understand.*

εὑρίσκω (*εὑρ-*), **εὑρήσω**, 2d aor. **ηὗρον, ηὕρηκα, ηὕρημαι, ηὑρέθην**, *find, discover.*

ἵστημι (*στα-*), **στήσω, ἔστησα**, 2d aor. **ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην**, *cause to stand, set, place, stop;* intrans. forms (**455**), *stand, halt.*

καθίστημι, *set down, station, establish.*

ὄμνῡμι (*ὀμ-, ὀμο-*), **ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα**,[1] **ὀμώμοσμαι, ὠμόσθην**, *swear, take an oath.*

προδίδωμι, *give over, betray, abandon.*

τίθημι (*θε-*), **θήσω, ἔθηκα**,[2] 2d aor. (only in dual and plur.) **ἔθετον**, etc., **τέθηκα**,[3] **τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην**, *put, place;* **τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι**, *ground arms, stand under arms.*

τῑμωρέω, *help, avenge;* mid., *punish.*

ἅρμα, *-ατος, τό*, *chariot, war-chariot.*

τάξις, *-εως, ἡ*, *arrangement, order, line of battle.*

αἴτιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *the cause of, responsible for, to blame.*

457. TRANSLATE: —

The General's Speech.

ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸ ἅρμα στήσᾱς παρήγγειλεν εἰς[4] τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι καὶ δείξᾱς τοὺς ἀπολωλότας εἶπεν ὅτι[5] "οὗτοι ἀπολειφθέντες καὶ οὐ δυνάμενοι εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα καταληφθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν ἱππέων ἀπώλοντο. τούτων τῶν κακῶν αἴτιός ἐστιν Ἀριαῖος, ὃν ἡμεῖς βασι-

[1] Some verbs beginning with *α*, *ε*, or *ο*, followed by a single consonant, reduplicate by prefixing their first two letters and lengthening the vowel of second syllable of the form resulting. This is called **Attic reduplication.**

[2] Four verbs, *δίδωμι, ἵημι, τίθημι*, and *φέρω*, have aorists ending in *-κα*, not *-σα*, making *ἔδωκα, ἧκα, ἔθηκα*, and *ἤνεγκα* respectively.

[3] Later, *τέθεικα*. [4] *In.* *εἰς* is used, since motion is implied.

[5] Not to be translated before a direct quotation.

λέᾶ καθιστάναι ἐθέλοντες ὠμόσαμέν τε καὶ ἐδώκαμεν δεξιὰς[1] καὶ ἐλάβομεν μὴ προδώσειν ἀλλήλους." ἐπειδὴ δ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο, οἱ ὁπλῖται χαλεπαίνοντες μεγάλως καὶ ἀχθόμενοι ἕκαστος ἐπεθύμει ἐμβάλλειν ἵνα κατακαίνοιεν τοὺς ἐξαπατῶντας τῑμωρούμενοι.

458. TRANSLATE: —

On the third day the messengers arrived and brought back word that they had come upon the hoplites who had fled, encamped in the plain. And they said that they immediately roused them, and having stationed such guards as they were able, ordered those who understood how to use the sling to follow after Ariaeus, that the enemy might not take the heights before them.

GENERAL CONDITIONS.

459. Conditional sentences in which the supposition implies occasional reality and the conclusion states what happens if the supposition ever is or was fulfilled are called **general conditions.**

460. RULE. — **In a general condition of present time, the "if" clause has ἐάν (ἤν or ἄν) with the subjunctive, and the conclusion has the present indicative;** *e.g.* ἐὰν τοῦτο ποιήσῃ, εὖ πράττει, *if he (ever) does this, he succeeds.*

461. RULE. — **In a general condition of past time, the "if" clause has εἰ with the optative, and the conclusion has the imperfect (or aorist) indicative;** *e.g.* εἰ τοῦτο ποιοίη, εὖ ἔπρᾶττεν, *if he (ever) did this, he succeeded,*

[1] Sc. χεῖρας.

462. Vocabulary.

αἱρέω (*αἱρε-, ἑλ-*), **αἱρήσω**, 2d aor. **εἷλον, ἥρηκα, ἥρημαι, ἡρέθην**, *take, capture;* mid., *take for oneself, choose.*

ὁμολογέω, *say the same thing, agree, admit.*

στρατεύομαι, *serve in the army, make an expedition, march.*

τελευτάω, *end, finish, die.*

ψεύδω, commonly **ψεύδομαι, ψεύσομαι, ἐψευσάμην, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην**, *lie, speak falsely, deceive.*

φανερός, -ά, -όν, *visible, plain, evident.*

πλήν, prep. with gen., *except.*

δή, postpositive, *now, truly, surely.*

ἄλλως, adv., *otherwise, rashly;* **ἄλλως τε καί**, *and especially.*

ὡς, adv., *as, as if, how;* as a conj., it may be used with almost the force of **ὅτε**, *when*, **ὅτι**, *that*, **ἵνα**, *in order that*, or **ὥστε**, *so that.* Cf. Lat. *ut.*

463. TRANSLATE: —

The Character of Cyrus.

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν τῶν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν[1] ἀρχαῖον[1] ἀξιώτατος ἄρχειν, ὡς ὑπὸ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἀεὶ ἐδείκνυτο ὅτι εἴ τινι σπείσαιτο ἢ εἴ τινι ὑπόσχοιτό[2] τι, οὔποτε ἐψεύδετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὖν Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμει, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἵλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μιλήτου. εἶτα δὲ φανερὸς ἦν καὶ εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος. οὐδεὶς μὲν δὴ ἂν εἴποι ὅτι τοὺς κλέψαντάς τι ἢ ἄλλως ἀδικοῦντας εἶᾱ καταγελᾶν, ἀλλὰ δεινότατα πάντων ἐτῑμωρεῖτο. ὥστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω οὐδένα κρίνω οὔπω μᾶλλον πεφιλῆσθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων.

464. TRANSLATE: When Proxenus had been introduced to Cyrus, he asked him if he wished the army to be secretly supported in Thessaly. And Cyrus, having

[1] *The elder.*

[2] 2d aor. of *ὑπισχνέομαι.*

stood for a long time in[1] silence,[1] replied, "Yes, by Zeus, if I ever make an expedition against my brother, I do not wish him to suspect it and prepare himself."

CHAPTER XXVIII.

VERBS IN -μι (SECOND AORIST SYSTEM). — RELATIVE CLAUSES. — ἵημι.

465. The tense stem of the second aorist of *-μι* verbs is the same as the theme. The vowel of the theme is lengthened in the indicative active of *ἵστημι* and *δείκνῡμι*; *e.g.* *ἵστημι* (theme *στα-*), 2d aor. stem *στα-*, 2d aor. ind. act. *ἔστην*. The inflection is much like that of the present system; *e.g.* *ἐτίθετον, ἔθετον*; *τιθῶ, θῶ*; *τιθείην, θείην*, etc.

466. The singular of the second aorist indicative active of *τίθημι* and *δίδωμι*, the second aorist middle of *ἵστημι*, and the entire second aorist of *δείκνυμι*, are lacking. In the paradigms *ἔδῡν*, *entered*, is given to illustrate the second aorist of themes in *ν*.

467. Learn the second aorist system of *-μι* verbs from the paradigms (**547** and **549**).

SUGGESTION.

468. Observe that: —

a. *στῆθι* and *δῦθι* have the original active imv. ending *-θι*, but *θές* and *δός* are formed by adding *ς* to the theme (see **451**).

[1] *σῑγῇ*.

b. In the imv. mid., the original ending -σο drops σ and contracts with the vowel of the theme, θοῦ and δοῦ arising from θέσο and δόσο respectively.

469. Some verbs in -ω form second aorists without the thematic vowel, which are inflected like those of -μι verbs. The most common of these are βαίνω (theme βα-), 2d aor. ἔβην, *went*, and γιγνώσκω (theme γνο-), 2d aor. ἔγνων, *knew*.

470. **Vocabulary.**

δύω or **δύνω**, **δύσω**, **ἔδῡσα**, 2d aor. **ἔδῡν**, *enter*, *set*; **ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι**, *at sunset*.

ἐκβαίνω, *go out* or *forth*, *disembark*.

ὠνέομαι, **ὠνήσομαι**, 2d aor. **ἐπριάμην**, pf. **ἐώνημαι**, *buy*.

ἦ, *in truth*; **ἦ μήν** (often in oaths), *in very truth*.

471. TRANSLATE: —

The Satrap's Offer.

πρῶτον μὲν οὖν Κύρου τελευτήσαντος ὁ σατράπης ἔλεξε τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὅτι αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾱς φανερὰ ὁδὸς οὐδεμία εἴη. ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται κωλύειν αὐτοὺς τοῦ ἐκβῆναι, ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι συνεκάλεσε καὶ στὰς πολὺν χρόνον σῑγῇ[1] εἶπεν ὧδε· "ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμῖν ὁδὸν δείξω, ὑμᾶς δ' αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει ὀμόσαι ἦ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὡς διὰ φιλίᾱς χώρᾱς λαμβάνοντας τὰ σῖτα ἐὰν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν· ἀλλ' ἐὰν παρέχωμεν, ὠνουμένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια." ταῦτα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἔδοξε καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν.

RELATIVE CLAUSES.

472. Relative clauses (*i.e.* those containing a relative pronoun or a relative adverb or conjunction), which have

[1] See p. 164, foot-note.

definite antecedents, expressed or implied, offer no special difficulties, the verb being in the indicative or in any form which the thought demands; *e.g.* *ταῦτα ἃ νῦν δεῖ ποιήσωμεν, let us do these things, which are at present necessary; ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δᾶρεῖος, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε παρεῖναι, and when Darius was sick, he wished his two sons to be present.*

473. Relative clauses which have **indefinite antecedents** (*i.e.* which refer to *any* person, thing, or occasion) closely resemble the "if" clause of a conditional sentence, and clauses with *εἰ* can usually be substituted for them. The negative for these **conditional relative** clauses is *μή*.

474. There are four classes of conditional relative sentences: —

I. Those which refer to a single occasion in the present or past. These correspond to **simple present or past conditions** (see **297**); *e.g.* *συμφέρουσιν ἃ ἕκαστος δύναται,*[1] *they are contributing what they severally can; συνέφερον ἃ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, they were contributing what they severally could.*

II. Those which refer to any of a number of possible occasions in the present or past. These correspond to the **general conditions (460–461)**; *e.g.* *οἵτινες ἂν*[2] *σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς θαρροῦντες ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους οἱ ἐνάντιοι οὐ δέχονται, whoever with the gods on their side go boldly against the enemy, these their adversaries do not withstand; ὅτῳ δὲ φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ δῆλος ἦν ἐπι-*

[1] This sentence, like all cond. rel. sentences, could be expressed in this form: *εἴ τις δύναταί τι, συμφέρει, if any one is able (to contribute) anything, he is contributing it.*

[2] See **475.**

βουλεύων, and to whomsoever he declared that he was a friend, against him he was clearly plotting; ἐπειδὰν[1] *οἱ πολέμιοι ἀκούωσι τοὺς ὁπλίτας ἐρχομένους, φεύγουσιν, whenever the enemy hear that the hoplites are coming, they flee;* *ὁπότε οἶνον πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, τοῖς φίλοις ἔπεμπεν, whenever he received (any) very sweet wine, he sent it to his friends.*

III. Those which refer to an occasion, present or past, that does not or did not exist.[2] These correspond to **conditions contrary to fact (388)**; *e.g.* *οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἐπεχειροῦμεν πράττειν ἃ μὴ ἠπιστάμεθα, for we should not (in that case) be attempting to do what we did not understand.*

IV. Those which refer to an occasion in the future. These correspond to the **more vivid future** and the **less vivid future conditions (298** and **343)**; *e.g.* *τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι, I will obey the man whom you choose;* *ᾧτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἕλληνι οἱ ἱππεῖς, ἀποκτείνοιεν ἄν, whatever Greek the horsemen should come upon, they would kill;* *ἐπὴν εἰς Σάρδεις ἥκωσι, δᾶρεικοὺς δύο αὐτοῖς δώσει, when they come to Sardis, he will give them two darics;* *ὅπου μὴ εἴη πρίασθαι, ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἂν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, (in cases) where it should not be possible to purchase, they would take provisions from the country.*

475. Observe that in II. and IV. above, when the verb of the relative clause is in the subjunctive, ἄν is appended to the relative word which introduces it, just as it is appended to εἰ in ἐάν with the subjunctive (**298** and **460**): thus, ὅς, ὅστις, ὅτε, ὁπότε, ὅπου, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, become ὃς ἄν, ὅστις ἄν, ὅτᾱν, ὁπότᾱν, ὅπου ἄν, ἐπήν (or ἐπάν), ἐπειδάν.

---

[1] See **475.**

[2] Sentences of this form are very rare, and are mentioned here only for the sake of uniformity with conditional sentences. Some teachers may prefer to omit them.

476. Vocabulary.

ἀπέρχομαι (ἐρχ-, ἐλυθ-), -ελεύσομαι,[1] 2d aor. -ῆλθον, 2d pf. -ελήλυθα, *come away, depart, desert.*

διατίθημι, *arrange, dispose.*

ὁπότε, relative adv., *at the time when, when.*

477. TRANSLATE: —

Many desert to Cyrus.

ὅστις δ' ἀφικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς Κῦρον πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ πολλοὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπῆλθον παρεσκευασμένοι στρατεύεσθαι σὺν αὐτῷ· ἔπεισε γὰρ αὐτοὺς λέγων ὧδε· "πάντες ἄνθρωποι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὁμολογοῦσιν ἐμὲ τῶν νῦν ἱκανώτατον εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν ἂν βούλωμαι· ἢν οὖν ἐγὼ νικήσω, δεῖ ἐμὲ πᾶσαν τὴν χώρᾱν τοῦ βασιλέως τοῖς φίλοις μου δοῦναι. ὥστε δὴ οὐ δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ[2] ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων. καὶ πείσομαι[3] μὲν σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ, ὁπότᾱν δὲ ἀπιέναι ὑμῶν τις βούληται, οὐ κωλύσω αὐτόν. ὅσοι δ' ἂν ἀγαθοὶ γένωνται τῑμήσω ἄλλως τε καὶ[4] δώσω πέντε μνᾶς ἑκάστῳ ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκητε."

478. TRANSLATE: The general, hearing the uproar of the soldiers, halted his chariot before the army and said: "We have been deceived and betrayed by the satrap, since he wishes to destroy us. You know that I am not responsible for this, but if you do not wish to obey me, I will obey whomever you choose as leader."

---

[1] In Attic the present of εἶμι is regularly used instead of this future (ἐλεύσομαι) of ἔρχομαι.

[2] Delib. subjv. in indir. question.

[3] Fut. of πάσχω.

[4] See **462.**

ἵημι.

479. Learn the inflection (**551**) of *ἵημι* (theme *ἑ-*), *send, throw;* mid. *throw oneself, rush.*

Suggestions.

480. Observe that: —

a. *ἵημι* is inflected like *τίθημι*, but the theme is *ἑ-*, not *θε-*.

b. The pres. stem is formed by reduplicating with *ἱ-*, as in *ἵστημι*.

c. In the 3d plur. of the pres. indic. act., *ἱέᾱσι* contracts to *ἱᾶσι*.

481. Note. — This verb cannot be too thoroughly learned. It is very common, especially in compounds, and its forms are continually mistaken by pupils for those of *εἶμι* and *εἰμί*. The rough breathing, and in compounds the aspiration of the last consonant of the preposition will help to prevent this confusion. As an exercise, let the pupil locate the following forms: *ἰέναι, ἰέναι, εἶναι, εἶναι, ὦ, ὦ, ἴοι, ἰείην, εἴη, εἴη, ἀπιέναι, ἀφιέναι, ἀφεῖναι, ἀπεῖναι, δῐ̈έναι, μεθεῖναι, μετεῖναι.*

482. **Vocabulary.**

ἁλίσκομαι (ἁλ-, ἁλο-), **ἁλώσομαι**, 2d aor. **ἑάλων** or **ἥλων**, pf. **ἑάλωκα** or **ἥλωκα**, used as passive of *αἱρέω*, *be taken* or *captured.*

ἀφίημι, *send away, let go, set free.*

τάξις, *-εως*, *arrangement, order, line of battle;* *εἰς τάξιν*, *in line of battle.*

ἵημι (*ἑ-*), **ἥσω**, **ἧκα**, **εἷκα**, **εἷμαι**, **εἵθην**, *send, throw, strike;* mid., *send* or *throw oneself, rush.*

παρακαλέω, *call to one's side, summon, exhort, urge.*

ἐκεῖ, *there.*

ἐνταῦθα, *here, there; hereupon, thereupon.*

483. Translate: *α.* *Κῦρος ὑπώπτευε βασιλέᾱ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ τῆς σκηνῆς ἵετο ὅπως τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἀναστήσειε. οὗτοι δ' ἐπεὶ συνῆλθον, συνεβουλεύσαντο καὶ φυλακὰς οἵᾱς ἐδύναντο κατέστησαν.*

b. ἔνθα μὲν δὴ στρατηγός τις παρεκάλεσε βασιλέᾱ ἀφῑέναι τοὺς ἐᾱλωκότας, ἄλλος δὲ ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὐκ ἄξιον εἴη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους καὶ οὐ τῑμωρεῖσθαι.

484. TRANSLATE: The enemy, standing under arms in line of battle, began to strike the hoplites with stones. Thereupon the Greeks, except those[1] who[1] understood[1] how to use the sling, rushed in[2] flight[2] into the glen, where it was not possible to find them.

CHAPTER XXIX.

SUMMARY AND CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.

485. This chapter is intended to afford a survey of the verb as a whole, and an opportunity to review and systematize what has been given already. Sections **486** and **487** should be learned entire, and in **488** the distinguishing features of the eight classes of verbs should be mastered. The sub-classes should be recognized, but need not be committed to memory. The lists of verbs under the various classes are not to be learned all at once; but from this point on the pupils should be required to learn each day the principal parts of a few of the most important verbs, which they should look up in the vocabulary and locate in the classification by means of the class number placed in the vocabulary after each verb. Hereafter, all new verbs should be looked up in the lists, and by the time the book is completed, the pupils should be able to classify all the verbs that occur, and give the principal parts of the more important.

486. *a.* The inflection of the Greek verb has now been presented in full, both for verbs in **-ω** and for those in

[1] Use ὅσοι with the indicative.

[2] Transl., *fleeing*.

-μι. The development has been by tense-systems, as follows: —

Theme λυ-	*Theme* λιπ-
Present stem, λῡ%-	Second Aorist stem, λιπ%-
Future " λῡσ%-	" Perfect " λελοιπα-
Aorist " λῦσα-	*Theme* στελ-
Perfect " λελυκα-	Second Aorist Passive stem, σταλε-(η-)
Perfect Middle[1] " λελυ-	*Theme* στα-
Aorist Passive[1] " λυθε-(η-)	Present stem, ἱστα-
	Second Aorist " στα-(η-)

b. The formation of the future and aorist stems of liquid verbs also has been explained (**293–294**); *e.g.* ἀγγέλλω (ἀγγελ-), fut. stem ἀγγελε%- (with contraction), aor. stem ἀγγειλα-.

c. The changes of mute stems in the perfect and pluperfect middle and passive (**353–355**), and in the aorist passive (**379**) have also been shown.

487. The **principal parts** of a Greek verb consist of one form (the first person singular indicative) from each of the tense systems; *i.e.* present, future, aorist, perfect, perfect middle, aorist passive. If any second tenses occur, they are also given. In the case of deponent verbs (**137**), the middle or passive form is given. Thus the principal parts of **λῡ́ω** are λύω, λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην; of **λείπω**, λείπω, λείψω, 2d aor. ἔλιπον, 2d. pf. λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην; of **γίγνομαι**, γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, 2d. aor. ἐγενόμην, 2d pf. γέγονα, γεγένημαι.

[1] The stems of the fut. pf., λελῡσ%-, and the fut. pass., λυθησ%-, are so closely related to those of the pf. mid. and aor. pass. respectively, that they are treated as parts of the pf. mid. and 1st pass. systems, and are therefore not given in this list.

488. In general, the formation of the various tense-stems from the theme[1] is simple and easily understood, but the present stem is formed in several different ways, according to which verbs are divided into eight classes, as follows: —

I. **Thematic Vowel Class.** — The present stem is formed by the addition of the thematic vowel to the theme.

This class is the most numerous of all. It is subdivided as follows: —

1. **Vowel themes.**

a. Verbs which retain a short vowel, and take σ in the perfect middle and aorist passive; *e.g.* —

τελε-, *complete*, τελέω, τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην.

So[2] αἰδέομαι, *feel shame*; (κατᾰ)γελάω, *laugh at*.

b. Verbs which lengthen α to ᾱ, except in the present; *e.g.* —

ἑα-, *allow*, ἐάω, ἐασω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱμαι, εἰάθην.

So αἰτιάομαι,[2] *blame*; πειράομαι, *try*.

c. Verbs which lengthen the final vowel of the theme, α and ε to η, ο to ω, except in the present; *e.g.* —

τῑμα-, *honor*, τῑμάω, τῑμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τετίμηκα, τετίμημαι, ἐτῑμήθην.

So (ἐξ)απατάω, *deceive*; ἀριστάω, *breakfast*; βοάω, *shout*; ἐρωτάω,[3] *ask*; ζάω, *live*; ἡττάομαι, *be inferior*; κτάομαι, *acquire*; νῑκάω, *conquer*; ὁρμάω, *set in motion*; σφενδονάω, *sling*; τελευτάω, *end*; τολμάω, *dare*; χράομαι, *use*.

---

[1] It is a mistake to regard the first person of the present indicative active as in any sense the fundamental form of an inflectional structure. The basis is the theme, and it is therefore of great importance to learn the theme of each verb at the outset.

[2] It is not to be understood that the verbs in this and the following lists conform to the model in all respects, but merely that they resemble it in the main. The principal parts of each verb, except where they are obvious, are given in the vocabulary. Deponents do not, as a rule, have active forms, and many verbs lack some of the parts. [3] See vocabulary.

φιλε-, *love*, **φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, πεφίληκα, πεφίλημαι, ἐφιλήθην.**

So ἀδικέω, *be unjust*; αἰτέω, *demand*; ἀπορέω, *be in difficulty*; ἀσθενέω, *be sick*; δειπνέω, *dine*; ἐπιθῡμέω, *desire*; ἐπιμελέομαι, *care for*; ἐπιχειρέω, *attempt*; ἡγέομαι, *lead*; θαρρέω, *be courageous*; κρατέω, *conquer*; (ἐν)νοέω, *consider*; οἰκέω, *dwell*; ὁμολογέω, *agree*; ποιέω, *make*; πολεμέω, *make war*; πολιορκέω, *besiege*; τῑμωρέω, *avenge*; φοβέω, *frighten*; φρονέω, *be intelligent*; (ἀπο)χωρέω, *retire*; ὠφελέω, *help*.

δηλο-, *make evident*, **δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην.**

So ἀξιόω, *deem worthy*.

d. Verbs which have a long vowel or diphthong throughout; *e.g.*—

βουλευ-, *advise*, **βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα, βεβούλευκα, βεβούλευμαι, ἐβουλήθην.**

So ἀκούω, *hear*; βασιλεύω, *reign*; κελεύω, *order*; κινδῡνεύω, *incur danger*; κωλῡ́ω, *prevent*; παίω, *strike*; παύω, *cause to cease*; πιστεύω, *trust*; πορεύω, *convey*; στρατεύομαι, *make an expedition*; τοξεύω, *shoot*; ὑποπτεύω, *suspect*.

e. Verbs in which the quantity of the theme vowel varies; *e.g.*—

λυ-, *loose*, **λύω, λῡ́σω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην.**

So δῡ́ω, *enter*; θῡ́ω, *sacrifice*.

καλε-, κλε-, *call*, **καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην.**

2. Consonant themes.

a. **ἀγ-**, *lead*, **ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον,**[1] **ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην.**

So ἄρχω, *rule*; γράφω, *write*; δέχομαι, *receive*; ἕπομαι, *follow*; ἔχω,[2] *have*; (συλ)λέγω, *collect*; λέγω, *say*; πέμπω, *send*; σπένδω, *pour a libation*; στρέφω, *turn*; τρέπω, *turn*; τρέφω, *nourish*; (δια)τρῑ́βω, *waste*.

b. Verbs which reduplicate in the present; *e.g.* —

γεν-, *become*, **γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι.**

So πῑ́πτω,[2] *fall*.

c. Assuming **ε** in the present; *e.g.* —

δοκ-, *seem*, **δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην.**

---

[1] Formed by reduplication of the theme. So εἶπον for ἐ*ϝ*ε*ϝ*επον.

[2] See vocabulary.

d. Verbs which assume ε[1] in other tenses than the present; *e.g.*—

βουλ-, *wish*, **βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην.**

So **δέομαι**, *need* (**δεῖ**, *it is necessary*); **ἐθέλω**, *wish*; **μάχομαι**, *fight*; **μέλλω**, *be about to*; **μέλει**, *it is a care*; **μένω**, *remain*; **οἴομαι**, *think*; **οἴχομαι**, *be gone.*

II. **Strengthened Vowel Class.**—The theme is strengthened in the present and other tense-stems.

This class is small, but contains a few common verbs.

λιπ-, *leave*, **λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην.**

So **δέδοικα**, *fear*; **ἔοικα**, *be like*; **οἶδα**, *know*; **πείθω**, *persuade*; **φεύγω**, *flee.*

πλεF-, *sail*, **πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι.**

So **θέω**, *run*; **ῥέω**, *flow.*

III. **Tau Class.**—**τ** is added to the theme in forming the present stem.

Here the theme always ends in a labial (**π**, **β**, **φ**). The verbs of this class are not numerous, but are most of them common.

βλαβ-, *harm*, **βλάπτω, βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην.**

So **θάπτω**, *bury*; **κλέπτω**, *steal*; **κρύπτω**, *conceal*; **σκέπτομαι**,[2] *look at.*

IV. **Iota Class.**—**ι** is added to the theme in forming the present stem.

This class is large, and includes many common verbs. It presents various peculiarities, according to which it may be subdivided as follows:—

a. Verbs with palatal themes, **ττ**%- taking the place of **κι**%-, **γι**%-, **χι**%-; *e.g.*—

ταγ-, *arrange*, **τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην.**

So **(ἀπ)αλλάττω**, *alter*; **πρᾶττω**, *do*; **φυλάττω**, *guard.*

---

[1] This is generally lengthened to **η**, but see **μάχομαι** in vocabulary.

[2] For the pres. and impf. the stem **σκοπε-** is generally used.

b. Verbs with themes in δ-, ζ%- taking the place of δι%-; *e.g.*—

ἁρπαδ-, *seize*, **ἁρπάζω, ἁρπάσω, ἥρπασα, ἥρπακα, ἥρπασμαι, ἡρπάσθην.**

So **ἀθροίζω**, *assemble*; **ἀναγκάζω**, *compel*; **ἀτῑμάζω**, *dishonor*; **αὐλίζομαι**, *bivouac*; **θαυμάζω**, *wonder*; **νομίζω**, *think*; **πιέζω**, *pinch*; **πορίζω**, *furnish*; **(παρα)σκευάζω**, *prepare*; **σῴζω**, *save*.

c. Verbs with liquid themes. Here the ι may be assimilated to the liquid, or by transposition may appear in the principal syllable; *e.g.*—

ἀγγελ-, *announce*, **ἀγγέλλω** (for ἀγγελιω), **ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἤγγελκα, ἤγγελμαι, ἠγγέλθην.**

So **βάλλω**, *throw*; **στέλλω**, *dispatch*.

φαν-, *show*, **φαίνω** (for φανιω), **φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην.**

So **(ἀπο)κτείνω**, *kill*; **περαίνω**, *accomplish*; **σημαίνω**, *give a signal*; **χαλεπαίνω**, *be angry*.

κριν-, *judge*, **κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην.**

So **αἰσχῡ́νω**, *disgrace*.

d. Verbs with themes in F; *e.g.*—

καF-, *burn*, **καίω (κάω)**,[1] **καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην.**

V. **Nu Class.** — **ν** is added to the theme in forming the present stem.

a. **ἐλα-**, *drive*, **ἐλαύνω**,[2] **ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα**,[3] **ἐλήλαμαι**,[3] **ἠλάθην.**

So **βαίνω**[4] **(βα-)**, *go*; **τέμνω**, *cut*; **φθάνω**, *anticipate*.

b. If the addition of **ν** alone would make a harsh combination, **α** is inserted; *e.g.*—

αἰσθ-, *perceive*, **αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ἠσθόμην, ἤσθημαι.**

c. Some common verbs, beside adding **αν**, insert a nasal in the principal syllable; **ν** before a lingual, **μ** before a labial, **γ** before a palatal; *e.g.*—

λαβ-, *take*, **λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην.**

So **λανθάνω**, *be concealed*; **πυνθάνομαι**, *learn*; **τυγχάνω**, *happen*.

---

[1] **κᾰ́ω** is the usual form in Attic. It does not contract.

[2] Probably for **ἐλανυω**.

[3] See p. 161, foot-note 1.

[4] **βαίνω**, however, adds **ι**, like **φαίνω** (IV. *c*).

d. A few verbs add **νε**; *e.g.* —

ἱκ-, *arrive* (**ἀφ**)**ικνέομαι**, **-ἵξομαι**, **-ἵκόμην**, **-ἶγμαι**.

So (**ὑπ**)**ισχνέομαι**, *promise*.

e. A few add **νυ**. All these are **-μι** verbs; *e.g.* —

δεικ-, *show*, **δείκνῡμι**, **δείξω**, **ἔδειξα**, **δέδειχα**, **δέδειγμαι**, **ἐδείχθην**.

So (**ἀπ**)**όλλῡμι**, *destroy*; **ὄμνῡμι**, *swear*.

VI. **Inceptive Class.**[1] — **σκ** or **ισκ** is added to the theme in forming the present stem; *e.g.* —

a. **εὑρ-**, *find*, **εὑρίσκω**, **εὑρήσω**, **ηὗρον**, **ηὕρηκα**, **ηὕρημαι**, **ηὑρέθην**.

So **ἁλίσκομαι**,[2] *be taken*; **διδάσκω**, *teach*; **θνῄσκω**, *die*; **πάσχω**, *suffer*.

b. Some of these verbs reduplicate in forming the present stem; *e.g.* —

γνο-, *know*, **γιγνώσκω**, **γνώσομαι**, **ἔγνων**, **ἔγνωκα**, **ἔγνωσμαι**, **ἐγνώσθην**.

So **μιμνῄσκω**, *remind*; **τιτρώσκω**, *wound*.

VII. **Theme Class.** — The theme appears without change, except that some verbs of this class reduplicate in forming the present stem.

This class is composed of **-μι** verbs; *e.g.* —

a. **δυνα-**, *be able*, **δύναμαι**, **δυνήσομαι**, **δεδύνημαι**, **ἐδυνήθην**.

So **ἄγαμαι**, *admire*; **εἶμι**, *go*; **εἰμί**, *be*; **ἐπίσταμαι**, *know*; (**κάθ**)**ημαι**, *sit down*; **κεῖμαι**, *lie*; **φημί**, *say*; **χρή**, *it is necessary*.

b. **δο-**, *give*, **δίδωμι**, **δώσω**, **ἔδωκα**, **δέδωκα**, **δέδομαι**, **ἐδόθην**.

So **ἵημι**, *send*; **ἵστημι**, *set*; **πίμπλημι**, *fill*; **τίθημι**, *place*.

VIII. **Mixed Class.** — These verbs form their tenses from two or more entirely distinct themes, as in Latin *fero* (*fer*, *tul* or *tla*), *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*; *e.g.* —

---

[1] The meaning *become, get into any state*, from which the class takes its name, occurs in only a few verbs.

[2] See vocabulary. This verb is very irregular.

αἱρε-, ἑλ-, *take*, αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾕρηκα, ᾕρημαι, ᾑρέθην.
Fερ-, Fεπ-, *say*, (εἴρω),[1] ἐρῶ, εἶπον, εἴρηκα, εἴρημαι, ἐρρήθην.
ἐρχ-, ἐλυθ-, ἐλθ-, *come*, ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα.
ὁρα-, ὀπ-, Fιδ-, *see*, ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑώρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱμαι, ὤφθην.
τρεχ-, δραμ-, *run*, τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον, δεδράμηκα, δεδράμημαι.
φερ-, οἰ-, ἐνεκ-, *bear*, φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκα, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην.
ὠνε-, πρια-, *buy*, ὠνέομαι, ὠνήσομαι, ἐπριάμην, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην.

CHAPTER XXX.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON. — φημί, ῆμαι, κεῖμαι, AND οἶδα. — ἕως AND πρίν CLAUSES.

Irregular Comparison.

489. The following irregular comparisons are frequent: —

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
1. ἀγαθός, *good*	ἀμείνων	ἄριστος
	βελτίων	βέλτιστος
	κρείττων	κράτιστος
2. κακός, *bad*	κακίων	κάκιστος
	χείρων	χείριστος
	ἥττων, *weaker, inferior*	ἥκιστα (adv., *least*)[2]
3. καλός, *beautiful*	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
4. μέγας, *great*	μείζων	μέγιστος
5. μικρός, *small*	μικρότερος	μικρότατος
	ἐλάττων } *smaller, less;*	ἐλάχιστος
	μείων } pl., *fewer*	
6. πολύς, *much, many*	πλείων (πλέων)	πλεῖστος
7. ῥᾴδιος, *easy*	ῥᾴων	ῥᾷστος
8. ταχύς, *swift*	θάττων (for ταχίων[3])	τάχιστος

[1] The present is not used in Attic.

[2] The adj. is wanting in the sup., but the adv. is common.

[3] Cf. **488,** IV. *a.*

490. *a.* The adverbs from the adjectives in **489** are formed and compared according to **408–409**; *e.g.* καλῶς, κάλλῖον, κάλλιστα.

b. Sometimes, however, the accusative neuter, singular or plural, is used as the positive of the adverb; *e.g.* μέγα (or μεγάλως), μεῖζον, μέγιστα; πολύ or πολλά (not πολλῶς), πλεῖον, πλεῖστα.

491. **Vocabulary.**

χρή (VII. *a*[1]), impers., *there is need, it is necessary, one must.* Impf. (ἐ)χρῆν, infin. χρῆναι.

κεφαλή, *head.*

πρόθῡμος, πρόθῡμον (see **127** Note), *eager, zealous.*

ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible.*

492. Translate: —

Address to the Troops.

ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνης Κλέαρχον καὶ Πρόξενον καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς καταλαβὼν[2] ἀπέκτεινε,[2] Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς συγκαλέσᾱς[2] εἶπεν[2] ὧδε· "ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, κακὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα,[3] στρατηγοὺς γὰρ ἀπολωλέκαμεν καλλίστους τε καὶ ἀρίστους, καὶ ἡμεῖς ὀλίγοι ὄντες ἐν μέσῃ τῇ βασιλέως χώρᾳ κατειλημμένοι ἐσμέν· οὔποτε δὲ προδώσουσιν ἡμᾶς οἱ θεοί, οὐδ' ἐὰν ἔτι μὲν μείους γενώμεθα, ἔτι δὲ κάκῖον πράξωμεν. χρὴ οὖν προθύμους εἰς τὸν ἀγῶνα[4] ἰέναι, ὅπως ἀπέλθωμεν ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ῥᾷστον

[1] These numbers and letters, inserted after each verb in this and the following vocabularies, correspond to the classes and sub-classes in Chapter XXIX.

[2] Notice that when two actions are mentioned, one of which is antecedent to the other, the Greek commonly expresses the first by a past participle, but the English uses two verbs connected by a conjunction.

[3] Sc. ἐστί. Forms of εἰμί are often omitted.

[4] *contest.*

δὲ τοῦτ' ἔσται, ἐὰν τῶν ὑποζυγίων τὰ πλεῖστα ἀφῶμεν καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας καύσωμεν καὶ τὰς σκηνάς· ἄλλας δέ, οὐδὲν χείρονας τούτων, καὶ ὕστερον οἷόν τ' ἂν εἴη πρίασθαι, εἰ δέοι."

493. TRANSLATE: Thereupon the barbarians sallied[1] forth[1] from the stronghold and rushed[1] more quickly than any one would have thought[2] (possible) to our general's tent. There the guards, (though) they fought[3] manfully,[4] were all slain, and the tent was captured; but the leader of the barbarians was wounded in the head.[5]

φημί, ἧμαι, κεῖμαι, AND οἶδα.

494. φημί, *say*, stem φα- (cf. Lat. *fa-*) is formed in the same way as ἵστημι, but presents some irregularities.

495. Learn the inflection of φημί (**550**).

SUGGESTIONS.

496. Observe that: —

a. The pres. indic. is enclitic except in the 2d sing. (see **220** *c.*)

b. The 2d sing. impf., beside ἔφης, has ἔφησθα (cf. ἦσθα).

c. The 2d sing. imv. has the original active imv. ending, -θι.

497. The participle φάς does not occur in Attic prose, φάσκων, the participle of φάσκω, being used instead.

498. ἧμαι (ἡσ-), *sit*, and its compound κάθημαι, *sit down*, which is used in Attic instead of the simple form, occur in the present system only. They are inflected with the regular personal endings, but have no thematic

---

[1] Use 2d aor. partic. of ἐκβαίνω, and omit *and*. Cf. **492**, note 2.

[2] Impf. indic. of οἴομαι with ἄν.

[3] Circumst. partic., pres.

[4] ἀξίως λόγου.

[5] Acc. The active construction would be ἔτρωσε τὴν κεφαλὴν τῷ ἡγεμόνι. The acc. is retained in the passive, and *the leader* is said to be κεφαλὴν τρωθείς.

vowel, and the second person singular in the indicative and imperative does not contract. The accent is not recessive in the subjunctive, optative (except the first person), nor infinitive. Thus: —

Pres. Ind. *κάθημαι, κάθησαι, κάθηται*, etc. Impf. Ind. *ἐκαθήμην, ἐκάθησο*, etc., or *καθήμην, καθῆσο*, etc. Subj. *καθῶμαι*, etc. Opt. *καθοίμην, καθοῖο*, etc. Imv. *κάθησο*, etc. Inf. *καθῆσθαι*. Part. *καθήμενος*.

499. **κεῖμαι**, *lie, be placed*, is inflected in the present system like *κάθημαι*, but the accent is recessive. It is defective in most forms of the subjunctive and optative. The future, *κείσομαι*, is regular. Thus: —

Pres. Ind. *κεῖμαι, κεῖσαι, κεῖται*, etc. Impf. Ind. *ἐκείμην, ἔκεισο, ἔκειτο*, etc. Imv. *κεῖσο*, etc. Inf. *κεῖσθαι*. Part. *κείμενος*.

500. **οἶδα** (*ἰδ-* for *ϝιδ-*), *know*, is thus inflected: —

	Indic. 2d Pf.	Subjv. 2d Pf.	Opt. 2d Perfect.	Imv. 2d Pf.
Sing. 1	οἶδα	εἰδῶ	εἰδείην	
2	οἶσθα	εἰδῇς	εἰδείης	ἴσθι
3	οἶδε	εἰδῇ	εἰδείη	ἴστω
Dual 2	ἴστον	εἰδῆτον	εἰδεῖτον	ἴστον
3	ἴστον	εἰδῆτον	εἰδείτην	ἴστων
Plur. 1	ἴσμεν	εἰδῶμεν	εἰδεῖμεν, *εἰδείημεν*	
2	ἴστε	εἰδῆτε	εἰδεῖτε, *εἰδείητε*	ἴστε
3	ἴσᾶσι	εἰδῶσι	εἰδεῖεν, *εἰδείησαν*	ἴστων

2d Pf. Infin.	2d Pf. Partic.
εἰδέναι	εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός

	Second Pluperfect Indicative.				
Sing. 1	ᾔδειν, ᾔδη	Dual 2	ᾖστον	Plur. 1	ᾖσμεν
2	ᾔδεισθα, ᾔδησθα	3	ᾖστην	2	ᾖστε
3	ᾔδει, ᾔδειν			3	ᾖσαν, ᾔδεσαν

SUGGESTIONS.

501. Observe that: —

a. The theme is ἰδ-, strengthened to οἰδ- and εἰδ-.

b. The δ of the theme, in the forms that begin with ἰ, is modified to σ.

c. The 2d sing. of the imv. is the same as that of εἰμί.

502. **Vocabulary.**

δειπνέω (I., 1, *c*), *dine.*
ἐννοέω (I., 1, *c*), *have in mind, consider.*
ἔοικα (II.), theme ϝικ-, 2d pf. used as pres., *be like, seem.* **ὡς ἔοικε,** *as seems likely.*
συσκευάζω (IV. *b*), *pack up.*
κίνδῡνος, *danger.*
ὅρκος, *oath.*
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ (strengthened form of ὅς), *who, who in fact.*
ἔπειτα, adv., *then, next.*
περί, prep. with gen., *about, concerning;* with acc., *about, near.*
περὶ πλείστου ποιοῦμαι, *consider of the greatest importance.*

503. TRANSLATE: —

Address to the Troops (*continued*).

"ἐννοεῖτε δέ," ἔφη, "καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι εἰ μέγας ὁ κίνδῡνος,[1] τὸ κράτος τῶν θεῶν ἔτι μεῖζον,[1] οἳ σὺν ἡμῖν ἔσονται, ὡς ἔοικε, μᾶλλον ἢ σὺν Τισσαφέρνει· καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνος πάντων ἀνθρώπων κάκιστος,[1] ὅσπερ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὅρκους ἔλῡσεν. ἀλλὰ νῦν δεῖ εὐθὺς ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς καθιστάναι, καὶ ἔπειτα δειπνήσαντας συσκευάζεσθαι, ὅπως ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι ἀναπαυώμεθα." ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα πολλὰ λέγων παρεκάλει ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς, καὶ πάντας οὕτω διετίθει ὥστε περὶ πλείστου ἐποιοῦντο καὶ βελτίους γενέσθαι ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ γὰρ εὖ ᾔδεσαν ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ ἔλεγεν. ὁ δὲ λέγων παυσάμενος ἐκάθητο.

[1] See p. 178, foot-note 3.

Temporal Clauses with ἕως and πρίν.

504. Rule. — **When ἕως, ἔστε, μέχρι, ἄχρι, *as long as, until*,[1] refer to a definite time, the indicative is regularly used**; *e.g.* ἕως μένομεν, σκεπτέον ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, *as long as we remain, we must consider how we shall remain most safely*; ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι νὺξ ἐγένετο, *they did this until night came on.*

505. Rule. — **When ἕως, ἔστε, μέχρι, ἄχρι, refer to an indefinite time, they have the constructions of conditional relatives in general conditions, conditions contrary to fact, and future conditions** (**474** II., III., IV.); *e.g.* ἕως ἄν τις παρῇ, χρῶμαι, *as long as any one is with me, I make use of him*; ἀεὶ ἐμάχοντο ἕως ἢ νῑκῷεν ἢ ἀποθάνοιεν, *they always fought until they either conquered or fell*; οὐκ ἂν ἐπαυσάμην ἕστ' αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινα, *I should not have stopped until I had killed him*; μενοῦσιν μέχρι ἂν ἀφίκηται Κλέαρχος, *they will remain until Clearchus arrives*; ἡδέως ἀκούσαιμι ἂν ἕως πάντα ἀγγείλειε, *I would gladly listen until he should tell the whole story.*

506. Clauses introduced by πρίν, when the main clause is affirmative, take the infinitive; when the main clause is negative, they regularly take the constructions of ἕως clauses;[2] *e.g.* —

I. διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι, *they crossed before the others answered.*

II. *a.* οὐκ ἰέναι ἤθελε πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ ἔπεισε, *he was not willing to go, before his wife persuaded (him).*

---

[1] These conjunctions have two distinct meanings: 1. *during the time that, while, as long as*; 2. *up to the time that, until.*

[2] Since πρίν is then practically equivalent to ἕως; *e.g. I will not go before he comes* is the same as *I will not go until he comes.*

b. οὔποτε πολεμεῖν ἐτόλμων πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συλλάβοιεν, *they never dared to make war on us before they seized our generals;* οὐ τὰς σπονδὰς λύσει πρὶν ἂν Κύρῳ συμβουλεύσηται, *he will not break the truce before he consults with Cyrus.*

507. **Vocabulary.**

διαπράττω (IV. *a*), *accomplish.*
κεῖμαι (VII. *a*), *lie.* Used as pass. of *τίθημι, be placed, be situated.*
κύκλος, *circle;* **κύκλῳ**, *in a circle.*
ἄπορος,[1] **ἄπορον**, *impassable.*
δυνατός, *-ή, -όν, powerful; possible.*
κοινός, *-ή, -όν, common.*
ὁποῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, what sort of, what.*
ἀμφί, prep. with acc., *about;* **οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα**, *Xenophon and his men.*
ὥσπερ, *just as, as it were.*

508. TRANSLATE: —

Ariaeus's Message.

Κῦρος, ἕως ἀνέβαινεν ὡς βασιλεῖ μαχούμενος, ἐπορεύετο ὡς τάχιστα, ἔστε εἰς Κούναξαν ἀφίκετο· ἔνθα δὴ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπ' ἀδελφὸν ἰέμενος ἀπέθανε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος, ὃς καὶ πρόσθεν Κύρῳ φίλος ἐγένετο, ἀγγέλους πέμψᾱς πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἶπεν· "ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οἶμαί γ' ὑμᾶς ἀπορεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐμοί· ἢ μὴν γὰρ ὁρῶμεν τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώρᾱν πολεμίᾱν οὖσαν, καὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην εὖ ἴσμεν ἐπιθῡμοῦντας ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς. δεῖ οὖν συμβουλεύεσθαι, ἐάν πως κοινὴν σωτηρίᾱν εὑρίσκωμεν. καὶ ὑμεῖς, ἐὰν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορεύησθε, ἄπορον ἕξετε τὴν ὁδόν, ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ἡγήσομαι, εἰ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἕπεσθαι

[1] Formed from *πόρος, passage,* with the negative prefix **ἀ-**. This prefix, called **ἀ privative** because it indicates *deprivation*, is used to form adjectives from substantive, adjective, and verb stems. The original form is **ἀν-**, corresponding to Latin *in-*, English *un-*.

ἐθέλετε, δυνατὴν καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν, ἔστ' ἂν εἰς χώρᾱν ἀφίκησθε φιλίᾱν, οὐδὲ καταλείψω ὑμᾶς πρὶν ἂν ταῦτα διαπράξω. ἀλλὰ δεῖ εὐθὺς ἀποκρίνασθαι, πρὶν αἰσθέσθαι τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ὁποῖα ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν.

509. TRANSLATE: "Now[1] then,"[1] said Chirisophus, "let us march, trusting in the gods, until we overtake the king's army. And I think that they are not far[2] away, for the messengers brought back word that they had seen many fires in[3] the night.[3]" So[4] they marched and did not stop before they reached a certain village which was situated on[5] the Euphrates; and there the king was encamped.

CHAPTER XXXI.

TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS. — SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS.

510. The following table gives all the common prepositions with their more important uses. Those which have been given before should be reviewed, and the new uses should be learned.

Review first **199–201.**

---

[1] ἄγετε δή. [2] πολλῷ. [3] See **194.** [4] οὖν. [5] ἐπί with dat.

Prep.	with genitive: —	with dative: —	with accusative: —
ἀμφί	(chiefly poetic)	(poetic)	*about.*
ἀνά		(poetic)	*up along, up, through out.*
ἄνευ	*without.*		
ἀντί	*instead of.*		
ἀπό	*away from, from.*		
διά	*through;*		*on account of.*
εἰς			*into, against;* (with numbers) *up to, about.*
ἐκ, ἐξ	*out of, from.*		
ἐν		*in.*	
ἕνεκα	*for the sake of, on account of.*		
ἐπί	*upon, on; in the time of;*	*on; in the power of;*	*upon, to, against.*
κατά	*down from;*		*down along; against; according to.*
μετά	*with;*		*after.*
μέχρι	*up to, as far as, until.*		
παρά	*from the side of, from;*	*by the side of, near;*	*to the side of, to; contrary to.*
περί	*about, concerning;*	(chiefly poetic)	*about, near.*

Prep.	with genitive: —	with dative: —	with accusative: —
πλήν	*except.*		
πρό	*before* (of place and time); *in behalf of; in preference to.*		
πρός	*in front of; from* (of source);	*at; in addition to;*	*to; with regard to.*
σύν		*with.*	
ὑπέρ	*over; in behalf of;*		*over, beyond.*
ὑπό	*under; by* (of agency); *by reason of;*	*under;*	*under* (of motion).
ὡς			*to* (with persons); *about* (with numbers).

511. Vocabulary.

ἀποτέμνω (τεμ-, τμε-, V. *a*), **-τεμῶ, -έτεμον, -τέτμηκα, -τέτμημαι, -ε-τμήθην**, *cut off.*

ἐπιτίθημι (VII. *b*), *put upon;* mid., *fall upon, attack.*

θάπτω (ταφ- for θαφ-, III.), *θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην, bury.*

κτάομαι (I., 1, *c*), *acquire, get.*

δένδρον, *tree.*

καιρός, *fitting time, opportunity;* **ἐν καιρῷ**, *seasonably, opportunely.*

νεκρός, *corpse.*

ὀπισθοφύλαξ (ὄπισθεν + φύλαξ), *rear-guard.*

σκότος, **-ους**, τό, *darkness.*

πάνυ, adv., *very.*

οὕτως ἔχει,[1] *it is thus.*

512. Translate: 1. ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ ἔθαψαν τὸν νεκρόν, παρὰ τὸν νόμον ποιοῦντες· καὶ γὰρ οὕτως εἶχεν ὁ νόμος ἐπ᾽ ἐκείνου τοῦ βασιλέως, τοὺς νεκροὺς χρῆναι πυρὶ κάειν. 2. ἀπέθανεν ὁ Δεξίλεως πρὸ τῶν

[1] ἔχω with an adv. has the force of *εἰμί* with the corresponding adj.; **ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει**, *that's good.*

τειχέων, μαχόμενος κατὰ δύναμιν ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως. 3. ἄνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ὁδὸς διὰ σκότους ἐστίν. 4. ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις ὡς τάχιστα ἐπιθέμενοι, ἄνευ κινδύνου πάντα ταῦτα κτησόμεθα. 5. οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀπετμήθησαν τὰς κεφαλὰς[1] ὑπὸ βασιλέως. 6. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ οἱ ἀμφὶ Πρόξενον πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ παρόντες ἐτόλμων τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ἐπιθέσθαι· καὶ ἀπέκτειναν αὐτῶν ὡς χιλίους.

513. TRANSLATE: 1. On account of the present dangers I consider it of the greatest importance to obtain a larger force from the satrap. 2. And there many corpses lay in a circle around the wagon. 3. But this is not possible, Cyrus; for the oaths (sworn in the name) of the gods prevent us from going against the king.

SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

514. A conditional sentence is one that contains a *supposition*, and a *conclusion* dependent on the truth of the supposition.

515. The supposition is called the **protasis,**[2] and the conclusion the **apodosis,** of the sentence.

516. An apodosis, if negative, regularly takes **οὐ,** since it is a direct statement,[3] while a negative protasis, being a mere supposition, takes **μή** (see **121**).

---

[1] See **493,** note 5.

[2] Any dependent clause which naturally precedes its main clause in order of thought is properly called a protasis. See Goodwin, *Moods and Tenses*, 380.

[3] Of course if the apodosis is in the form of a prohibition, its negative is *μή*.

517. There are four classes of conditional sentences, which have already been explained, and are summarized in the following

TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Class.		Protasis.	Apodosis.
I. Simple Particular (**297**)		εἰ with pres. or past indic.	indic., or any appropriate form.
II. General	Present (**460**)	ἐάν (ἤν, ἄν) with subjv.	pres. indic.
	Past (**461**)	εἰ with opt.	impf. indic.
III. Contrary to Fact (**388**)		εἰ with secondary indic.	secondary indic. with ἄν.
IV. Future	Most Vivid (**351**)	εἰ with fut. indic.	fut. indic., or other fut. form.
	More Vivid (**298**)	ἐάν (ἤν, ἄν) with subj.	fut. indic., or other fut. form.
	Less Vivid (**342**)	εἰ with opt.	opt. with ἄν.

Note. — As shown in the table, ἄν stands in the apodosis of all contrary to fact sentences, and of all less vivid futures. It stands in all subjunctive protases; viz., those of present general suppositions and of more vivid futures. It never stands in the protasis except when the verb is in the subjunctive.

518. Sometimes the parts of a conditional sentence do not exactly correspond, as when an apodosis in the less vivid form is joined to a protasis in the more vivid. Such **mixed constructions** will be easily understood when met with in reading; *e.g.* οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφῡραι ὦσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅπῃ φυγόντες σωθῶμεν, *for even if we find that there are many bridges, we should not have any place to which we can flee and be saved.*

519. An apodosis expressing customary action in the past sometimes has ἄν with the imperfect or aorist indica-

tive, in place of the usual simple imperfect; *e.g.* καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων διατρίβειν, ἔπαισεν ἄν, *and if any of the men appointed to this work seemed to him to be wasting time, he would strike him.*

520. **Vocabulary.**

πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-, V. *c*), **πεύσομαι**, **ἐπυθόμην**, **πέπυσμαι**, *learn by inquiry, inquire, learn, ascertain.*

ὑπάρχω (I., 2, *a*), *exist* (as something which may be relied on); *favor, support* (takes dat.).

αὐτοῦ, adv., *here, there.*

σχεδόν, *almost.* So also **σχεδόν τι.**

521. TRANSLATE: 1. εἰ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, πάντα τὰ δεινότατα παθόντες ἀποθανούμεθα. 2. οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώρᾱν κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ' αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ κωλύοι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς εὖ ποιῶν ὑπάρχῃ, καὶ τούτου εἰς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα εὖ ποιοῦντες. 3. ἐάν τινές ποτε καταληφθῶσιν αὐτοῦ, ἀποθνήσκουσιν. 4. ὅ τι δ' ἂν κελεύῃ ὁ Κλέαρχος, οἱ στρατιῶται ποιήσουσιν. 5. Κλέαρχος τοίνυν, εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλῡε τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει. 6. εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, οὔποτε ἐψεύδετο. 7. εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἤλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ. 8. οἶνον δὲ ὁπότε λάβοι πάνυ ἡδύν, τοῖς φίλοις ἐδίδου.

522. TRANSLATE: 1. If he ever learns that any (one) of the boys is getting money, he is much pleased. 2. If we had learned that the enemy were packing up, we should

have prevailed[1] on[1] Clearchus to[2] allow[2] us[2] to attack them. 3. Whoever fights zealously shall receive beautiful gifts, when we get[3] to Babylon. 4. If we should delay one[4] day[4] longer,[4] the roads would be nearly impassable, as it seems. 5. Whenever Proxenus and Xenophon dined, they sent (some) wine to Chirisophus.

Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse.

523. Rule. — **When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, the main clause follows the rules for simple sentences (417, 420, and 443); the dependent clauses, when quoted after primary tenses, retain the original mood; after secondary tenses, they may be changed to the optative,[5] or may retain the original mood for vividness;** *e.g.* —

(Direct) Κῦρος δὲ ταῦτα ποιεῖ ἵνα βασιλέᾱ καταλάβῃ,
Cyrus is doing this, in order to overtake the king;

(Indirect) ὁ δὲ λέγει ὅτι Κῦρος ταῦτα ποιεῖ ἵνα βασιλέᾱ καταλάβῃ,
and he says that Cyrus is doing this, in order to overtake the king;

ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Κῦρος ταῦτα { ποιοίη / ποιεῖ } ἵνα βασιλέᾱ { καταλάβοι / καταλάβῃ },
and he said that Cyrus was doing this, in order to overtake the king;

---

[1] Use mid. of διαπράττω, followed by παρά with the gen.
[2] δοθῆναι ἡμῖν. [3] *arrive.* [4] *yet a day.*
[5] Secondary tenses of the indicative in dependent clauses are not changed to the optative, as it might not be plain what original form the optative represented.

ὁ δ' ἔφη Κῦρον ταῦτα ποιεῖν ἵνα βασιλέᾱ { καταλάβοι / καταλάβῃ },

and he said that Cyrus was doing this, in order to overtake the king;

ὁ δ' ἤγγειλε Κῦρον ταῦτα ποιοῦντα ἵνα βασιλέᾱ { καταλάβοι / καταλάβῃ },

and he announced that Cyrus was doing this, in order to overtake the king.

524. RULE. — **ἄν occurring in the direct form is retained in the quoted form, except in the case of a protasis changed to the optative;** *e.g.* —

(Direct) πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιήσαιτε ἄν, εἰ οὕτως ποιήσαιτε,
you would be acting very seasonably, if you should act thus;

(Indirect) οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι, εἰ οὕτως ποιήσαιτε,
I think that you would be acting very seasonably, if you should act thus.

(Direct) αἱ σπονδαὶ ἅπᾶσιν ἔσονται μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγγελθῇ,
the truce will apply to all, until your answer is announced to the king;

(Indirect) οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι αἱ σπονδαὶ ἅπᾶσιν ἔσοιντο μέχρι βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν διαγγελθείη,
they answered that the truce would apply to all until our answer should be announced to the king.

525. TRANSLATE: —

Tissaphernes tries to bribe Clearchus.

ἔπεμψέ ποτε Τισσαφέρνης εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἄγγελον πιστόν, λέξοντα πρὸς Κλέαρχον ὅτι εἰ βούλοιτο φίλος

γενέσθαι τῷ βασιλεῖ, πολλὴν τιμὴν ἕξει παρὰ τῶν Περσῶν καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. ἀλλ' ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἄξιον νομίζων εἰ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καταλίποι, οὐκ ἔφη ταῦτα ποιήσειν, οὐδ' οἷόν τ' εἶναι, ὅστις τοὺς φίλους ἐξαπατήσειεν, ὑπ' ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων τιμᾶσθαι. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἄγγελος ὡς Τισσαφέρνην ἀπελθὼν ἀπήγγειλεν ὁποῖα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κλέαρχος. ὁ δὲ θαυμάσας "εἰ γάρ,"[1] ἔφη, "ἦσαν[1] ἐμοὶ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρες ἐοικότες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, ὅσπερ ὁρῶν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ καλά τε καὶ ἀγαθὰ ὄντα, αἱρεῖται σὺν τοῖς Ἕλλησι μένειν, ὡς[2] καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν Ἑλλάδι γεγονώς."[2]

526. TRANSLATE: When the satrap learned that Clearchus had refused[3] his[3] offer,[3] he said, "Would[1] that I had[1] a hundred such men!" And turning to Ariaeus, who happened to be present, he told him that he thought that many of the Persians would not have answered so worthily.[4] "And be[5] assured,"[5] said he, "that we shall never conquer the Greeks, as long as they remain thus faithful to one another."

CHAPTER XXXII.

REVIEW.

527. **Review of Vocabulary.**

1. ἀγών. 2. αἰσχρός. 3. αἴτιος. 4. ἁλίσκομαι. 5. ἄλλως τε καί. 6. ἀμφί. 7. ἀνίστημι. 8. ἀπαγγέλλω.

[1] See **394.** [2] *because he too was a native of Greece.*
[3] *did not wish what things he promised.* [4] καλῶς. [5] *know well.*

9. ἅπᾱς. 10. ἀπέρχομαι. 11. ἀπολείπω. 12. ἀπόλλῡμι. 13. ἄπορος. 14. ἀποτέμνω. 15. ἅρμα. 16. αὐτοῦ. 17. ἀφίημι. 18. ἄχθομαι. 19. ἄχρι. 20. δεῖ. 21. δείκνῡμι. 22. δειπνέω. 23. δένδρον. 24. δή. 25. διατίθημι. 26. δίδωμι. 27. δύναμαι. 28. δυνατός. 29. δύνω. 30. εἶπον. 31. ἐκβαίνω. 32. ἐκεῖ. 33. ἐκπίπτω. 34. ἐμβάλλω. 35. ἕνεκα. 36. ἐννοέω. 37. ἐντυγχάνω. 38. ἐξελαύνω. 39. ἔξεστι. 40. ἔοικα. 41. ἐπειδή. 42. ἔπειτα. 43. ἐπίσταμαι. 44. ἐπιτίθημι. 45. ἐπιχειρέω. 46. ἔστε. 47. ἐφέπομαι. 48. ἐχθρός. 49. ἕως. 50. ἦ. 51. θάπτω. 52. θαρρέω. 53. θνῄσκω. 54. ἵημι. 55. ἵστημι. 56. κάθημαι. 57. καθίστημι. 58. καίπερ. 59. καιρός. 60. κατακαίνω. 61. κεῖμαι. 62. κεφαλή. 63. κίνδῡνος. 64. κλέπτω. 65. κοινός. 66. κτάομαι. 67. κύκλος. 68. λανθάνω. 69. μετά. 70. μέχρι. 71. νεκρός. 72. νέος. 73. οἶδα. 74. ὄμνῡμι. 75. ὁμολογέω. 76. ὀπισθοφύλαξ. 77. ὁποῖος. 78. ὁπότε. 79. ὅρκος. 80. ὁρμάω. 81. ὅσπερ. 82. οὔπω. 83. πάνυ. 84. παρακαλέω. 85. περί. 86. πλήν. 87. πότερον. 88. πότερος. 89. πρέσβυς. 90. πρίν. 91. προδίδωμι. 92. πρόθῡμος. 93. πρότερος. 94. πυνθάνομαι. 95. ῥᾴδιος. 96. σκότος. 97. στρατεύομαι. 98. συγκαλέω. 99. σχεδόν. 100. τάξις. 101. ταχύς. 102. τελευτάω. 103. τίθημι. 104. τῑμωρέω. 105. τυγχάνω. 106. ὑπάρχω. 107. ὑποπτεύω. 108. ὕστερος. 109. φανερός. 110. φημί. 111. φθάνω. 112. χρή. 113. ψεύδομαι. 114. ὠνέομαι. 115. ὡς. 116. ὥσπερ. 117. ὡς τάχιστα. 118. ὠφελέω.

528. Review the **paradigms** of the last seven chapters: —

a. *Comparison of Adjectives*, regular, **405–406**, irregular, **489**.

b. *Comparison of Adverbs*, regular, **408–409**, irregular, **490**.

c. *Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives*, **407.**
d. *Second Aorist System* (ἔλιπον), **429–431,**
" *Perfect* " (λέλοιπα), **432–433,**
" *Passive* " (ἐφάνην), **434–435.**
e. *-μι Verbs*, **448–453** and **465–468.**
f. ἵημι, **479–480.**
g. φημί, **494–497.**
h. ἧμαι, **498.**
i. κεῖμαι, **499.**
j. οἶδα, **500–501.**

529. Review the following **miscellaneous topics**: —
a. Principal Parts of a Verb, **487.**
b. Classification of the Verbs, **488.**
c. Tenses of ἵστημι, **455.**
d. Summary of Conditional Sentences, **514–519.**
e. Negative in Indirect Discourse, **423.**
f. Table of Prepositions, **510.**
g. Relative Clauses, **472–475.**

530. Review the **syntax** in the last seven chapters: —
a. *Genitive Case*, with comparatives, **411.**
b. *Dative Case*, degree of difference, **412.**
c. *Accusative Case*, absolute, **444.**
d. *Causal Clauses*, **439.**
e. *Supplementary Participle*, **440–442.**
f. *General Conditions*, **459–461.**
g. *Temporal Clauses*, with ἕως, etc., **504–505,**
with πρίν, **506.**
h. *Indirect Discourse*, ὅτι and finite moods, **417–418,**
infinitive, **419–420,**
participle, **443,**
complex sentences, **523–524.**
i. *Indirect Question*, **418.**

531. TRANSLATE AT SIGHT: —

The Philosopher and the Athenian Boy.

Σωκράτης.— *ἦ που, ὦ Λύσι, ἰσχῡρῶς φιλεῖ σε ὁ πατὴρ καὶ βούλοιτο ἄν σε ὡς εὐδαιμονέστατον εἶναι;*

Λύσις. — *πάνυ*[1] *γε.*[1]

Σ. — *ἐᾷ ἄρα σε ἃ βούλει ποιεῖν καὶ οὐδὲν κωλύει ποιεῖν ὧν ἂν ἐπιθῡμῇς;*

Λ. — *μὰ Δί' ἐμέ γε, ὦ Σώκρατες, καὶ μάλα γε πολλὰ κωλύει.*

Σ. — *πῶς λέγεις; βουλόμενός σε εὐδαίμονα εἶναι κωλύει τοῦτο ποιεῖν ὃ ἂν βούλῃ; καὶ ἢν ἐπιθῡμήσῃς ἐπί*[2] *τινος τῶν τοῦ πατρὸς ἁρμάτων ὀχεῖσθαι*[2] *λαβὼν τὰς ἡνίᾱς,*[3] *ὅτᾱν ἁμιλλᾶται,*[4] *οὐκ ἄν σε ἐᾷ;*

Λ. — *μὰ Δί' οὐ μέντοι ἂν ἐᾷ. ἀλλ' ἔστι τις ἡνίοχος*[5] *παρὰ τοῦ πατρὸς μισθὸν φέρων.*

Σ. — *πῶς λέγεις; μισθωτῷ*[6] *μᾶλλον ἐπιτρέπει*[7] *ἢ σοι ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν βούληται περὶ τοὺς ἵππους; καί μοι ἔτι τόδε εἰπέ.*[8] *σὲ αὐτὸν ἐᾷ ἄρχειν σεαυτοῦ ἢ οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐπιτρέπει σοι;*

Λ. — *ἄρχει μου ὁ παιδαγωγός.*[9]

Σ. — *ἦ δεινόν ἐστιν ἐλεύθερον*[10] *ὄντα ὑπὸ δούλου*[11] *ἄρχεσθαι. τί δὲ ποιῶν αὖ οὗτος ὁ παιδαγωγός σου ἄρχει;*

Λ. — *ἄγων δὴ εἰς διδασκάλου*[12] *οἰκίᾱν.*

---

[1] *certainly.* [2] *drive.* [3] *reins.* [4] *engages in a contest.*
[5] *charioteer* (from *ἡνιᾶ* + *ἔχω*). [6] *hireling.* [7] *entrusts.*
[8] 2d aor. imv. Oxytone, to distinguish from *εἶπε*.
[9] *tutor* (*i.e.* a slave who accompanied a boy to school, *παῖς* + *ἄγω*).
[10] *freeman.* [11] *slave.* [12] *teacher.*

Σ. — μῶν[1] μὴ καὶ οὗτοί σου ἄρχουσιν, οἱ διδάσκαλοι;

Λ. — μάλιστα.

Σ. — πολλοὺς μὲν ἄρα σοι ἄρχοντας ἑκὼν ὁ πατὴρ καθίστησι. σὺ δὲ ἄρχεις οὐδενός, ὦ Λύσι, οὐδὲ ποιεῖς οὐδὲν ὧν ἐπιθῡμεῖς.

Λ. — οὐ γὰρ ἡλικίᾱν[2] ἔχω, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Σ. — ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως ἔστιν ἃ ἐπιτρέπει σοι ὁ πατὴρ καὶ οὐ μένει ἕως ἂν ἡλικίᾱν ἔχῃς· ὅτᾱν γὰρ βούληται αὐτῷ ἀναγνωσθῆναι[3] ἢ γραφῆναι σὲ[4] πρῶτον τῶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐπὶ τοῦτο τάττει.[5]

Λ. — ὅτι ταῦτα μὲν ἐπίσταμαι, ἐκεῖνα δ᾽ οὔ.

Σ. — εἶεν,[6] ὦ ἄριστε. οὐκ ἄρα τὴν ἡλικίᾱν σου μένει[7] ὁ πατὴρ ἐπιτρέπειν πάντα, ἀλλ᾽ ᾗ ἂν ἡμέρᾳ ἡγήσηταί σε βέλτιον αὑτοῦ φρονεῖν, ταύτῃ ἐπιτρέψει σοι καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ τὰ αὑτοῦ.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS, CHAPTER I.

532. **The Story of the Anabasis.**

Cyrus the Younger, the second son of Darius *Nothus*, king of Persia, was a young man of great bravery, administrative ability, and ambition. When only seventeen, he was appointed by his father satrap of Lydia, Greater Phrygia, and Cappadocia. At that time, a strong enmity was

---

[1] *i.e.* μή + οὖν, μή showing that a negative answer is expected, like the Lat. *num.*

[2] *sufficient age.* [3] *to have some one read aloud.* [4] See **192.**

[5] *designates.* [6] *well said!* [7] transitive; *is waiting for.*

felt by the Persians toward the Athenians, who were engaged in the Peloponnesian War. Cyrus had been directed by his father to assist the Lacedaemonians in every way possible. Since he was already planning the overthrow of his elder brother, Artaxerxes, when Darius should die, he carried out these instructions with extreme vigor, in order that he might win over the Lacedaemonians to his cause. Six years later, in 401 B.C., when his brother had succeeded to the throne, Cyrus put his plans into execution.

The first book of the Anabasis describes the way in which Cyrus levied his Greek army of thirteen thousand. The army was afterward reduced to the memorable "ten thousand," among whom was Xenophon, the historian of the expedition. He relates in this book the incidents of the march from Sardis to Cunaxa. At Cunaxa the decisive battle took place. In this fight, the vast army of King Artaxerxes was put to flight, but Cyrus was slain through his own rashness, and thus the object of the expedition was defeated. The Greeks were compelled to return, and the next three books of the Anabasis, which are really the *Catabasis*, deal with the march of the Greeks northward to the Euxine. The fifth, sixth, and seventh books recount the return of the Greeks by sea to Byzantium and their subsequent adventures.

533. Hostility of Artaxerxes and Cyrus.[1]

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται[2] παῖδες[3] δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δᾱρεῖος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν[4] ἐτύγχανε·[4] Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε,[5] καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστω-

---

[1] Look up, in the general vocabulary at the back of the book, all new words occurring in these exercises.

[2] A pres. vividly representing the past; *i.e. historical present.*

[3] A plur., as here, often denotes two persons or objects, but cf. *παῖδε* below.

[4] *happened to be present* (i.e. *at the court*). See **442** and note.

[5] *had made.* See **284.**

λοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς[1] φίλον,[1] καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δὲ ἔχων ὁπλίτας ἀνέβη τριᾱκοσίους, ἄρχοντα[2] δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δᾱρεῖος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι[3] αὐτῷ.[4] ὁ[5] δὲ[5] πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς[6] ἀποκτενῶν·[6] ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδῡνεύσᾱς καὶ ἀτῑμασθείς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε[7] ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἢν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε[8] τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην.

534. TRANSLATE:[9] Darius, king of the Persians, being very sick, summoned Cyrus, his younger son, who did not happen to be present, from his province. A[10] little[10] later[10] he died, and Artaxerxes, the eldest of the sons of Darius, came to the throne.

---

[1] *i.e.* ὡς φίλον ὄντα, *believing him to be his friend.* The ὡς implies that the reason existed in the mind of Cyrus.

[2] In appos. with Ξενίᾱν.

[3] Opt. in indir. disc. (**417**), the hist. pres. (διαβάλλει) being felt as a secondary tense.

[4] See **249**.

[5] *and he;* see p. 66, foot-note 1.

[6] Fut. partic. introduced by ὡς, *with the intention of.*

[7] μη- is used, see **122** *a*.

[8] *supported.*

[9] The words in this exercise have been given before, or are in the Greek narrative (**533**).

[10] ὕστερον δὲ οὐ πολλῷ. Notice that the Greek, unlike the English, seldom, if ever, begins a sentence without some conjunction (as δέ here), to connect it with the previous narrative.

Thereupon Tissaphernes, being hostile to Cyrus, falsely accused him of plotting against the king, and[1] Artaxerxes[1] immediately ordered his brother to be arrested. Thus Cyrus came[2] into[2] the power[2] of the king,[2] and would have been put to death, if his mother had not interceded for him.

535. Review Chapters VIII and XVI.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS (*continued*).

536. **Cyrus prepares secretly against the King.**

ὅστις δ' ἀφικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ[3] *βασιλέως*[3] *πρὸς αὐτόν, πάντας*[4] *οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ'*[5] *ἑαυτῷ*[5] *δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν*[6] *τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς*[7] *ἔχοιεν*[7] *αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς*[8] *μάλιστα ἐδύνατο*[8] *ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι*[8] *ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα.*[9] *ὧδε οὖν*

---

[1] *οὗτος δέ.* [2] *ἐγένετο ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ.*

[3] Prep. phrase used substantively; see **205.**

[4] Plur., referring to the collective notion in the relative, *ὅστις.*

[5] Prep. phrase used adjectively; see **206.**

[6] Depends on *ἱκανοί.*

[7] Equivalent to *εὖνοι εἶησαν.* See p. 186, note 1.

[8] *ὡς* or *ὅτι* with the superlative denotes *as much as possible;* cf. Lat. *quam maxime.* A form of *δύναμαι* sometimes emphasizes this.

[9] The article may be omitted when *βασιλεύς* is the king of Persia.

ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. ὁπόσᾱς[1] εἶχε φυλακὰς[1] ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς[1] φρουράρχοις[1] ἑκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ[2] ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους[3] τὸ[4] ἀρχαῖον,[4] ἐκ[5] βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μῑλήτου. ἐν Μῑλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους,[6] ἀποστῆναι[7] πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς[8] μὲν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς[8] δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας,[9] συλλέξᾱς στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότᾱς. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν[10] στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾱ πέμπων ἠξίου, ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ, δοθῆναι οἱ[11] ταύτᾱς τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν,[12] καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπρᾱττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα. ὥστε

---

[1] Used for *τοῖς φρουράρχοις τῶν φυλακῶν, ὁπόσᾱς*. The antecedent is incorporated into the same clause with the relative, as often in Latin.

[2] *καὶ γάρ* always indicates an ellipsis. The thought may be supplied here as "*And* this was a reasonable explanation, *for*." *For* is almost always a sufficient translation. Cf. Lat. *namque*.

[3] Gen. of possession in predicate position; see **81.**

[4] Neut. acc. used as adv., modifying *ἦσαν*.

[5] *Of*, the king being regarded as the source; instead of *ὑπό* with the gen., or the simple dat., to express agency.

[6] (*certain men*) *were planning;* partic. in indir. disc. after verb of *perceiving;* see **443.**

[7] In appos. with *τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα*.

[8] When *μέν . . . δέ* are used with the plur. of the article only, translate *some . . . others*.

[9] Partic. used as substantive; *the exiles*.

[10] Infin. used as a substantive in the gen., modifying *πρόφασις*.

[11] Lat. *sibi;* see **191.**

[12] See **266, III.**

βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ[1] γὰρ[1] ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν[2] Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

537. TRANSLATE: When Cyrus had come back to his province, he began to plan how he might become king instead of his brother. Accordingly he so disposed whoever came to him from the king that they loved him[3] more than Artaxerxes. He also spent much money on[4] armies, pretending[5] that he was going to make war on Tissaphernes. The king, therefore, did not perceive the plot, and was[6] not[6] at[6] all[6] suspicious.[6]

538. Review Chapter XXIV.

CHAPTER XXXV.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS (*continued*).

539. **Cyrus collects Greek Mercenaries.**

ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρᾱς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν. τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος

---

[1] "*and* there was an additional reason, *for*"; see p. 200, note 2.
[2] Instead of ἅς, see p. 130, foot-note 3. [3] *himself.* [4] ἀμφί.
[5] ποιούμενος πρόφασιν. [6] *suspected nothing.*

ἠγάσθη τ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μῡρίους δᾱρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῡσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ[1] τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας. ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς[2] τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι.[3] τοῦτο δ᾽ αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον[4] ἐλάνθανεν[4] αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

Ἀρίστιππος δ᾽ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν[5] εἰς[6] δισχῑλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν,[5] ὡς[7] οὕτω περιγενόμενος[7] ἂν[7] τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.[8] ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχῑλίους καὶ ἓξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ[9] μὴ πρόσθεν[10] καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται.[11] οὕτω δ᾽ αὖ τὸ[12] ἐν[12] Θετταλίᾳ[12] ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς[13] εἰς Πῑσίδᾱς

---

[1] *from* (i.e. *by means of*).

[2] *for.*

[3] *voluntarily.* An adj. in Greek is sometimes translated like an adv. or adverbial expression.

[4] *was secretly supported;* see **442.**

[5] See **196,** II.

[6] With *μισθόν, pay for.*

[7] *on the ground that he should overcome*, representing *περιγενόμην ἄν.*

[8] For the gen., see **266,** III.

[9] *δέομαι, need*, regularly takes the gen. (**193**), and it may take a gen. of the person, when it means *beg from, ask of.*

[10] *πρόσθεν, earlier*, merely anticipates the *πρίν* clause.

[11] Subjv. introduced by *πρὶν ἄν*; see **506.**

[12] Prep. phrase, modifying *στράτευμα.*

[13] *on the ground that;* of an alleged reason.

βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους,[1] ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν[2] τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

540. TRANSLATE: Aristippus,[3] (being) a guest friend[4] of Cyrus, promised that if Cyrus would give him pay for two thousand mercenaries, he would not go away before he consulted with him. Clearchus[3] also, who had been exiled from Lacedaemon, and (who) was greatly admired by Cyrus, received gold from him and collected an army (for him) in the Chersonese. Thus two armies were secretly supported for Cyrus.

541. Review Chapter XXXII.

PARADIGMS OF THE VERBS.

For convenience of reference and in order to afford a survey of the verb as a whole, the full inflection of **λύω** and important tense-systems of other verbs are given in the following pages.

---

[1] In appos. with *Σοφαίνετον* and *Σωκράτην*.

[2] *on the side of.*

[3] *Ἀρίστιππος μὲν τοίνυν . . . καὶ Κλέαρχος δέ.* Here the *μέν . . . δέ* make the names more prominent, and *τοίνυν, therefore, well then,* resumes the narrative.

[4] See *ξένος*, in the general vocabulary.

542. λῡ́ω.

PRESENT SYSTEM.

		Active.		Middle and Passive.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indic.	S. 1	λῡ́ω	ἔ-λῡ-ν	λῡ́-μαι	ἐ-λῡ́-μην
	2	λῡ́ει-ς	ἔ-λῡε-ς	λῡ́ει	ἐ-λῡ́-ου
	3	λῡ́ει	ἔ-λῡε	λῡ́-ται	ἐ-λῡ́-το
	D. 2	λῡ́-τον	ἐ-λῡ́-τον	λῡ́-σθον	ἐ-λῡ́-σθον
	3	λῡ́-τον	ἐ-λῡ́-την	λῡ́-σθον	ἐ-λῡ́-σθην
	P. 1	λῡ́-μεν	ἐ-λῡ́-μεν	λῡ́-μεθα	ἐ-λῡ́-μεθα
	2	λῡ́-τε	ἐ-λῡ́-τε	λῡ́-σθε	ἐ-λῡ́-σθε
	3	λῡ́ουσι	ἔ-λῡ-ν	λῡ́-νται	ἐ-λῡ́-ντο

		Present.	
Subjv.	S. 1	λῡ́ω	λῡ́ω-μαι
	2	λῡ́ῃς	λῡ́ῃ
	3	λῡ́ῃ	λῡ́η-ται
	D. 2	λῡ́η-τον	λῡ́η-σθον
	3	λῡ́η-τον	λῡ́η-σθον
	P. 1	λῡ́ω-μεν	λῡ́ώ-μεθα
	2	λῡ́η-τε	λῡ́η-σθε
	3	λῡ́ωσι	λῡ́ω-νται
Opt.	S. 1	λῡ́οι-μι	λῡοί-μην
	2	λῡ́οι-ς	λῡ́οι-ο
	3	λῡ́οι	λῡ́οι-το
	D. 2	λῡ́οι-τον	λῡ́οι-σθον
	3	λῡοί-την	λῡοί-σθην
	P. 1	λῡ́οι-μεν	λῡοί-μεθα
	2	λῡ́οι-τε	λῡ́οι-σθε
	3	λῡ́οιε-ν	λῡ́οι-ντο
Imv.	S. 2	λῦ́ε	λῦ́ου
	3	λῡ́έ-τω	λῡ́έ-σθω
	D. 2	λῡ́ε-τον	λῡ́ε-σθον
	3	λῡ́έ-των	λῡ́έ-σθων
	P. 2	λῡ́ε-τε	λῡ́ε-σθε
	3	λῡ́έ-τωσαν or λῡ́ό-ντων	λῡ́έ-σθωσαν or λῡ́έ-σθων
Inf.		λῡ́ειν	λῡ́ε-σθαι
Part.		λῡ́ων, -ουσα, -ον	λῡ́ό-μενος, -η, -ον

	FUTURE SYSTEM.		AORIST SYSTEM.	
	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
	Future.		**First Aorist.**	
S. 1	λύσω	λύσο-μαι	ἔ-λῡσα	ἐ-λῡσά-μην
2	λύσεις	λύσει	ἔ-λῡσα-ς	ἐ-λύσω
3	λύσει	λύσε-ται	ἔ-λῡσε	ἐ-λύσα-το
D. 2	λύσε-τον	λύσε-σθον	ἐ-λύσα-τον	ἐ-λύσα-σθον
3	λύσε-τον	λύσε-σθον	ἐ-λῡσά-την	ἐ-λῡσά-σθην
P. 1	λύσο-μεν	λῡσό-μεθα	ἐ-λύσα-μεν	ἐ-λῡσά-μεθα
2	λύσε-τε	λύσε-σθε	ἐ-λύσα-τε	ἐ-λύσα-σθε
3	λύσουσι	λύσο-νται	ἔ-λῡσα-ν	ἐ-λύσα-ντο
S. 1			λύσω	λύσω-μαι
2			λύσῃς	λύσῃ
3			λύσῃ	λύσῃ-ται
D. 2	*None*	*None*	λύσῃ-τον	λύσῃ-σθον
3			λύσῃ-τον	λύσῃ-σθον
P. 1			λύσω-μεν	λῡσώ-μεθα
2			λύσῃ-τε	λύσῃ-σθε
3			λύσωσι	λύσω-νται
S. 1	λύσοι-μι	λῡσοί-μην	λύσαι-μι	λῡσαί-μην
2	λύσοι-ς	λύσοι-ο	λύσαι-ς λύσεια-ς	λύσαι-ο
3	λύσοι	λύσοι-το	λύσαι λύσειε	λύσαι-το
D. 2	λύσοι-τον	λύσοι-σθον	λύσαι-τον	λύσαι-σθον
3	λῡσοί-την	λῡσοί-σθην	λῡσαί-την	λῡσαί-σθην
P. 1	λύσοι-μεν	λῡσοί-μεθα	λύσαι-μεν	λῡσαί-μεθα
2	λύσοι-τε	λύσοι-σθε	λύσαι-τε	λύσαι-σθε
3	λύσοιε-ν	λύσοι-ντο	λύσαιε-ν λύσεια-ν	λύσαι-ντο
S. 2			λῦσον	λῦσαι
3			λῡσά-τω	λῡσά-σθω
D. 2	*None*	*None*	λύσα-τον	λύσα-σθον
3			λῡσά-των	λῡσά-σθων
P. 2			λύσα-τε	λύσα-σθε
3			λῡσά-τωσαν or λῡσά-ντων	λῡσά-σθωσαν or λῡσά-σθων
	λύσειν	λύσε-σθαι	λῦσαι	λύσα-σθαι
	λύσων, -ουσα, -ον	λῡσό-μενος, -η, -ον	λύσᾱς, -σᾶσα, -σαν	λῡσά-μενος, -η, -ον

		PERFECT SYSTEM.		PERFECT MIDDLE SYSTEM.	
		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE AND PASSIVE.	
		Perfect.	**Pluperfect.**	**Perfect.**	**Pluperfect.**
INDIC.	S. 1	λέλυκα	ἐ-λελύκη	λέλυ-μαι	ἐ-λελύ-μην
	2	λέλυκα-ς	ἐ-λελύκη-ς	λέλυ-σαι	ἐ-λέλυ-σο
	3	λέλυκε	ἐ-λελύκει	λέλυ-ται	ἐ-λέλυ-το
	D. 2	λελύκα-τον	ἐ-λελύκε-τον	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λέλυ-σθον
	3	λελύκα-τον	ἐ-λελυκέ-την	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λελύ-σθην
	P. 1	λελύκα-μεν	ἐ-λελύκε-μεν	λελύ-μεθα	ἐ-λελύ-μεθα
	2	λελύκα-τε	ἐ-λελύκε-τε	λέλυ-σθε	ἐ-λέλυ-σθε
	3	λελύκᾶσι	ἐ-λελύκε-σαν	λέλυ-νται	ἐ-λέλυ-ντο

		Perfect.		
SUBJV.	S. 1	λελύκω	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον,)	ὦ
	2	λελύκῃς	"	ᾖς
	3	λελύκῃ	"	ᾖ
	D. 2	λελύκη-τον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω,)	ἦτον
	3	λελύκη-τον	"	ἦτον
	P. 1	λελύκω-μεν	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α,)	ὦμεν
	2	λελύκη-τε	"	ἦτε
	3	λελύκωσι	"	ὦσι
OPT.	S. 1	λελύκοι-μι	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον)	εἴην
	2	λελύκοι-ς	"	εἴης
	3	λελύκοι	"	εἴη
	D. 2	λελύκοι-τον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω,)	εἴητον or εἶτον
	3	λελυκοί-την	"	εἰήτην or εἴτην
	P. 1	λελύκοι-μεν	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α,)	εἴημεν or εἶμεν
	2	λελύκοι-τε	"	εἴητε or εἶτε
	3	λελύκοιε-ν	"	εἴησαν or εἶεν
IMV.	S. 2	[λέλυκε	λέλυ-σο	
	3	λελυκέ-τω	λελύ-σθω	
	D. 2	λελύκε-τον	λέλυ-σθον	
	3	λελυκέ-των	λελύ-σθων	
	P. 2	λελύκε-τε	λέλυ-σθε	
	3	λελυκέ-τωσαν or λελυκό-ντων]	λελύ-σθων	
INF.		λελυκέ-ναι	λελύ-σθαι	
PART.		λελυκώς, -κυῖα, -κός	λελυ-μένος, -η, -ον	

PERFECT MIDDLE SYSTEM.		AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM.	
	MIDDLE AND PASSIVE.	PASSIVE.	
	Future Perfect.	**Aorist.**	**Future.**
S. 1	λελῡ́σο-μαι	ἐ-λύθη-ν	λυθήσο-μαι
2	λελῡ́σει	ἐ-λύθη-ς	λυθήσει
3	λελῡ́σε-ται	ἐ-λύθη	λυθήσε-ται
D. 2	λελῡ́σε-σθον	ἐ-λύθη-τον	λυθήσε-σθον
3	λελῡ́σε-σθον	ἐ-λυθή-την	λυθήσε-σθον
P. 1	λελῡσό-μεθα	ἐ-λύθη-μεν	λυθησό-μεθα
2	λελῡ́σε-σθε	ἐ-λύθη-τε	λυθήσε-σθε
3	λελῡ́σο-νται	ἐ-λύθη-σαν	λυθήσο-νται
S. 1		λυθῶ	
2		λυθῇς	
3		λυθῇ	
D. 2	*None*	λυθῆ-τον	*None*
3		λυθῆ-τον	
P. 1		λυθῶ-μεν	
2		λυθῆ-τε	
3		λυθῶσι	
S. 1	λελῡσοί-μην	λυθείη-ν	λυθησοί-μην
2	λελῡ́σοι-ο	λυθείη-ς	λυθήσοι-ο
3	λελῡ́σοι-το	λυθεί-η	λυθήσοι-το
D. 2	λελῡ́σοι-σθον	*λυθείη-τον* or λυθεῖ-τον	λυθήσοι-σθον
3	λελῡσοί-σθην	*λυθειή-την* λυθεί-την	λυθησοί-σθην
P. 1	λελῡσοί-μεθα	*λυθείη-μεν* λυθεῖ-μεν	λυθησοί-μεθα
2	λελῡ́σοι-σθε	*λυθείη-τε* λυθεῖ-τε	λυθήσοι-σθε
3	λελῡ́σοι-ντο	*λυθείη-σαν* λυθεῖ-εν	λυθήσοι-ντο
S. 2		λύθη-τι	
3		λυθή-τω	
D. 2	*None*	λύθη-τον	*None*
3		λυθή-των	
P. 2		λύθη-τε	
3		*λυθή-τωσαν* or λυθέ-ντων	
	λελῡ́σε-σθαι	λυθῆ-ναι	λυθήσε-σθαι
	λελῡσό-μενος, -η, -ον	λυθείς, -εῖσα, -έν	λυθησό-μενος, -η, -ον

543. λείπω. **544.** λείπω.

		SECOND AORIST SYSTEM.		SECOND PERF. SYSTEM.	
		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	
				Perfect.	Pluperfect.
INDIC.	S. 1	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λιπό-μην	λέλοιπα	ἐ-λελοίπη
	2	ἔ-λιπε-ς	ἐ-λίπου	λέλοιπα-ς	ἐ-λελοίπη-ς
	3	ἔ-λιπε	ἐ-λίπε-το	λέλοιπε	ἐ-λελοίπει
	D. 2	ἐ-λίπε-τον	ἐ-λίπε-σθον	λελοίπα-τον	ἐ-λελοίπε-τον
	3	ἐ-λιπέ-την	ἐ-λιπέ-σθην	λελοίπα-τον	ἐ-λελοιπέ-την
	P. 1	ἐ-λίπο-μεν	ἐ-λιπό-μεθα	λελοίπα-μεν	ἐ-λελοίπε-μεν
	2	ἔ-λιπε-τε	ἐ-λίπε-σθε	λελοίπα-τε	ἐ-λελοίπε-τε
	3	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λίπο-ντο	λελοίπᾱσι	ἐ-λελοίπε-σαν
				Second Perfect.	
SUBJV.	S. 1	λίπω	λίπω-μαι	λελοίπω	
	2	λίπῃς	λίπῃ	λελοίπῃς	
	3	λίπῃ	λίπῃ-ται	λελοίπῃ	
	D. 2	λίπη-τον	λίπη-σθον	λελοίπη-τον	
	3	λίπη-τον	λίπη-σθον	λελοίπη-τον	
	P. 1	λίπω-μεν	λιπώ-μεθα	λελοίπω-μεν	
	2	λίπη-τε	λίπη-σθε	λελοίπη-τε	
	3	λίπωσι	λίπω-νται	λελοίπωσι	
OPT.	S. 1	λίποι-μι	λιποί-μην	λελοίποι-μι	
	2	λίποι-ς	λίποι-ο	λελοίποι-ς	
	3	λίποι	λίποι-το	λελοίποι	
	D. 2	λίποι-τον	λίποι-σθον	λελοίποι-τον	
	3	λιποί-την	λιποί-σθην	λελοιποί-την	
	P. 1	λίποι-μεν	λιποί-μεθα	λελοίποι-μεν	
	2	λίποι-τε	λίποι-σθε	λελοίποι-τε	
	3	λίποιε-ν	λίποι-ντο	λελοίποιε-ν	
IMV.	S. 2	λίπε	λιποῦ	[λέλοιπε	
	3	λιπέ-τω	λιπέ-σθω	λελοιπέ-τω	
	D. 2	λίπε-τον	λίπε-σθον	λελοίπε-τον	
	3	λιπέ-των	λιπέ-σθων	λελοιπέ-των	
	P. 2	λίπε-τε	λίπε-σθε	λελοίπε-τε	
	3	λιπό-ντων	λιπέ-σθων	λελοιπό-ντων]	
INF.		λιπεῖν	λιπέ-σθαι	λελοιπέ-ναι	
PART.		λιπών, -οῦσα, -όν	λιπόμενος, -η, -ον	λελοιπώς, -υῖα, -ός	

545. φαίνω.

SECOND AORIST PASSIVE SYSTEM.

	Second Aorist.	Second Future.
S. 1	ἐ-φάνη-ν	φανήσο-μαι
2	ἐ-φάνη-ς	φανήσει
3	ἐ-φάνη	φανήσε-ται
D. 2	ἐ-φάνη-τον	φανήσε-σθον
3	ἐ-φανή-την	φανήσε-σθον
P. 1	ἐ-φάνη-μεν	φανησό-μεθα
2	ἐ-φάνη-τε	φανήσε-σθε
3	ἐ-φάνη-σαν	φανήσο-νται
S. 1	φανῶ	
2	φανῇς	
3	φανῇ	
D. 2	φανῆ-τον	*None*
3	φανῆ-τον	
P. 1	φανῶ-μεν	
2	φανῆ-τε	
3	φανῶσι	
S. 1	φανείη-ν	φανησοί-μην
2	φανείη-ς	φανήσοι-ο
3	φανείη	φανήσοι-το
D. 2	*φανείη-τον* or φανεῖ-τον	φανήσοι-σθον
3	*φανειή-την* or φανεί-την	φανησοί-σθην
P. 1	*φανείη-μεν* or φανεῖ-μεν	φανησοί-μεθα
2	*φανείη-τε* or φανεῖ-τε	φανήσοι-σθε
3	*φανείη-σαν* or φανεῖε-ν	φανήσοι-ντο
S. 2	φάνη-θι	
3	φανή-τω	
D. 2	φάνη-τον	*None*
3	φανή-των	
P. 2	φάνη-τε	
3	φανέ-ντων	
	φανῆ-ναι	φανήσε-σθαι
	φανείς, -εῖσα, -έν	φανησόμενος, -η, -ον

546. -μι Verbs.

ACTIVE.

Present Indicative.

S. 1	ἵστημι	τίθημι	δίδωμι	δείκνῡμι
2	ἵστης	τίθης	δίδως	δείκνῡς
3	ἵστησι	τίθησι	δίδωσι	δείκνῡσι
D. 2	ἵστατον	τίθετον	δίδοτον	δείκνυτον
3	ἵστατον	τίθετον	δίδοτον	δείκνυτον
P. 1	ἵσταμεν	τίθεμεν	δίδομεν	δείκνυμεν
2	ἵστατε	τίθετε	δίδοτε	δείκνυτε
3	ἱστᾶσι	τιθέᾱσι	διδόᾱσι	δεικνύᾱσι

Imperfect Indicative.

S. 1	ἵστην	ἐτίθην	ἐδίδουν	ἐδείκνῡν
2	ἵστης	ἐτίθεις	ἐδίδους	ἐδείκνῡς
3	ἵστη	ἐτίθει	ἐδίδου	ἐδείκνῡ
D. 2	ἵστατον	ἐτίθετον	ἐδίδοτον	ἐδείκνυτον
3	ἱστάτην	ἐτιθέτην	ἐδιδότην	ἐδεικνύτην
P. 1	ἵσταμεν	ἐτίθεμεν	ἐδίδομεν	ἐδείκνυμεν
2	ἵστατε	ἐτίθετε	ἐδίδοτε	ἐδείκνυτε
3	ἵστασαν	ἐτίθεσαν	ἐδίδοσαν	ἐδείκνυσαν

Present Subjunctive.

S. 1	ἱστῶ	τιθῶ	διδῶ	δεικνύω
2	ἱστῇς	τιθῇς	διδῷς	δεικνύῃς
3	ἱστῇ	τιθῇ	διδῷ	δεικνύῃ
D. 2	ἱστῆτον	τιθῆτον	διδῶτον	δεικνύητον
3	ἱστῆτον	τιθῆτον	διδῶτον	δεικνύητον
P. 1	ἱστῶμεν	τιθῶμεν	διδῶμεν	δεικνύωμεν
2	ἱστῆτε	τιθῆτε	διδῶτε	δεικνύητε
3	ἱστῶσι	τιθῶσι	διδῶσι	δεικνύωσι

Present Optative.

S. 1	ἱσταίην	τιθείην	διδοίην	δεικνύοιμι
2	ἱσταίης	τιθείης	διδοίης	δεικνύοις
3	ἱσταίη	τιθείη	διδοίη	δεικνύοι
D. 2	ἱσταίητον	τιθείητον	διδοίητον	δεικνύοιτον
3	ἱσταιήτην	τιθειήτην	διδοιήτην	δεικνυοίτην
P. 1	ἱσταίημεν	τιθείημεν	διδοίημεν	δεικνύοιμεν
2	ἱσταίητε	τιθείητε	διδοίητε	δεικνύοιτε
3	ἱσταίησαν	τιθείησαν	διδοίησαν	δεικνύοιεν

but usually contracted into: —

D. 2	ἱσταῖτον	τιθεῖτον	διδοῖτον	[δεικνύοιτον, etc. *does not contract.*]
3	ἱσταίτην	τιθείτην	διδοίτην	
P. 1	ἱσταῖμεν	τιθεῖμεν	διδοῖμεν	
2	ἱσταῖτε	τιθεῖτε	διδοῖτε	
3	ἱσταῖεν	τιθεῖεν	διδοῖεν	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

S. 2	ἵστη	τίθει	δίδου	δείκνῦ
3	ἱστάτω	τιθέτω	διδότω	δεικνύτω
D. 2	ἵστατον	τίθετον	δίδοτον	δείκνυτον
3	ἱστάτων	τιθέτων	διδότων	δεικνύτων
P. 2	ἵστατε	τίθετε	δίδοτε	δείκνυτε
3	ἱστάντων	τιθέντων	διδόντων	δεικνύντων

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

	ἱστάναι	τιθέναι	διδόναι	δεικνύναι

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

	ἱστάς, -ᾶσα, -άν	τιθείς, -εῖσα, -έν	διδούς, -οῦσα, -όν	δεικνύς, -ῦσα, -ύν

547. -μι Verbs.

SECOND AORIST ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

S. 1	ἔστην			ἔδῡν, *I entered.*
2	ἔστης	[*No singular.*]	[*No singular.*]	ἔδῡς
3	ἔστη			ἔδῡ
D. 2	ἔστητον	ἔθετον	ἔδοτον	ἔδῡτον
3	ἐστήτην	ἐθέτην	ἐδότην	ἐδύτην
P. 1	ἔστημεν	ἔθεμεν	ἔδομεν	ἔδῡμεν
2	ἔστητε	ἔθετε	ἔδοτε	ἔδῡτε
3	ἔστησαν	ἔθεσαν	ἔδοσαν	ἔδῡσαν

SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. 1	στῶ	θῶ	δῶ	δύω
2	στῇς	θῇς	δῷς	δύῃς
3	στῇ	θῇ	δῷ	δύῃ
D. 2	στῆτον	θῆτον	δῶτον	δύητον
3	στῆτον	θῆτον	δῶτον	δύητον
P. 1	στῶμεν	θῶμεν	δῶμεν	δύωμεν
2	στῆτε	θῆτε	δῶτε	δύητε
3	στῶσι	θῶσι	δῶσι	δύωσι

Optative.

S. 1	σταίην	θείην	δοίην	
2	σταίης	θείης	δοίης	
3	σταίη	θείη	δοίη	
D. 2	σταίητον	θείητον	δοίητον	*None*
3	σταιήτην	θειήτην	δοιήτην	
P. 1	σταίημεν	θείημεν	δοίημεν	
2	σταίητε	θείητε	δοίητε	
3	σταίησαν	θείησαν	δοίησαν	

but usually contracted into :—

D. 2	σταῖτον	θεῖτον	δοῖτον	
3	σταίτην	θείτην	δοίτην	
P. 1	σταῖμεν	θεῖμεν	δοῖμεν	*None*
2	σταῖτε	θεῖτε	δοῖτε	
3	σταῖεν	θεῖεν	δοῖεν	

Imperative.

S. 2	στῆθι	θές	δός	δῦθι
3	στήτω	θέτω	δότω	δύτω
D. 2	στῆτον	θέτον	δότον	δῦτον
3	στήτων	θέτων	δότων	δύτων
P. 2	στῆτε	θέτε	δότε	δῦτε
3	στάντων	θέντων	δόντων	δύντων

Infinitive.

	στῆναι	θεῖναι	δοῦναι	δῦναι

Participle.

	στάς, -ᾶσα, -άν	θείς, -εῖσα, -έν	δούς, -οῦσα, -όν	δύς, -ῦσα, -ύν

548. -μι Verbs.

MIDDLE AND PASSIVE

Present Indicative.

S. 1	ἵσταμαι	τίθεμαι	δίδομαι	δείκνυμαι
2	ἵστασαι	τίθεσαι	δίδοσαι	δείκνυσαι
3	ἵσταται	τίθεται	δίδοται	δείκνυται
D. 2	ἵστασθον	τίθεσθον	δίδοσθον	δείκνυσθον
3	ἵστασθον	τίθεσθον	δίδοσθον	δείκνυσθον
P. 1	ἱστάμεθα	τιθέμεθα	διδόμεθα	δεικνύμεθα
2	ἵστασθε	τίθεσθε	δίδοσθε	δείκνυσθε
3	ἵστανται	τίθενται	δίδονται	δείκνυνται

Imperfect Indicative.

S. 1	ἱστάμην	ἐτιθέμην	ἐδιδόμην	ἐδεικνύμην
2	ἵστασο	ἐτίθεσο	ἐδίδοσο	ἐδείκνυσο
3	ἵστατο	ἐτίθετο	ἐδίδοτο	ἐδείκνυτο
D. 2	ἵστασθον	ἐτίθεσθον	ἐδίδοσθον	ἐδείκνυσθον
3	ἱστάσθην	ἐτιθέσθην	ἐδιδόσθην	ἐδεικνύσθην
P. 1	ἱστάμεθα	ἐτιθέμεθα	ἐδιδόμεθα	ἐδεικνύμεθα
2	ἵστασθε	ἐτίθεσθε	ἐδίδοσθε	ἐδείκνυσθε
3	ἵσταντο	ἐτίθεντο	ἐδίδοντο	ἐδείκνυντο

Present Subjunctive.

S. 1	ἱστῶμαι	τιθῶμαι	διδῶμαι	δεικνύωμαι
2	ἱστῇ	τιθῇ	διδῷ	δεικνύῃ
3	ἱστῆται	τιθῆται	διδῶται	δεικνύηται
D. 2	ἱστῆσθον	τιθῆσθον	διδῶσθον	δεικνύησθον
3	ἱστῆσθον	τιθῆσθον	διδῶσθον	δεικνύησθον
P. 1	ἱστώμεθα	τιθώμεθα	διδώμεθα	δεικνυώμεθα
2	ἱστῆσθε	τιθῆσθε	διδῶσθε	δεικνύησθε
3	ἱστῶνται	τιθῶνται	διδῶνται	δεικνύωνται

Present Optative.

S. 1	ἱσταίμην	τιθείμην	διδοίμην	δεικνυοίμην
2	ἱσταῖο	τιθεῖο	διδοῖο	δεικνύοιο
3	ἱσταῖτο	τιθεῖτο	διδοῖτο	δεικνύοιτο
D. 2	ἱσταῖσθον	τιθεῖσθον	διδοῖσθον	δεικνύοισθον
3	ἱσταίσθην	τιθείσθην	διδοίσθην	δεικνυοίσθην
P. 1	ἱσταίμεθα	τιθείμεθα	διδοίμεθα	δεικνυοίμεθα
2	ἱσταῖσθε	τιθεῖσθε	διδοῖσθε	δεικνύοισθε
3	ἱσταῖντο	τιθεῖντο	διδοῖντο	δεικνύοιντο

PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

S. 2	ἵστασο	τίθεσο	δίδοσο	δείκνυσο
3	ἱστάσθω	τιθέσθω	διδόσθω	δεικνύσθω
D. 2	ἵστασθον	τίθεσθον	δίδοσθον	δείκνυσθον
3	ἱστάσθων	τιθέσθων	διδόσθων	δεικνύσθων
P. 2	ἵστασθε	τίθεσθε	δίδοσθε	δείκνυσθε
3	ἱστάσθων	τιθέσθων	διδόσθων	δεικνύσθων
PRES. INFIN.	ἵστασθαι	τίθεσθαι	δίδοσθαι	δείκνυσθαι
PRES. PARTIC.	ἱστάμενος	τιθέμενος	διδόμενος	δεικνύμενος

549. -μι Verbs.

SECOND AORIST (lacking in *ἵστημι* and *δείκνῡμι*).

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
S. 1	ἐθέμην	ἐδόμην	θῶμαι	δῶμαι
2	ἔθου	ἔδου	θῇ	δῷ
3	ἔθετο	ἔδοτο	θῆται	δῶται
D. 2	ἔθεσθον	ἔδοσθον	θῆσθον	δῶσθον
3	ἐθέσθην	ἐδόσθην	θῆσθον	δῶσθον
P. 1	ἐθέμεθα	ἐδόμεθα	θώμεθα	δώμεθα
2	ἔθεσθε	ἔδοσθε	θῆσθε	δῶσθε
3	ἔθεντο	ἔδοντο	θῶνται	δῶνται

	OPTATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		
S. 1	θείμην	δοίμην	S. 2	θοῦ	δοῦ
2	θεῖο	δοῖο	3	θέσθω	δόσθω
3	θεῖτο	δοῖτο	D. 2	θέσθον	δόσθον
D. 2	θεῖσθον	δοῖσθον	3	θέσθων	δόσθων
3	θείσθην	δοίσθην	P. 2	θέσθε	δόσθε
P. 1	θείμεθα	δοίμεθα	3	θέσθων	δόσθων
2	θεῖσθε	δοῖσθε	INFIN.	θέσθαι	δόσθαι
3	θεῖντο	δοῖντο	PARTIC.	θέμενος	δόμενος

550. φημί. 551. ἵημι.

ACTIVE.

			Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indic.	S.	1	φημί	ἔφην	ἵημι	ἵην
		2	φῄς or φής	ἔφησθα or ἔφης	ἵης	ἵεις
		3	φησί	ἔφη	ἵησι	ἵει
	D.	2	φατόν	ἔφατον	ἵετον	ἵετον
		3	φατόν	ἐφάτην	ἵετον	ἑέτην
	P.	1	φαμέν	ἔφαμεν	ἵεμεν	ἵεμεν
		2	φατέ	ἔφατε	ἵετε	ἵετε
		3	φᾶσί	ἔφασαν	ἱᾶσι	ἵεσαν

			Present.	Present.
Subjv.	S.	1	φῶ	ἵω
		2	φῇς	ἵῃς
		3	φῇ	ἵῃ
	D.	2	φῆτον	ἵητον
		3	φῆτον	ἵητον
	P.	1	φῶμεν	ἵωμεν
		2	φῆτε	ἵητε
		3	φῶσι	ἵωσι
Opt.	S.	1	φαίην	ἱείην
		2	φαίης	ἱείης
		3	φαίη	ἱείη
	D.	2	φαίητον or φαῖτον	ἱείητον or ἱεῖτον
		3	φαιήτην or φαίτην	ἱειήτην or ἱείτην
	P.	1	φαίημεν or φαῖμεν	ἱείημεν or ἱεῖμεν
		2	φαίητε or φαῖτε	ἱείητε or ἱεῖτε
		3	φαίησαν or φαῖεν	ἱείησαν or ἱεῖεν
Imv.	S.	2	φαθί or φάθι	ἵει
		3	φάτω	ἑέτω
	D.	2	φάτον	ἵετον
		3	φάτων	ἑέτων
	P.	2	φάτε	ἵετε
		3	φάντων	ἑόντων
Inf.			φάναι	ἑέναι
Part.			φάσκων (497)	ἱείς, ἱεῖσα, ἑέν

ἵημι (*continued*).

		MIDDLE AND PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
		PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	SECOND AORIST.	
INDIC.	S. 1	ἵεμαι	ἱέμην		εἵμην
	2	ἵεσαι	ἵεσο	*None.*	εἷσο
	3	ἵεται	ἵετο		εἷτο
	D. 2	ἵεσθον	ἵεσθον	εἷτον	εἷσθον
	3	ἵεσθον	ἱέσθην	εἵτην	εἵσθην
	P. 1	ἱέμεθα	ἱέμεθα	εἷμεν	εἵμεθα
	2	ἵεσθε	ἵεσθε	εἷτε	εἷσθε
	3	ἵενται	ἵεντο	εἷσαν	εἷντο

PRESENT.

SUBJV.	S. 1	ἱῶμαι	ὦ	ὦμαι
	2	ἱῇ	ἧς	ἧ
	3	ἱῆται	ᾖ	ἧται
	D. 2	ἱῆσθον	ἧτον	ἦσθον
	3	ἱῆσθον	ἧτον	ἦσθον
	P. 1	ἱώμεθα	ὦμεν	ὥμεθα
	2	ἱῆσθε	ἦτε	ἦσθε
	3	ἱῶνται	ὦσι	ὦνται
OPT.	S. 1	ἱείμην	εἵην	εἵμην
	2	ἱεῖο	εἵης	εἷο
	3	ἱεῖτο	εἵη	εἷτο
	D. 2	ἱεῖσθον	εἵητον or εἷτον	εἷσθον
	3	ἱείσθην	εἱήτην or εἵτην	εἵσθην
	P. 1	ἱείμεθα	εἵημεν or εἷμεν	εἵμεθα
	2	ἱεῖσθε	εἵητε or εἷτε	εἷσθε
	3	ἱεῖντο	εἵησαν or εἷεν	εἷντο
IMV.	S. 2	ἵεσο	ἕς	οὗ
	3	ἱέσθω	ἕτω	ἕσθω
	D. 2	ἵεσθον	ἕτον	ἕσθον
	3	ἱέσθων	ἕτων	ἕσθων
	P. 2	ἵεσθε	ἕτε	ἕσθε
	3	ἱέσθων	ἕντων	ἕσθων
INF.		ἵεσθαι	εἶναι	ἕσθαι
PART.		ἱέμενος	εἷς, εἷσα, ἕν	ἕμενος

GREEK–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Beside the six hundred words contained in the review vocabularies and intended to be committed to memory, this vocabulary includes proper names and some cross-references. The gender of nouns of the first and second declensions, where it conforms to the general rules, is not given. The themes and principal parts of compounds will be found under the simple verbs. The principal parts of verbs of Classes I. and IV. *b*, if they contain no irregularities, are not given.

English words derived from the Greek are printed in black-faced type, and cognates in italics.

A.

Ἄβῡδος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *Abȳdus*, a city of Asia Minor.

ἀγαθός, *ή*, *όν*, *good*, *brave*. For comparison, see **489**, 1.

ἄγαμαι (VII. *a*), *ἠγασάμην*, *ἠγάσθην*, *admire*.

ἀγγέλλω (*ἀγγελ-*, IV. *c*), *ἀγγελῶ*, *ἤγγειλα*, *ἤγγελκα*, *ἤγγελμαι*, *ἠγγέλθην*, *announce*.

ἄγγελος, *ου*, *messenger*. Angel.

ἀγορᾱ́, *ᾶς*, *assembly*, *market-place*.

ἄγω (I., 2, *a*), *ἄξω*, *ἤγαγον*, *ἦχα*, *ἦγμαι*, *ἤχθην*, *lead*, *carry*; *march*. Cf. Lat. *ago*. Demagogue. Pedagogue.

ἀγών, *ῶνος*, *ὁ*, *assembly*; *contest*, *struggle*. Agony.

ἀδελφός, *οῦ*, voc. *ἄδελφε*, *brother*. Philadelphia.

ἀδικέω (I., 1, *c*), *be wrong*, *wrong*, *injure*.

ἀεί, adv., *always*.

Ἀθηναῖος, *ου*, *an Athenian*.

ἀθροίζω (*ἀθροιδ-*, IV. *b*), *collect*, *assemble*.

Αἴγυπτος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *Egypt*.

αἱρέω (*αἱρε-*, *ἑλ-*, VIII.), *αἱρήσω*, *εἷλον*, *ἧρηκα*, *ἧρημαι*, *ἡρέθην*, *take*, *seize*; mid., *choose*. Heresy.

αἰσθάνομαι (*αἰσθ-*, V. *b*), *αἰσθήσομαι*, *ἤσθημαι*, *perceive*, *learn*, *observe*. Aesthetic.

αἰσχρός, *ά*, *όν*, *shameful*, *base*.

αἰσχύνω (*αἰσχυν-*, IV. *c*), *αἰσχυνῶ*, *ᾔσχῡνα*, *ᾔσχύνθην*, *shame*; mid., *be* or *feel ashamed*.

αἰτέω (I., 1, *c*), *ask*, *demand*.

αἰτιάομαι (I., 1, *b*), *accuse*, *blame*.

αἴτιος, *ᾱ́*, *ον*, *the cause of*, *responsible for*, *to blame*. Etiology (for Aetiology).

ἀκούω (*ἀκοϝ-*, I., 1, *d*), *ἀκούσομαι*, *ἤκουσα*, *ἀκήκοα*, *ἠκούσθην*, *hear*, *listen to*. Acoustic.

ἄκρᾱ, *ᾱς*, *summit*, *citadel*.

ἄκρος, *ᾱ́*, *ον*, *topmost*, *highest*, *top of*; *ἄκρον*, *ου*, *summit*; *τὰ ἄκρα*, *the heights*. Acropolis.

ἁλίσκομαι (*ἁλ-*, *ἁλο-*, VI. *a*), *ἁλώσομαι*, *ἑάλων* or *ἥλων*, *ἑάλωκα* or *ἥλωκα*, used as pass. of *αἱρέω*, *be taken* or *captured*.

ἀλλά, conj., *but*, *yet*, *however*.

ἀλλήλοιν, recip. pron., *one another, each other.*

ἄλλος, η, ο, *another, other;* with the article, *the other, the rest of.*

ἄλλως, adv., *otherwise;* **ἄλλως τε καί**, *especially.*

ἅμα, adv., *at the same time;* prep., *at the same time with;* **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**, *at day-break.*

ἅμαξα, ης, *wagon.*

ἀμείνων, comparative of **ἀγαθός.**

ἀμφί, prep. with acc., *about;* **οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα**, *Xenophon and his men.*

ἀμφότερος, ᾱ, ον, *both.*

ἄν, a conditional particle used with the past indic., the opt., and with relative words, as in **ἐάν** (**εἰ** + **ἄν**); it cannot be translated.

ἄν, see **ἐάν.**

ἀνά, prep. commonly with acc., *up, up along.*

ἀναβαίνω (V. *a*), *go up, mount, march inland.*

ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *ascent, march inland.* Anabasis.

ἀναγκάζω (**ἀναγκαδ-**, IV. *b*), *force, compel.*

ἀνάγκη, ης, *necessity;* **ἀνάγκῃ**, *of necessity, necessarily.*

ἀναπαύω (I., 1, *d*), *cause to cease* or *halt;* mid., *halt, rest.*

ἀνδράποδον, ου, *captive, slave.*

ἄνευ, prep. with gen., *without.*

ἀνήρ, **ἀνδρός**, ὁ, *man*, as distinguished from woman. Cf. Lat. *vir.* Alexander.

ἄνθρωπος, ου, *man*, as distinguished from other creatures. Cf. Lat. *homo.* Anthropology. Philanthropic.

ἀνίστημι (VII. *b*), *set up, raise, rouse;* intrans. forms (**455**), *arise, rise up.*

ἀντί, prep. with gen., *instead of, in return for.* Antidote.

ἀντιστασιώτης, ου, *opponent, adversary.*

ἄνω, adv., *up, upward, above.*

ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον, *worthy.*

ἀξιόω (I., 1, *c*), *deem worthy, ask, demand.* Often takes the infin. Axiom.

ἀπαγγέλλω (IV. *c*), *bring back word, announce.*

ἀπάγω (I., 2, *a*), *lead back, march back.*

ἅπαξ, numeral adv., *once.*

ἀπαράσκευος, ον, *unprepared.*

ἅπᾶς, **ἅπᾶσα**, **ἅπαν** (longer form of **πᾶς**), *all, the whole, entire.*

ἄπειμι (**εἰμί**, VII. *a*), *be away* or *distant.*

ἄπειμι (**εἶμι**, VII. *a*), *go away* or *back.*

ἀπέρχομαι (VIII.), *come* or *go away; return.*

ἀπέχω (I., 2, *a*), *keep away; be distant;* mid., *refrain from.*

ἀπό, prep. with gen., *from, away from.*

ἀποδείκνῡμι (V. *e*), *show forth; appoint.*

ἀποθνῄσκω (VI. *a*), *die, be killed.* Used as pass. of **ἀποκτείνω.**

ἀποκρίνομαι (IV. *c*), *give back a decision; answer, reply.*

ἀποκτείνω (IV. *c*), *kill, put to death.*

ἀπολαμβάνω (V. *c*), *take back, receive back.*

ἀπολείπω (II.), *leave behind, desert, forsake.*

ἀπόλλῡμι (**ὀλ-**, V. *e*), -**ολῶ**, -**ὤλεσα** or -**ωλόμην**, -**ολώλεκα** or -**όλωλα**, *destroy, lose;* mid. and pass. with 2d pf. system, *perish, be lost.* Apollyon.

ἀποπέμπω (I., 2, *a*), *send away* or *back;* mid., *dismiss.*

ἀποπλέω (II.), *sail away* or *back.*

ἀπορέω (I., 1, *c*), *be in difficulty, be perplexed.*

ἀπορίᾱ, ᾱs, *want of means, difficulty.*
ἄπορος, ον, *without means, perplexed; difficult.*
ἀποτέμνω (V. *a*), *cut off.*
ἄρα, inferential particle, postpositive, *therefore, then, indeed.*
ἀργύριον, ου, *silver, silver money.*
ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν, *of silver.*
Ἀριαῖος, ου, *Ariaeus*, commander of Cyrus's barbarian forces.
ἀριθμός, οῦ, *number, numbering; extent.* Arithmetic.
Ἀρίστιππος, ου, *Aristippus.*
ἄριστος, η, ον, superlative of ἀγαθός.
ἅρμα, ατος, τό, *chariot, war-chariot.*
ἁρμοστής, οῦ, harmost, *governor.*
ἁρπάζω (ἁρπαδ-, IV. *b*), ἁρπάσω, ἥρπασα, ἥρπακα, ἥρπασμαι, ἡρπάσθην, *seize, catch up, plunder.* Harpy.
Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, *Artaxerxes.*
ἀρχαῖος, ᾶ, ον, *from the beginning, ancient, old;* τὸ ἀρχαῖον, as adv., *formerly, long ago.* Archaic. Archaeology.
ἀρχή, ῆs, *beginning; rule, province.*
ἄρχω (I., 2, *a*), ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἦργμαι, ἤρχθην, *be the first, begin, rule, lead;* mid., *begin.* Takes gen. Archangel. Monarch.
ἀσθενέω (I., 1, *c*), *be feeble, be sick.*
ἀσπίς, ίδος, ἡ, *shield.*
ἄστυ, εως, τό, *town, the city proper*, exclusive of suburbs.
ἀσφαλής, ές, *not to be tripped, safe, secure.*
ἀτῑμάζω (ἀτῑμαδ-, IV. *b*), *dishonor, disgrace.*
αὖ, adv., *again; on the other hand; moreover.*
αὖθις, adv., *again; afterwards.*
αὐλίζομαι (αὐλιδ-, IV. *b*), αὐλίσομαι, ηὐλίσθην, *pass the night, encamp (for the night), bivouac.*
αὐτός, ή, ό, intensive pronoun, *self;* ὁ αὐτός, *the same;* oblique cases, *him, her, it.* Autonomous.
αὐτοῦ, adv., *here, there.*
αὑτοῦ, see ἑαυτοῦ.
ἀφαιρέω (VIII.), *take away;* mid., *deprive, rob.*
ἀφίημι (VII. *b*), *send away; let go, set free.*
ἀφικνέομαι (ἱκ-, V. *d*), -ἵξομαι, -ἱκόμην, -ἶγμαι, *come from, arrive.*
ἀφίστημι (VII. *b*), *set off, separate, cause to revolt;* intrans. forms (**455**), *stand away, revolt.* Apostate.
Ἀχαιός, ου, *an Achaean.*
ἄχθομαι (ἀχθ-, I., 2, *d*), ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθέσθην, *be troubled* or *displeased, be angry.*

B.

βαίνω (βα-, V. *a*), βήσομαι, ἔβην, βέβηκα, βέβαμαι, ἐβάθην, *go, walk.*
βάλλω (βαλ-, IV. *c*), βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, *throw, throw at, pelt.*
βάρβαρος, ον, *barbarian, not Greek, foreign.* As a substantive, *a barbarian, a foreigner.*
βασιλείᾱ, ᾱs, *kingdom, sovereignty.*
βασίλειος, ον, *kingly, royal.* As a substantive, τὸ βασίλειον or τὰ βασίλεια, *palace.*
βασιλεύς, έως, ό, *king.* When ὁ is not used, the king of Persia is meant. Basilisk. Basil.
βασιλεύω (I., 1, *d*), *be king, reign.*
βελτίων, βέλτιστος, comparative and superlative of ἀγαθός.
βίᾱ, ᾱs, *strength, violence;* βίᾳ, adv., *by violence, violently.*
βίος, ου, *life, livelihood.* Biography. Biology.
βλάπτω (βλαβ-, III.), βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην and ἐβλάβην, *harm, damage.*

βοηθέω (I., 1, *c*; *βοή* + *θέω*), *run at a cry for help, assist.*

Βοιώτιος, *ου*, *a Boeotian.*

βουλεύω (I., 1, *d*), *plan, devise;* mid., *plan, deliberate, take counsel.*

βούλομαι (I., 2, *d*), *βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην, will, wish, be willing.* Cf. Lat. *volo. Will.*

βοῦς, *βοός*, *ὁ* or *ἡ*, *ox, cow;* plur., *cattle.* Cf. Lat. *bos.* Bucolic.

Γ.

γάρ, postpositive conj., *for, because;* cf. Lat. *enim.* *καὶ γάρ*, *for* (with implied ellipsis, see p. 200, n. 2); cf. Lat. *etenim, namque.*

Γαυλίτης, *Gaulītes.*

γέ, postpositive particle, enclitic, *at least, even, indeed, surely.*

γέρων, *οντος*, *ὁ*, *old man.*

γέφῡρα, *ᾱς*, *bridge.*

γῆ, *γῆς*, *earth, land.*

γίγνομαι (*γεν-*, I., 2, *b*), *γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι, be born, become, arise, happen, take place.* Cf. Lat. *gigno, (g)nascor.*

γιγνώσκω (*γνο-*, VI. *b*), *γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, recognize, perceive, know, learn.* Cf. Lat. *(g)nosco. Know.* Agnostic.

γνώμη, *ης*, *judgment, opinion, plan.*

γράφω (I., 2, *a*), *γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην, make a mark, draw, write.* Graphic. Biography. Paragraph.

γυμνής, *ῆτος*, } *light-armed foot-*
γυμνήτης, *ου*, } *soldier.*

γυνή, *γυναικός*, *ἡ*, *woman, wife.* Misogynist.

Δ.

δαίμων, *ονος*, *ὁ*, *divinity.* Demon.

δαπανάω (I., 1, *c*), *spend, consume.*

δᾶρεικός, *daric* (a gold coin, worth about $5.50).

δασμός, *οῦ*, *tax, tribute.*

Δᾶρεῖος, *ου*, *Darīus.*

δέ, postpositive conj., *but;* *μέν . . . δέ*, *on the one hand . . . on the other.*

δέδοικα, perfect with present meaning (*δ(ϝ)ι-*, II.), present, *δείδω*, not being used in prose; *ἔδεισα, δέδοικα*, and *δέδια, be afraid, fear.*

δείκνῡμι (*δεικ-*, V. *e*), *δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην, point out, show, indicate.* Cf. Lat. *dīco.* Paradigm.

δεινός, *ή*, *όν*, *fearful, terrible, skilful.* Substantive, *δεινόν, οῦ, danger.*

δειπνέω (I., 1, *c*), *dine.*

δέκα, *ten.* Cf. Lat. *decem. Ten.* Decade. Decalogue.

δένδρον, *ου*, *tree.* Rhododendron. Dendrology.

Δεξίλεως, *ω*, *Dexilāus.*

δεξιός, *ά*, *όν*, *right;* *ἐν (τῇ) δεξιᾷ*, *on the right;* *τὸ δεξιόν*, *the right (wing).* Cf. Lat. *dexter.*

δεύτερος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *second.* Deuteronomy.

δέχομαι (I., 2, *a*), *δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, receive, accept; allow; withstand.*

δέω[1] (I., 2, *d*), *δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, need,* rare in act.; mid., *need, desire, beg, ask;* takes the gen. *δεῖ*, impers., *it is necessary, one must.*

δή, postpositive particle, *truly, surely, exactly, accordingly.*

δῆλος, *η*, *ον*, *evident, clear.*

δηλόω (I., 1, *c*), *make evident.*

διά, prep., with gen., *through;* with acc., *on account of.*

διαβαίνω (V. *a*), *go through* or *over, cross.*

[1] *δέω*, although it has a vowel theme, is inserted in this class for convenience.

διαβάλλω (IV. *c*), *throw across; accuse falsely, slander.*

διᾱκόσιοι, *αι, α, two hundred.*

διαπράττω (IV, *a*), *work out, accomplish, effect.* Often in mid. with same meaning as active.

διαρπάζω (IV. *b*), *plunder thoroughly, seize.*

διατίθημι (VII. *b*), *put in order, arrange, dispose.*

διατρίβω (*τριβ-*, I., 2, *a*), *-τρῑ́ψω, -έτρῑ-ψα, -τέτριφα, -τέτρῑμμαι, -ετρίβην, rub through, waste (time), spend.*

διδάσκω (*διδαχ-*, VI. *a*), *διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδι-δάχθην, teach, inform, show.*

δίδωμι (*δο-*, VII. *b*), *δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέ-δωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην, give; allow; offer.* Antidote.

διέχω (I., 2, *a*), *hold apart; be apart, be distant.*

δίκαιος, *ᾱ, ον, just, right, proper.*

δίκη, *ης, justice, one's desert; trial; δίκην ἔχω, receive satisfaction, receive punishment.*

δισχίλιοι, *αι, α, two thousand.*

διώκω (I., 2, *a*), *διώξω, ἐδίωξα, δε-δίωχα, ἐδιώχθην, pursue, chase.*

δοκέω (*δοκ-*, I., 2, *c*), *δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέ-δογμαι, ἐδόχθην, seem, seem good, seem best; be of the opinion.* Orthodox. Paradox.

δόρυ, *δόρατος, τό, shaft, spear.*

δρόμος, *ου, running, race; θέω δρόμῳ, advance on a run.* Dromedary.

δύναμαι (VII. *a*), *δυνήσομαι, δεδύνη-μαι, ἐδυνήθην, be able, can, have the power.* Dynamics.

δύναμις, *-εως, ἡ, ability, power, force; εἰς* or *κατὰ δύναμιν, according to one's ability, as much as one can.*

δυνατός, *ή, όν, able, powerful, possible.*

δύο, *δυοῖν, two.* Cf. Lat. *duo*, Germ. *zwei. Two.*

δύω (I., 1, *d*) or *δύνω, δύσω, ἔδῡσα* and *ἔδῡν, enter; set; ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι, at sunset.*

δῶρον, *ου, gift.* Dorothy. Theodore.

E.

ἐάν, *ἤν*, or *ἄν* (*εἰ* + *ἄν*), conditional conj. used with subjv., *if.*

ἑαυτοῦ, *ῆς, οῦ*, reflex. pronoun, *of himself, herself*, or *itself.*

ἐάω (I., 1, *b*), *ἐάσω, εἴᾱσα, εἴᾱκα, εἴᾱ-μαι, εἰάθην, permit, allow; let go; let alone.*

ἐγώ, *ἐμοῦ* or *μοῦ*, pers. pron., *I.* Cf. Lat. *ego.* Egoist.

ἔγωγε, *I at least.*

ἐθέλω or **θέλω** (I., 2, *d*), *ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, be willing, wish.*

εἰ, conj., *if.*

εἴκοσι (for *ϝεικοσι*, cf. Lat. *vīgintī*), *twenty.*

εἰμί (*ἐσ-*, VII. *a*), *ἔσομαι*, impf. *ἦν*, *be, exist.* Cf. Lat. *esse.*

εἶμι (*ἰ-*, VII. *a*), impf. *ᾔα* or *ᾖειν*, *go, come.* Cf. Lat. *ire.*

εἶπον, 2d aor., the pres. *ἔρω* (VIII.) not being found in Attic; fut. *ἐρῶ*, pf. *εἴρηκα*, pf. mid. *εἴρημαι*, aor. pass. *ἐρρήθην, say, speak, tell; order.* Takes *ὅτι* constructions. Theme *ϝεπ-*, cf. Lat. *voc-*.

εἰς, prep. with acc., *into, to, against.*

εἷς, *μία, ἕν, one.*

εἴσω, adv., *within, inside of.* Esoteric.

εἶτα, adv., *then, next, furthermore.*

ἐκ (before a vowel, *ἐξ*), prep. with gen., *out of, from, after.* Cf. Lat. *ē* or *ex.*

ἕκαστος, *η, ον, each, every.*

ἑκατόν, *one hundred.* Cf. Lat. *centum. Hundred.* Hecatompedon. Hectograph.

ἐκβαίνω (V. *a*), *go out* or *forth, disembark.*

ἐκβάλλω (IV. *c*), *throw out, exile.*

ἐκεῖ, adv., *there.*

ἐκεῖνος, η, ο, demon. pron., *that.*

ἐκπίπτω (I., 2, *b*), *fall out, fall off;* used as pass. of **ἐκβάλλω**, *be thrown out, be exiled.*

ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα, ἑκόν, *willing, of one's own will; voluntarily.*

ἐλάττων, ἐλάχιστος, compar. and superl. of **μῑκρός.**

ἐλαύνω (ἐλα-, V. *a*), ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην, *drive; ride; march.* Elastic.

ἐλευθερίᾱ, ᾱς, *freedom, liberty.*

Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ, Hellas, *Greece.*

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ, *a Greek.* Hellenism.

Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν, Hellenic, *Greek.*

Ἑλλήσποντος, ου, *Hellespont,* the modern Dardanelles.

ἐλπίς, ίδος, ἡ, *hope;* **ἐν ἐλπίσιν εἰμί**, *be hopeful.*

ἐμαυτοῦ, ῆς, reflex. pron., *of myself.*

ἐμβάλλω (IV. *c*), *rush into, invade, attack.*

ἐμός, ή, όν, poss. pron., *my.*

ἐν, prep. with dat., *in, on.*

ἐναντίος, ᾱ, ον, *opposite; hostile.* Used as substantive, **οἱ ἐναντίοι**, *the enemy.*

ἔνδον, adv., *within, inside.* Endogen.

ἕνεκα, prep. with gen., usually after its case, *on account of.*

ἔνθα, adv., *there, here, thereupon, where.*

ἐννοέω (**νοῦς**; I., 1, *c*), *have in mind, consider; devise.*

ἐνταῦθα, adv., *here, there; then; hereupon, thereupon.*

ἐντεῦθεν, adv., *thence, from this place.*

ἐντυγχάνω (V. *c*), *happen upon; come upon, meet, find.*

ἐξαιτέω (I., 1, *c*), *ask something from one;* mid., *intercede for.*

ἕξ, *six.* Cf. Lat. *sex. Six.*

ἑξακόσιοι, αι, α, *six hundred.*

ἐξαπατάω (I., 1, *c*), *deceive thoroughly, cheat.*

ἔξειμι (VII. *a*), used only as impers. **ἔξεστι**, *it is possible* or *permitted.*

ἐξελαύνω (V. *a*), *drive out; march forth, proceed.*

ἔξω, adv., *outside;* prep. with gen., *outside of, without, beyond.* Exoteric. Exogen.

ἔοικα (**ϝικ-**, II.), a 2d pf. used as a pres., *be like, seem;* **ὡς ἔοικε**, *as it seems likely.*

ἐπεί, conj., *when, since.*

ἐπειδή, conj., *when, since.*

ἔπειμι (**εἶμι**, VII. *a*), *go on, advance, come on;* **ἡ ἐπιοῦσα ἡμέρα**, *the next day.*

ἔπειτα, adv., *thereupon, then.*

ἐπί, prep., with gen., *upon, in the time of;* **ἐπὶ τεττάρων**, *four deep;* with dat., *upon, near, in addition to, in the power of;* with acc., *to, toward, against.*

ἐπιβουλεύω (I., 1, *d*), *plan* or *plot against.* Takes dat.

ἐπιβουλή, ῆς, *a plan* or *plot against, plot.*

ἐπιθῡμέω (I., 1, *c*), *set one's heart upon, desire, long for.*

ἐπικρύπτω (**κρυφ-**, III.), **-κρύψω, -ἔκρυψα, -κέκρυμμαι, -ἐκρύφθην**, *conceal thoroughly, hide.* Crypt.

ἐπιμελέομαι (I., 1, *c*), *care for, give attention to.* Also **ἐπιμέλομαι** (I., 2, *d*).

ἐπίσταμαι (VII. *a*), **ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην**, *understand, know; know how.*

ἐπιτήδειος, ᾱ, ον, *suitable, fit, convenient;* **τὰ ἐπιτήδεια**, *provisions.*

ἐπιτίθημι (VII. *b*), *put upon, inflict;* mid., *fall upon, attack.* Epithet.

ἐπιτρέπω (I., 2, *a*), *turn over to, entrust.*

ἐπιχειρέω (**χείρ**; I., 1, *c*), *put one's hand to, undertake, attempt.*

ἕπομαι (**σεπ-**, I., 2, *a*), ἕψομαι, **ἑσπό-**

μην, *follow*, *go with*, *attend*. Cf. Lat. *sequor*.

ἑπτά, *seven*. Cf. Lat. *septem*. *Seven*.

ἔργον, *ου*, *work*, *deed*, *affair*. For *ϝεργον*. *Work*. Energy. George.

ἔρημος, *η*, *ον*, *lonely*, *deserted*; *unoccupied*. Hermit.

ἑρμηνεύς, *έως*, *ὁ* (*Ἑρμῆς*), *interpreter*. Hermeneutic.

Ἑρμῆς, *οῦ*, *Hermes*.

ἔρχομαι (*ἐρχ-*, *ἐλυθ-*, VIII.), *ἐλεύσομαι*, *ἦλθον*, *ἐλήλυθα*, *come*, *go*.

ἐρωτάω (I., 1, *c*), *ἐρωτήσω*, *ἠρόμην*, *ask*, *ask about*, *inquire*. (The form *ἠρόμην* corresponds to the pres. *ἔρομαι*, not used in Attic, to which *ἐρωτάω* is also related.)

ἕστε, adv., *even to*; conj., *until*; *while*.

ἕτερος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *the other*, *one* (of two); without the article, *another*. Heterodox.

ἔτι, adv., *yet*, *still*; *besides*, *moreover*.

ἔτος, *ους*, *τό*, *year*. Etesian. For *ϝετος*, cf. Lat. *vetus*.

εὖ, adv., *well*; *εὖ ποιῶ*, *do good to*.

εὐδαίμων, *ον*, *of good fortune*, *fortunate*, *happy*, *prosperous*.

εὐθύς, adv., *immediately*, *straightway*.

εὐνοϊκῶς, adv., *with good will*, *in a kindly manner*. *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν*, *be well disposed*.

εὔνους, *ουν*, *well disposed*, *friendly*, *kindly*.

εὑρίσκω (*εὑρ-*, VI. *a*), *εὑρήσω*, *ηὗρον*, *ηὕρηκα*, *ηὕρημαι*, *ηὑρέθην*, *find*, *discover*.

εὖρος, *ους*, *τό*, *width*.

Εὐφράτης, *ου*, *the Euphrates*.

εὔχομαι (I., 2, *a*), *εὔξομαι*, *ηὐξάμην*, *pray*, *wish*, *vow*.

εὐώνυμος, *ον* (*εὖ*+*ὄνομα*), *of good name*; a euphemism for *left*. Substan., *τὸ εὐώνυμον*, *the left* (*wing*).

ἐφέπομαι (I., 2, *a*), *follow after*, *pursue*, *attack*.

Ἔφεσος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *Ephesus*.

ἐχθρός, *ά*, *όν*, *hateful*, *hostile*. As a substantive, *a* (*personal*) *enemy*. Cf. Lat. *inimīcus*.

ἔχω (*σεχ-*, I., 2, *a*), *ἕξω* or *σχήσω*, *ἔσχον*, *ἔσχηκα*, *ἔσχημαι*, *have*, *hold*, *possess*, *keep*.

ἕως, adv., *even to*; conj., *until*, *as long as*, *while*.

Z.

Ζαπάτας, *ου*, *the Zapatas*, a tributary of the Tigris.

ζάω (I., 1, *c*), *live*, *be alive*. Zoölogy.

Ζεύς, *Διός*, *ὁ*, *Zeus*. Cf. Lat. *Iovis* for *Diovis*.

H.

ἤ, conj., *or*; *ἠ . . . ἤ*, *either . . . or*. With comparatives, *than*.

ἦ, adv., *in truth*, *really*; *ἦ μήν* (often in oaths), *in very truth*.

ᾗ (sc. *ὁδῷ*), *in which way*, *where*, *how*.

ἡγεμών, *όνος*, *ὁ*, *leader*, *guide*.

ἡγέομαι (I., 1, *c*), *ἡγήσομαι*, *ἡγησάμην*, *ἥγημαι*, *ἡγήθην*, *lead* (takes the dat.); *consider*, *think*.

ἡδέως, adv., *pleasantly*, *gladly*.

ἤδη, adv., *now*, *already*.

ἥδομαι (*ἡδ-*, I., 2, *a*), *ἡσθήσομαι*, *ἥσθην*, *be glad*, *delight in*, *be pleased*. Cf. *ἡδύς*.

ἡδύς, *εῖα*, *ύ*, *sweet*, *pleasant*; for *ϝηδυς*, cf. Lat. *suāvis*. *Sweet*.

ἥκω (I., 2, *a*), *ἥξω*, *be come*, *have come*, *be present*.

ἥλιος, *ου*, *sun*. Heliotrope.

ἧμαι (*ἡσ-*, VII. *a*), *sit*.

ἡμέρα, *ᾱς*, *day*. Ephemeral.

ἡμέτερος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, poss. pron., *our*.

ἤν, see *ἐάν*.

ἡττάομαι (I., 1, *c*), *be less*, *be surpassed*, *be outdone*, *be conquered*.

ἧττων, *ον*, compar. of *κακός*.

Θ.

θάλαττα, *ης*, *sea*.

θάπτω (*ταφ-*, for *θαφ-*, III.), *θάψω*, *ἔθαψα*, *τέθαμμαι*, *ἐτάφην*, *bury*. Epitaph.

θαρρέω (I., 1, *c*), *θαρρήσω*, *ἐθάρρησα*, *τεθάρρηκα*, *be courageous*, *take courage*.

θαυμάζω (*θαυμαδ-*, IV. *b*), *θαυμάσομαι*, *ἐθαύμασα*, *τεθαύμακα*, *ἐθαυμάσθην*, *wonder at*, *admire*.

θεός, *οῦ*, *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *god*, *goddess*.

Θετταλίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *Thessaly*.

Θετταλός, *οῦ*, *a Thessalian*.

θέω (*θεϝ-*, II.), *θεύσομαι*, *run*; *θέω δρόμῳ*, *advance on a run*.

θνῄσκω (*θαν-*, VI. *a*), *θανοῦμαι*, *ἔθανον*, *τέθνηκα*, *die*; used as pass. of *κτείνω*, *be killed*, *be put to death*.

θόρυβος, *ου*, *noise*, *uproar*.

Θρᾷξ, *κός*, *ὁ*, *a Thracian*.

θύρᾱ, *ᾱς*, *door*. Cf. Lat. *fora*, Germ. *Thür*. *Door*.

θύω (I., 1, *e*), *θύσω*, *ἔθυσα*, *τέθυκα*, *τέθυμαι*, *ἐτύθην*, *sacrifice*.

I.

ἱερός, *ά*, *όν*, *holy*, *sacred*; *τὰ ἱερά*, *sacred rites*, *sacrifices*. Hierarchy.

ἵημι (*ἑ-*, VII. *b*), *ἥσω*, *εἷκα*, *εἶμαι*, *εἵθην*, *send*, *throw*, *strike*; mid., *send* or *throw oneself*, *rush*.

ἱκανός, *ή*, *όν*, *coming up to*, *sufficient*, *competent*, *able*.

ἵλεως, *ων*, *gracious*, *propitious*.

ἵνα, final conj., *that*, *in order that*.

ἱππεύς, *έως*, *ὁ*, *horseman*; plur., *cavalry*.

ἵππος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *horse*, *mare*. *ἀφ'* or *ἐφ' ἵππου*, *on horseback*. Hippodrome. Hippopotamus.

ἴσος, *η*, *ον*, *equal*. Isosceles.

ἵστημι (*στα-*, VII. *b*), *στήσω*, *ἔστησα* and *ἔστην*, *ἕστηκα*, *ἕσταμαι*, *ἐστάθην*, *cause to stand*, *set*, *place*, *stop*; intrans. forms (**455**), *stand*, *halt*.

ἰσχῡρός, *ά*, *όν*, *strong*, *severe*.

ἰσχῡρῶς, adv., *strongly*, *extremely*.

ἴσως, adv., *equally*; *perhaps*.

ἰχθύς, *ύος*, *ὁ*, *fish*. Ichthyology.

Ἰωνικός, *ή*, *όν*, *Ionian*.

K.

κάθημαι (VII. *a*), *sit down*; *be encamped*.

καθίστημι (VII. *b*), *set down*, *settle*, *establish*; *arrange*.

καί, conj., *and*; *also*; *even*; *καί . . . καί* or *τέ . . . καί*, *both . . . and*; *καί . . . δέ*, *and also*.

καίπερ, conj., with the partic., *although*.

καιρός, *οῦ*, *fitting time*, *opportunity*; *ἐν καιρῷ*, *opportunely*, *seasonably*.

κακός, *ή*, *όν*, *bad*, *wicked*, *base*; *cowardly*.

κακῶς, adv., *badly*.

καλέω (*καλε-*, *κλη-*, I., 1, *e*), *καλῶ*, *ἐκάλεσα*, *κέκληκα*, *κέκλημαι*, *ἐκλήθην*, *call*, *summon*; *name*.

καλός, *ή*, *όν*, *beautiful*; *honorable*, *noble*; *favorable*.

καλῶς, *beautifully*; *nobly*; *well*; *bravely*; *καλῶς ἔχει*, *it is well*, *it is right*.

Καστωλός, *οῦ*, *ἡ*, *Castōlus*, near Sardis.

κατά, prep., with gen., *down from*, *down*; with acc., *down along*, *along*, *throughout*; *opposite*, *against*. Catarrh. Catastrophe.

καταβαίνω (V. *a*), *go down*, *descend*; *march back to the coast*.

κατάβασις, *εως*, *ἡ*, *a going down*, *descent*, *march back to the coast*. Catabasis.

καταγελάω (I., 1, *a*), *-γελάσομαι*,

-εγέλασα, -εγελάσθην, laugh at, ridicule; mock.

κατάγω (I., 2, *a*), *lead down, bring down; restore to one's home; land.*

κατακαίνω (*καν-*, IV. *c*), *-κανῶ, -έκανον, -κέκονα, cut down, kill, slay.*

καταλαμβάνω (V. *c*), *seize upon, overtake, come upon, surprise.* Catalepsy.

καταλείπω (II.), *leave behind, desert, abandon.*

καταλύω (I., 1, *e*) *unloose, loose thoroughly; make a halt; make peace* (sometimes with *πόλεμον* added).

καταντιπέρᾱς, adv. used as prep. with gen., *over against, directly opposite.*

κᾰ́ω or **καίω** (*καϝ-*, IV. *d*), *καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην, burn, kindle, set fire to.* Caustic.

κεῖμαι (*κει-*, VII. *a*), *κείσομαι, lie, lie dead;* used as pass. of *τίθημι, be placed, be laid, be situated.*

κελεύω (I., 1, *d*), *κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην, order, command; urge, request.*

κέρας, *κέρᾱτος* or *κέρως, τό, horn, wing.* Rhinoceros.

κεφαλή, *ῆς, head.* Cephalic. Cephalopod.

κῆρυξ, *ῡκος, ὁ, herald.*

κίνδῡνος, *ου, danger, peril.*

Κλέαρχος, *ου, Clearchus,* a Lacedaemonian general who assisted Cyrus.

κλέπτω (*κλεπ-*, III.), *κλέψω, ἔκλεψα, κέκλοφα, κέκλεμμαι, ἐκλάπην, steal.* Kleptomania.

κοινός, *ή, όν, common, public.* Epicene.

κρατέω (I., 1, *c*), *be powerful, have the power, rule over, rule; conquer.* Democrat.

κραυγή, *ῆς, shout, cry, clamor.*

κρίνω (*κριν-*, IV. *c*), *κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην, distinguish, pick out; decide, judge, try* (a case). Criterion. Critic.

κτάομαι (I., 1, *c*), *κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι, ἐκτήθην, acquire, get;* pf. *have acquired, possess.*

κύκλος, *ου, circle;* *κύκλῳ*, adv., *in a circle.* Cycle. Encyclopedia.

Κῦρος, *ου, Cyrus,* the younger brother of King Artaxerxes; *Κῦρος ὁ ἀρχαῖος, Cyrus the Elder,* founder of the Persian Empire.

κωλύω (I., 1, *d*), *prevent, hinder, check.*

κωμάρχης, *ου* (*κώμη* + *ἄρχω*), *village-chief.*

κώμη, *ης, village.*

Λ.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, *a Lacedaemonian.*

λαμβάνω (*λαβ-*, V. *c*), *λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, take, seize; take possession of; take hold of.*

λανθάνω (*λαθ-*, V. *c*), *λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα, λέλησμαι, escape the notice of; lie hid, be concealed.* Lethe.

λέγω (I., 2, *a*), *λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην, say, tell, speak of, bid.*

λείπω (*λιπ-*, II.), *λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην, leave, forsake; abandon; leave behind.* Eclipse.

λίθος, *ου, stone.* Lithograph.

λόγος, *ου, word, statement, speech; opinion; argument.* Logic. Dialogue. Biology.

λόγχη, *ης, spear-point; spear, lance.*

λοιπός, *ή, όν, left, remaining;* plur., *rest of.*

λόφος, *ου, crest* (of a hill or helmet), *hill, height.*

λοχᾱγός, *οῦ* (*λόχος* + *ἄγω*), *leader of a λόχος, company-commander, captain.*

λόχος, *ου*, *company.*

λύω (I., 1, *e*), λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην, *loose, unyoke, destroy, break;* mid., *ransom.* Analysis.

M.

μά, intensive particle, used in oaths, *no by.*

μάλα, adv., *very, very much;* compar. μᾶλλον, *more, rather;* superl. μάλιστα, *most, especially.*

μάντις, *εως*, *ὁ*, *a man inspired, prophet, soothsayer.*

μάχη, *ης*, *fight, battle.*

μάχομαι (μαχ-, μαχε-, I., 2, *d*), μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι, *fight, fight with* or *against, give battle; quarrel.* Logomachy.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *great, large; important; renowned.* Megatherium.

μέλει (I., 2, *d*), μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, impers., *it is a care, it concerns.*

μέλλω (I., 2, *d*), μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, *be about to, be going to; intend; delay.*

μέν, postpositive particle, *truly, indeed,* but is usually not translated; μέν . . . δέ, *on the one hand . . . on the other,* but usually rendered simply by emphasis.

μένω (I., 2, *d*), μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα, *remain, tarry; wait for, wait.*

Μένων, *ωνος*, *ὁ*, *Menon,* a Thessalian general who assisted Cyrus.

μέρος, *ους*, *τό*, *part, share.*

μέσος, *η*, *ον*, *middle, middle of.* Cf. Lat. *medius. Middle.* Mesopotamia.

μετά, prep., with gen., *with, in company with;* with acc., *after.* Metaphysics.

μεταπέμπω (I., 2, *a*), *send after, send for;* mid., *summon.*

μέχρι, adv., *even to;* prep. with gen., *up to, as far as, until;* conj., *until.*

μή, adv., *not.*

μηδέ, conj. and adv., *and not, but not, nor.*

μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, *no one, nobody, nothing.*

μηκέτι, adv., *not again, no longer.*

μήν, postpositive adv., *truly, indeed, however.*

μήν, μηνός, *ὁ*, *month.* Cf. Lat. *mensis. Month.*

μήποτε, adv., *not ever, never.*

μήτε, conj., *and not, nor;* μήτε . . . μήτε, *neither . . . nor.*

μήτηρ, μητρός, *ἡ*, *mother.* Cf. Lat. *mater*, Germ. *Mutter*, Eng. *mother.* Metropolis.

μῑκρός, ᾱ, *ον*, *small, little; short; insignificant.* Microscope.

Μῑλήσιος, ᾱ, *ον*, *Milesian.*

Μίλητος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *Milētus*, a city of Ionia.

μιμνῄσκω (μνα-, VI. *b*), μνήσω, ἔμνησα, μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην, *remind, make mention of;* mid. and pass. with pf. act., *remember.* Cf. Lat. *memini.*

μισθός, *οῦ*, *pay, wages; reward.*

μνᾶ, μνᾶς, *a mina*, an amount of silver about equal to $18.

μόνος, *η*, *ον*, *alone, only;* μόνον, adv., *only.* Monarch. Monogram. Monopoly.

Μοῦσα, *ης*, Muse.

μύριοι, *αι*, *α*, *ten thousand.*

N.

νάπη, *ης*, *ravine, glen.*

ναῦς, νεώς, *ἡ*, *ship.* Cf. Lat. *navis.* Nautical. Nausea.

νεᾱνίᾱς, *ου*, *ὁ*, *young man.*

νεκρός, *ου*, *corpse*. Necrology.
νέος, *ᾱ*, *ον* (for *νεϝος*; cf. Lat. *novus*), *new*, *young*. Neophyte.
νεώς, *ώ*, *temple*.
νή, intensive particle, used in oaths, *yes by*.
νῆσος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *island*. Peloponnēsus.
νῑκάω (I., 1, *c*), *conquer*, *surpass*, *excel*.
νίκη, *ης*, *victory*.
νομίζω (*νομιδ-*, IV. *b*), *νομιῶ*, *ἐνόμισα*, *etc.*, *regard as a custom*, *consider*, *suppose*, *think*.
νόμος, *ου*, *custom*, *law*. Astronomy. Economy.
νοῦς, *νοῦ*, *mind*; *ἐν νῷ ἔχω*, *have in mind*, *intend*.
νῦν, adv., *now*, *at present*, *just now*; *οἱ νῦν*, *the men of to-day*.
νύξ, *νυκτός*, *ἡ*, *night*; *νυκτός*, *by night*. Cf. Lat. *nox*, Germ. *Nacht*. *Night*.

Ξ.

Ξενίᾶς, *ου*, *Xenias*, a general from Parrhasia, in Arcadia.
ξένιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *hospitable*; *Ζεὺς ξένιος*, *Zeus*, *protector of guests*.
ξένος, *ου*, *stranger*; *guest-friend*,[1] *guest*, *host*; *mercenary*.
Ξενοφῶν, *ῶντος*, *ὁ*, *Xenophon*, an Athenian, historian of Cyrus's expedition.
Ξέρξης, *ου*, *Xerxes*.
ξύλον, *ου*, *wood*, *piece of wood*; *timber*; *fuel*. Xylophone.

O.

ὁ, *ἡ*, *τό*, def. article, *the*; *ὁ δέ*, *and he*, *but he*, referring to a word in the preceding clause not the subject.
ὅδε, *ἥδε*, *τόδε*, demons. pron., *this*, *the following*.
ὁδός, *οῦ*, *ἡ*, *road*. Exodus. Period.
οἶδα (*ϝιδ-*, II.), 2d pf. used as a pres., *know*, *understand*. Cf. Lat. *video*, *Germ. wissen*. *Wit*.
οἴκαδε, adv., *homeward*, *home*.
οἰκέω (I., 1, *c*), *dwell*, *live*, *inhabit*.
οἰκίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *dwelling*, *house*.
οἴκοι, adv., *at home*.
οἶκος, *ου*, *abode*, *home*, *house*.
οἶνος, *ου*, *wine*. For *ϝοῖνος*, cf. Lat. *vinum*. *Wine*.
οἶομαι or **οἴμαι** (I., 2, *d*), *οἰήσομαι*, *ᾠήθην*, *think*, *suppose*, *believe*. Takes infin.
οἷος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *such*, *such as*; *οἷός τε*, *able*.
οἴχομαι (I., 2, *d*), *οἰχήσομαι*, *be gone*, *have gone*; *be lost*.
ὀκτώ, *eight*. Octagon.
ὀλίγος, *η*, *ον*, *little*, *small*; plur., *few*. Oligarchy.
ὅλος, *η*, *ον*, *whole*, *all*, *entire*. Holocaust.
ὄμνῡμι (*ὀμ-*, *ὀμο-*, V. *e*), *ὀμοῦμαι*, *ὤμοσα*, *ὀμώμοκα*, *ὀμώμοσμαι*, *ὠμόσθην*, *swear*, *take an oath*.
ὁμολογέω (I., 1, *c*), *say the same thing*, *agree*, *admit*.
ὅμως, adv., *nevertheless*; *yet*, *however*.
ὄνομα, *ατος*, *τό*, *name*. Synonym.
ὅπῃ, adv., *in what way*; *where*; *how*; *whither*.
ὄπισθεν, adv., *from behind*, *behind*, *from the rear*; *οἱ ὄπισθεν*, *those in the rear*.
ὀπισθοφύλαξ, *ακος*, *ὁ* (*ὄπισθεν* + *φύλαξ*), *rear-guard*.

---

[1] The term *ξένος* means a friend in a foreign state. *ξένοι* entertained each other, and each in his own state looked after the interests of the other. Guest-friend is not yet an accepted English word, and, it is to be hoped, will not become so.

ὁπλίτης, ου, *heavy-armed soldier*, hoplite.
ὅπλον, ου, *implement*; plur., *arms, armor*. Panoply.
ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron., *of what sort; such as.*
ὁπόσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *how much* or *many, how great; as much as.*
ὁπότε, rel. adv., *when, at the time when.*
ὅπως, final conj., *in order, that; how.*
ὁράω (ὁρα-, ὀπ-, ϝιδ-, VIII.), ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑόρᾱκα or ἑώρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱμαι or ὦμμαι, ὤφθην, *see, look at, perceive.* Panorama.
ὄρθιος, ᾱ, ον, *straight up, steep.*
ὅρκος, ου, *oath.* Exorcise.
ὁρμάω (I., 1, *c*), *hasten on, rush; start.*
ὄρος, ους, τό, *mountain.* Oread.
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, rel. pron., *who, which, what.*
ὅσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *as many as, as great as; how many, how great.*
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ (stronger form of ὅς), *who (indeed), what (indeed).*
ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, *whoever, whichever, whatever.*
ὀστοῦν, οῦ, *bone.*
ὅτε, conj., *when.*
ὅτι, conj., *that; because.*
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, adv., *not.*
οὗ, pers. pron., *of him, of her, of it.*
οὐδέ, as conj., *and not, but not, nor; οὐδέ . . . οὐδέ, neither . . . nor*; as an adv., *not even, not at all.*
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, *no one, nobody, nothing*; οὐδέν, adv. acc., *not at all.*
οὐκέτι, adv., *not again, no longer.*
οὐκοῦν, adv., *not therefore, not then.* It is often used to introduce a question expecting an affirmative answer.
οὖν, postpositive adv., *therefore, then.*
οὔποτε, adv., *not ever, never.*
οὔπω, adv., *not yet.*
οὔτε, conj., *and not, nor; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor.*
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, demons. pron., *this*; sometimes as a pers. pron., *he, she, it.*
οὕτω, before a vowel οὕτως, *thus, in this way, so.*
ὄχλος, ου, *crowd; tumult; annoyance.*

Π.

παῖς, παιδός, gen. dual παίδοιν, gen. plur. παίδων, ὁ or ἡ, *child; boy, girl; son, daughter.* Pedagogue.
παίω (I., 1, *d*), παίσω, ἔπαισα, πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην, *strike, beat, hit; strike at.*
πάλιν, adv., *back, again, back again.*
πάνυ, adv., *very, very much.*
παρά, prep., with gen., *from the side of, from*; with dat., *by the side of, at, by, with*; with acc., *to the side of, to; contrary to.*
παραγγέλλω (IV. *c*), *pass the word along, make an announcement, give an order.*
παραγίγνομαι (I., 2, *b*), *be by the side of, come, arrive.*
παρακαλέω (I., 1, *e*), *call to one's side, summon, exhort, urge.*
παρασάγγης, ου, *a parasang*, three and one-third miles.
παρασκευάζω (IV. *b*), *get ready, prepare, procure.*
πάρειμι (εἰμί; VII. *a*), *be by the side, be present, arrive.*
παρέρχομαι (VIII.), *go by the side of, go past, go along, pass by.*
παρέχω (I., 2, *a*), *have by the side, provide, furnish; grant.*
Παρράσιος, ου, *a Parrhasian.*
Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ, *Parysatis*, mother of Artaxerxes and Cyrus.

πᾶς, *πᾶσα*, *πᾶν*, gen. and dat. plur. masc. and neut. not oxytone (*πάντων* and *πᾶσι*), *all, the whole; every.* Panoply. Pantheism.

πάσχω (*παθ-*, *πενθ-*, VI. *a*), *πείσομαι*, *ἔπαθον*, *πέπονθα*, *experience, suffer; be treated.* Paschal. Sympathy.

πατήρ, *πατρός*, *ὁ*, *father.* Cf. Lat. *pater*, Germ. *Vater*, Eng. *father.*

παύω (I., 1, *d*), *cause to cease, make (one) stop, bring to an end;* mid., *cease, stop.* Pause.

πεδίον, *ου*, *plain.*

πεζός, *ἡ*, *όν*, *on foot; οἱ πεζοί, infantry; πεζῇ, on foot.*

πείθω (*πιθ-*, II.), *πείσω*, *ἔπεισα*, *πέπεικα* and (intrans.) *πέποιθα*, *πέπεισμαι*, *ἐπείσθην*, *persuade, induce;* mid., *obey, yield.*

πειράομαι (I., 1, *b*), mid. and pass. depon., *try, attempt; make a trial of.* Cf. Lat. *experior.* Empirical. Pirate.

Πελοποννήσιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *Peloponnesian.*

Πελοπόννησος, *ου*, *ἡ*, *Peloponnēsus.*

πελταστής, *οῦ*, *one who carries the πέλτη, targeteer,* peltast.

πέλτη, *ης*, a light crescent-shaped shield carried by the peltasts, *shield, target.*

πέμπω (I., 2, *a*), *πέμψω*, *ἔπεμψα*, *πέπομφα*, *πέπεμμαι*, *ἐπέμφθην*, *send; send a message.*

πέντε, *five.* Cf. Lat. *quinque. Five.* Pentateuch.

πεντήκοντα, *fifty.* Pentecost.

περαίνω (*περαν-*, IV. *c*), *περανῶ*, *ἐπέρᾱνα*, *πεπέρασμαι*, *ἐπεράνθην*, *bring to an end, finish, accomplish.*

περί, prep., with gen., *about, concerning;* with acc., *about, near; περὶ πλείστου, of the greatest importance.* Perimeter. Peripatetic.

περιγίγνομαι (I., 2, *b*), *be superior, surpass, conquer.*

πέτρᾱ, *ᾱς*, *rock, crag, ledge.* Peter. Petrify.

πηγή, *ῆς*, *fountain, spring;* plur., *sources.*

πιέζω (*πιεδ-*, IV. *b*), *πιέσω*, *ἐπίεσα*, *ἐπιέσθην*, *pinch, press hard; oppress.*

πίμπλημι (*πλα-*, VII. *b*), *πλήσω*, *ἔπλησα*, *πέπληκα*, *πέπλησμαι*, *ἐπλήσθην*, *fill.* Cf. Lat. *pleo, plēnus.*

πίπτω (*πετ-*, *πτο-*, I., 2, *b*), *πεσοῦμαι*, *ἔπεσον*, *πέπτωκα*, *fall.* Symptom.

Πῐσίδης, *ου*, *a Pisidian.*

πιστεύω (I., 1, *d*), *put trust in, trust; believe.*

πιστός, *ἡ*, *όν*, *trusty, faithful.*

πλέθρον, *ου*, *a* plethrum (about one hundred feet).

πλέω (*πλεϝ-*, II.), *πλεύσομαι* or *πλευσοῦμαι*, *ἔπλευσα*, *πέπλευκα*, *πέπλευσμαι*, *sail.*

πλῆθος, *ους*, *τό*, *number, amount, mass, multitude.* Plethora.

πλήν, prep. with gen., *except.*

πλοῖον, *ου*, *boat, ship.*

ποιέω (I., 1, *c*), *make, do; effect; accomplish.* Poet.

πολεμέω (I., 1, *c*), *make war, do battle.* Polemic.

πολέμιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *hostile; οἱ πολέμιοι, the enemy.*

πόλεμος, *ου*, *war; hostility.*

πολιορκέω (I., 1, *c*), *besiege.*

πόλις, *εως*, *ἡ*, *city, state.* Politics.

πολύς, *πολλή*, *πολύ*, *much, many; large, great.* For comparison, see **489**, 6. Polygamy. Polysyllable.

πορείᾱ, *ᾱς*, *a going, march, journey.*

πορεύω (I., 1, *d*), *make go, convey;* mid., *go, traverse, march, proceed.*

ποταμός, *οῦ*, *river.* Hippopotamus.

πότε, interr. adv., *when?*

ποτέ, indef. adv., enclitic, *at some time, ever, once.*

πότερος, ᾱ, ον, *which (of two)?* Cf. Lat. *uter.* **πότερον**, *whether.* Cf. Lat. *utrum*; **πότερον . . . ἤ**, *whether . . . or.*

ποῦ, interr. adv., *where?*

πού, indef. adv., enclitic, *anywhere, somewhere;* to qualify a statement, *perhaps, of course.*

πούς, ποδός, ὁ, *foot.* Cf. Lat. *pēs.* Cephalopod. Tripod.

πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό, *what is done, deed, act, thing;* plur. sometimes, *trouble;* **πράγματα παρέχω**, *cause trouble.* Pragmatic.

πράττω (πρᾱγ-, IV. *a*), **πρᾰ́ξω**, **ἔπρᾰξα**, **πέπρᾶγα** or **πέπρᾰχα**, **πέπρᾶγμαι**, **ἐπρᾰ́χθην**, *do, accomplish, bring about.*

πρέσβυς, εως, as adj., *old, venerable;* as noun, *old man, embassador.* Presbyterian. Priest.

πρίν, conj., *before; until.*

πρό, prep. with gen., *before* (of place and time); *in behalf of; in preference to.*

προαισθάνομαι (V. *b*), *perceive beforehand; find out.*

πρόβατον, ου, generally in plur., **τὰ πρόβατα**, *cattle, sheep.*

προδίδωμι (VII. *b*), *give over; betray, abandon.*

πρόειμι (εἶμι; VII. *a*), *go forward, proceed, advance* (from a starting-point).

πρόθῡμος, **πρόθῡμον**, *eager, zealous, ready.*

Πρόξενος, ου, *Proxenus*, a Boeotian general who assisted Cyrus.

πρός, prep., with gen., *in front of, before, from;* with dat., *at, in addition to;* with acc., *to, toward, against, with regard to.* Prosody.

πρόσειμι (εἶμι; VII. *a*), *go toward; approach, advance* (toward the goal).

προσέρχομαι (VIII.), *come on, advance, approach.*

πρόσθεν, adv., *before, in front of;* **οἱ πρόσθεν**, *those in front, the van.*

πρότερος, *former;* **πρῶτος**, *first;* compar. and superl., pos. lacking (cf. Lat. *prior, prīmus*).

πρόφασις, εως, ἡ, *pretext, excuse.*

πύλη, ης, *gate,* generally plural. Thermopylae.

πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-, V. *c*), **πεύσομαι**, **ἐπυθόμην**, **πέπυσμαι**, *learn by inquiry, inquire, learn, ascertain.*

πῦρ, πυρός, τό, *fire;* irreg. plur., **τὰ πυρά**, *fires, fire-signals.* Pyre. Pyrotechnic.

πῡρός, οῦ, usually plur., *wheat.*

πῶς, interr. adv., *how?*

πώς, indef. adv., enclitic, *somehow, in any way.*

P.

ῥᾴδιος, ᾱ, ον, *easy.* For comparison, see **489**, 7.

ῥέω (ῥυ-, II.), **ῥεύσομαι** or **ῥυήσομαι**, **ἐρρύην** (2d aor. pass. used as act.), **ἐρρύηκα**, *flow.* Rheumatism. Catarrh.

Σ.

σάλπιγξ, ιγγος, ἡ, *trumpet.*

σατράπης, ου, satrap.

σεαυτοῦ, ῆς, reflex. pron., *of yourself.*

σημαίνω (σημαν-, IV. *c*), **σημανῶ**, **ἐσήμηνα**, **σεσήμασμαι**, **ἐσημάνθην**, *make a sign, give the signal; indicate.*

σῑγή, ῆς, *silence;* **σῑγῇ**, *in silence.*

σῖτος, ου, *grain, food;* irreg. plur., **τὰ σῖτα**, *provisions.*

σκέψομαι, see **σκοπέω**.

σκευάζω (σκευαδ-, IV. *b*), *get ready; prepare.*

σκηνή, ῆς, *tent.* Scene.

σκοπέω (σκοπε-, I., 1, *c*); other systems than the pres. are formed from σκέπτομαι (σκεπ-, III.), σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, *see, see to it, look; search.* Scope. Sceptic.

σκότος, ους, τό, *darkness.*

σός, σή, σόν, poss. pron., *thy, your.*

Σοφαίνετος, ου, *Sophaenetus*, a general from Stymphālus in Arcadia.

σπένδω (σπενδ-, I., 2, *a*), σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπεισμαι, *pour a libation;* mid., *make a truce.*

σπονδή, ῆς, *libation;* plur., *truce.*

στάδιον, ου, *a stadium.*

σταθμός, οῦ, *station, stage, a day's journey.*

στέλλω (στελ-, IV. *c*), στελῶ, ἔστειλα, ἔσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, ἐστάλην, *arrange; equip; dispatch.* Apostle.

στενός, ή, όν, *narrow.* Stenography.

στράτευμα, ατος, τό, *army.*

στρατεύω (I., 1, *d*), *serve in the army, make an expedition, make war.* More often used as a middle deponent.

στρατηγός, οῦ, *general.* Strategy.

στρατιᾶ, ᾶς, *army.*

στρατιώτης, ου, *soldier.*

στρατοπεδεύω (I., 1, *d*), *encamp.* Also often a middle deponent.

στρατόπεδον, ου, *encampment, camp.*

στρατός, οῦ, *an army encamped, army.*

στρέφω (I., 2, *a*), στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστράφην, *twist, turn about, turn suddenly.* Catastrophe.

Στυμφάλιος, ου, *a Stymphalian*, from Stymphālus in Arcadia.

σύ, σοῦ, personal pron., *thou, you.* Cf. Lat. *tu.*

συγγίγνομαι (I., 2, *b*), *be with; come together, meet.*

συγκαλέω (I., 1, *e*), *call together, assemble.*

συλλαμβάνω (V. *c*), *take together, lay hold of, arrest.*

συλλέγω (I., 2, *a*), -λέξω, -έλεξα, -είλοχα, -είλεγμαι, -ελέγην, *collect, assemble.*

συλλογή, ῆς, *collection, levy.*

συμβάλλω (IV. *c*), *throw together, gather;* mid., *contribute.*

συμβουλεύω (I., 1, *d*), *plan with, advise;* mid., *ask advice, consult;* takes dat.

σύμμαχος, ου, *fighting with, allied;* as a substantive, *ally.*

συμπράττω (IV. *a*), *do with, help in doing, coöperate with.*

σύν, prep. with dat., *with, together with, with the aid of.*

Συρίᾱ, ᾱς, *Syria.*

συσκευάζω (IV. *b*), *pack up;* mid., *pack up one's baggage.*

σφενδονάω (I., 1, *c*), σφενδονήσω, ἐσφενδόνησα, *sling, use the sling.*

σφέτερος, ᾱ, ον, poss. pron., *their.*

σχεδόν, adv., *almost;* so also σχεδόν τι.

σῴζω (σωδ-, IV. *b*), σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσωμαι and σέσωσμαι, ἐσώθην, *save, rescue, preserve.* Sozodont.

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ, *Socrates.*

σωτηρίᾱ, ᾱς, *safety, deliverance, welfare.*

T.

τάξις, εως, ἡ, *arrangement, order, line of battle;* εἰς τάξιν, *in line of battle.* Syntax.

τάττω (ταγ-, IV. *a*), τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην, *draw up;* mid., *be stationed.* Tactics.

τάφρος, ου, ἡ, *ditch.*

ταχύς, εῖα, ύ, *swift, quick.*

τέ, postpositive conj., enclitic, *and;* τέ . . . καί, *both . . . and.*

τεῖχος, ους, τό, *wall, rampart.*

τελευτάω (I., 1, *c*), *end, finish; die.*
τελευτή, ῆς, *end; death.*
τέλος, ους, τό, *end, completion;* adv. acc., *finally.*
τέμνω (τεμ-, τμε-, V. *a*), τεμῶ, ἔτεμον, τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην, *cut.* Cf. Lat. *temno.* Tome. Anatomy.
τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α, *four thousand.*
τέτταρες, τέτταρα, *four.*
τίθημι (θε-, VII. *b*), θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην, *put, place;* τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι, *ground arms, stand under arms.* Thesis.
τῑμάω (I., 1, *c*), *honor.*
τῑμή, ῆς, *honor.*
τῑμωρέω (I., 1, *c*), *avenge;* mid., *avenge oneself, punish.*
τίς, τί, interr. pron., *who? what?*
τις, τι, indef. pron., enclitic, *some, any.*
Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ, *Tissaphernes.*
τιτρώσκω (τρο-, VI. *b*), τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην, *wound.*
τοίνυν, postpositive conj., *therefore, moreover.*
τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε, demons. pron., *such, such as (the following).*
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτον, demons. pron., *such, such as (the preceding).*
τοξεύω (I., 1, *d*), *shoot* (with the bow).
τόξον, ου, *bow.*
τοξότης, ου, *bowman, archer.*
τοσόσδε, τοσήδε, τοσόνδε, demon. pron., *so much, as many;* refers to what follows.
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον, demon. pron., *so much, as many;* refers to what precedes.
τότε, adv., *then, at that time;* οἱ τότε, *the men of that time.*
τρεῖς, τρία, *three.*
τρέπω (I., 2, *a*), τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην and ἐτράπην, *turn, turn aside;* εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω, *put to flight.* Tropic. Heliotrope.
τρέφω (τρεφ- for θρεφ-, I., 2, *a*), θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην and ἐτράφην, *nourish, support, maintain.*
τρέχω (τρεχ-, δραμ-, VIII.), δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον, δεδράμηκα, *run.* Trochee.
τριάκοντα, *thirty.*
τριᾱκόσιοι, *three hundred.*
τριήρης, ους, ἡ, *trireme.*
τρίτος, η, ον, *third.*
τρόπος, ου, *turning; manner; kind; character.*
τροφή, ῆς, *support, subsistence.* Atrophy.
τυγχάνω (τυχ-, τευχ-, V. *c*), τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα, *hit upon; attain; meet; happen.*

Υ.

ὕδωρ, ατος, τό, *water.* Hydrant. Hydraulic. Hydrogen.
ὑμέτερος, ᾱ, ον, poss. pron., *your.*
ὑπάρχω (I., 2, *a*), *exist* (as something which may be relied on); *favor, support.*
ὑπέρ, prep., with gen., *over, in behalf of;* with acc., *over, beyond.* Cf. Lat. *super.* Hyperbole. Hypercritical.
ὑπισχνέομαι (ὑπό + ἰσχνέομαι, expanded from ἴσχω = ἔχω; σεχ-, V. *d*), ὑποσχήσομαι, -εσχόμην, -έσχημαι, *hold oneself under; promise.*
ὑπό, prep. with gen., *under, by* (of agency), *by reason of;* with dat., *under;* with acc., *under* (when motion is implied). Cf. Lat. *sub.* Hypodermic.
ὑποζύγιον, ου, *pack-animal, beast of burden.*

ὑπολαμβάνω (V. *c*), *take under one's protection, receive; answer, interrupt.*

ὑποπτεύω (I., 1, *d*), *be suspicious, suspect.*

ὕστερος, *later, behind;* **ὕστατος**, *latest, last;* compar. and superl., of which the positive is wanting; *ὕστερον*, adv., *later, afterward.*

Φ.

φαίνω (*φαν-*, IV. *c*), *φανῶ*, *ἔφηνα*, *πέφαγκα* and *πέφηνα* (intrans.), *πέφασμαι*, *ἐφάνην*, *make appear, show;* mid., *appear.* Phase.

φάλαγξ, *αγγος*, *ἡ*, phalanx.

φανερός, *ά*, *όν*, *visible, plain, evident.*

φέρω (*φερ-*, *οἰ-*, *ἐνεκ-*), *οἴσω*, *ἤνεγκα* and *ἤνεγκον*, *ἐνήνοχα*, *ἐνήνεγμαι*, *ἠνέχθην*, *bear, carry.* Cf. Lat. *fero.*

φεύγω (*φυγ-*, II.), *φεύξομαι* or *φευξοῦμαι*, *ἔφυγον*, *πέφευγα*, *flee; be an exile.* Cf. Lat. *fugio.*

φημί (*φα-*, VII. *a*), *φήσω*, *ἔφησα*; but generally *ἐρῶ*, *εἶπον*, *εἴρηκα*, *εἴρημαι*, *ἐρρήθην*, are used for the other systems; *say, state, declare.* Cf. Lat. *fari.* Euphemism.

φθάνω (*φθα-*, V. *a*), *φθήσομαι*, *ἔφθασα* and *ἔφθην*, *anticipate, be before.*

φιλέω (I., 1, *c*), *love.*

φιλίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *friendly love, love, friendship.*

φίλιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *of a friend, friendly.*

φίλος, *η*, *ον*, *friendly;* as a substantive, *friend.* Philanthropist. Philip.

φοβέω (I., 1, *c*), *φοβήσω*, *ἐφόβησα*, *πεφόβημαι*, *ἐφοβήθην*, *cause to fear, frighten;* mid. and pass., *fear, be afraid.*

φόβος, *ου*, *fear, fright; panic.* Hydrophobia.

φρονέω (I., 1, *c*), *understand, be thoughtful, be wise.*

φρούραρχος, *ου*, *commander of a garrison.*

φυγάς, *άδος*, *a fugitive, an exile.*

φυγή, *ῆς*, *flight; exile.*

φυλακή, *ῆς*, *watching, watch, garrison.*

φύλαξ, *ακος*, *watch, guard; garrison.*

φυλάττω (*φυλακ-*, IV. *a*), *φυλάξω*, *ἐφύλαξα*, *πεφύλαχα*, *πεφύλαγμαι*, *ἐφυλάχθην*, *watch, guard; stand guard;* *φυλακᾶς φυλάττω*, *keep watch.* Phylactery.

Χ.

χαλεπαίνω (*χαλεπαν-*, IV. *c*), *χαλεπανῶ*, *ἐχαλέπηνα*, *ἐχαλεπάνθην*, *be harsh; be angry, be offended.*

χαλεπός, *ή*, *όν*, *difficult, harsh, severe.*

χαλεπῶς, adv., *hardly, with difficulty; severely.*

χάρις, *ιτος*, *ἡ*, *favor, gratitude;* *χάριν ἔχω*, *be thankful.* Cf. Lat. *gratia.* Charity.

χείρ, *χειρός*, *ἡ*, dat. dual *χεροῖν*, plur. *χερσί*, *hand.* Chirography.

Χερρόνησος, *ἡ*, *the Chersonesus.*

χίλιοι, *αι*, *α*, *one thousand.*

χιών, *όνος*, *ἡ*, *snow.*

χράομαι (I., 1, *c*), *χρήσομαι*, *ἐχρησάμην*, *κέχρημαι*, *ἐχρήσθην*, *use, employ;* takes dat.

χρή (VII. *a*), impers., *there is need, it is necessary, one must;* impf. *ἐχρῆν*, or *χρῆν.*

χρῆμα, *ατος*, *τό*, *anything of use, thing;* plur., *things, possessions, money.*

χρόνος, *ου*, *time.* Chronology.

χρῦσίον, *ου*, *a piece of gold, gold.*

χρῦσοῦς, *ῆ*, *οῦν*, *of gold, golden.* Chrysanthemum.

χώρᾱ, *ᾱς*, *land, country.*

χωρίον, *ου*, *place, post; stronghold.*

Ψ.

ψεύδω, commonly **ψεύδομαι** (I., 2, *a*), *ψεύσομαι, ἐψευσάμην, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην, lie, speak falsely, deceive.* Pseudonym.

Ω.

ὦ, *O.*
ὧδε, adv., *thus, as follows.*
ὠνέομαι (*ὠνε-, πρια-*, VIII.), *ὠνήσομαι, ἐπριάμην, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην, buy.*
ὥρᾱ, *ᾱς, time, proper time, season.* Cf. Lat. *hora*, whence *hour.*
ὡς, adv., *as, how;* with the participle, *as if, on the ground that, with the intention of;* as a conj. *ὡς* may be equivalent to *ὅτε, ὅτι, ἵνα*, or *ὥστε, when, that, in order that, so that.*
ὥσπερ, adv., *just as, as it were.*
ὥστε, adv., *so that*, introduces result.
ὠφελέω (I., 1, *c*), *assist, benefit, help;* takes acc. (cf. **69**, I., Note).

ENGLISH–GREEK VOCABULARY.

A.

abandon, *καταλείπω.*
able, *δυνατός, οἷός τε, ἱκανός.*
able, *be, δύναμαι, οἷός τ' εἰμι, ἱκανός εἰμι.*
above, *ἄνω.*
accept, *δέχομαι.*
accomplish, *πρᾶττω, διαπράττω.*
accordingly, *οὖν, οὐκοῦν.*
accrue, *γίγνομαι.*
accuse, *αἰτιάομαι; accuse falsely, διαβάλλω.*
act unjustly, *ἀδικέω.*
admire, *θαυμάζω.*
advance, *πρόειμι, πρόσειμι; advance on the run, θέω δρόμῳ.*
advice, *ask, συμβουλεύομαι.*
advise, *συμβουλεύω.*
afraid, *be, δέδοικα, φοβοῦμαι.*
again, *αὖθις, πάλιν.*
against, *εἰς, ἐπί, κατά, πρός* (w. acc.).
aid, *βοηθέω* w. dat., *ὠφελέω* w. acc.
alive, *be, ζάω.*
all, *πᾶς, ἅπᾶς.*
allow, *ἐάω.*
ally, *σύμμαχος, ὁ.*
alone, *μόνος.*
along, *up, ἀνά* w. acc.; *down along, κατά* w. acc.
already, *ἤδη.*
also, *καί.*
although, *καίπερ* w. partic. (need not always be translated).
always, *ἀεί.*
and, *καί; τέ* (enclit.).
angry, *be, χαλεπαίνω.*
announce, *make announcement, ἀγγέλλω, παραγγέλλω.*
annoyance, *ὄχλος, ὁ.*
another, *ἄλλος*; (of two) *ἕτερος.*
answer, *ἀποκρίνομαι.*
any, *any one, τις, τι.* (*Any* is not always to be translated.)
anywhere, *πού.*
apart, *be, διέχω.*
appear, *φαίνομαι, πάρειμι.*
approach, *προσέρχομαι, πρόσειμι.*
archer, *τοξότης, ὁ.*
arise, *γίγνομαι.*
arms, *ὅπλα, τά.*
army, *στρατός, ὁ; στρατιά, ἡ; στράτευμα, τό* (most frequent).
around, *ἀμφί, περί*, w. acc.
arrest, *συλλαμβάνω.*
arrive, *ἀφικνέομαι, πάρειμι.*
as, *ὡς*; as follows, *ὧδε*; *as long as, ἕως.*

ascend, ἀναβαίνω.
ascent, ἀνάβασις, ἡ.
ashamed, *be*, αἰσχύνομαι.
ask, ἐρωτάω; *ask for*, αἰτέω; *ask advice*, συμβουλεύομαι.
assist, βοηθέω w. dat., ὠφελέω w. acc.
at, ἐπί, παρά, πρός, w. dat.
at least, γέ (enclit.).
at home, οἴκοι.
at the same time, ἅμα.
attack, ἐπιτίθεμαι w. dat.
attempt, πειράομαι.
away from, ἀπό w. gen.

B.

back, πάλιν.
bad, κακός.
badly, κακῶς.
barbarian, βάρβαρος, ὁ; adj., βαρβαρικός.
battle, μάχη, ἡ.
be, εἰμί, γίγνομαι; *be away*, ἄπειμι; *be gone*, οἴχομαι; *be in*, ἔνειμι.
beast of burden, ὑποζύγιον, τό.
beautiful, καλός.
because, ἐπεί, ὅτι.
become, γίγνομαι.
before, prep., πρό w. gen.; conj., πρίν; sometimes to be rendered by φθάνω w. supp. partic.
beg, δέομαι.
begin, ἄρχομαι.
beginning, ἀρχή, ἡ.
behalf, *in behalf of*, ὑπέρ w. gen.
best, *seem*, δοκεῖ.
betray, προδίδωμι.
beyond, ὑπέρ w. gen.
bid, κελεύω.
bivouac, αὐλίζομαι.
boat, πλοῖον, τό.
bone, ὀστοῦν, τό.
born, *be*, γίγνομαι.
both, ἀμφότεροι; *both . . . and . . .* καί . . . καί, τέ . . . καί.
bow, τόξον, τό; *shoot with b.*, τοξεύω.
bowman, τοξότης, ὁ.
boy, παῖς, ὁ.
brave, ἀγαθός.
break (truce), λύω.
bridge, γέφῡρα, ἡ.
bring, φέρω; *bring it about*, πράττω, διαπράττω; *bring back word*, ἀπαγγέλλω.
brother, ἀδελφός, ὁ.
burn, καίω.
but, ἀλλά; δέ (postpositive).
by (agency) ὑπό w. gen., also simple dat.; (beside) παρά with dat.

C.

camp, στρατόπεδον, τό.
can, δύναμαι (see able, *be*).
captain, λοχᾱγός, ὁ.
capture, αἱρέω, λαμβάνω, καταλαμβάνω; *be captured*, ἁλίσκομαι.
care for, ἐπιμελέομαι; *it is a care*, μέλει.
carry, ἄγω, φέρω.
cattle, βόες, οἱ, αἱ; πρόβατα, τά.
cause trouble, πράγματα παρέχω.
cease, παύομαι; *cause to cease*, παύω.
certain, *a certain one*, τὶς.
character, τρόπος, ὁ.
chariot, ἅρμα, τό.
child, παῖς, ὁ, ἡ.
choose, αἱροῦμαι.
circle, κύκλος.
city, πόλις, ἡ; ἄστυ, τό.
claim, ἀξιόω.
collect, ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω.
come, ἔρχομαι; *am* or *have come*, ἥκω; *come upon*, ἐντυγχάνω.
command, κελεύω.
company, λόχος, ὁ.
compel, ἀναγκάζω.
conquer, νῑκάω; *be conquered*, νῑκάομαι, ἡττάαμαι.
consider, νομίζω.
consult, συμβουλεύομαι.
contrary to, παρά w. acc.
corpse, νεκρός, ὁ.
country, χώρᾱ, ἡ.
cow, βοῦς, ἡ.
cowardly, κακός.
cross, διαβαίνω.
crowd, ὄχλος, ὁ.
custom, νόμος, ὁ.

D.

damage, βλάπτω; κακῶς or κακὰ ποιέω.
danger, κίνδῡνος, ὁ; δεινόν, τό.
daric, δᾱρεικός, ὁ.
day, ἡμέρᾱ, ἡ.
day's journey, σταθμός, ὁ.

daybreak, *at*, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.
deceive, ἐξαπατάω.
deed, ἔργον, τό.
deem worthy, ἀξιόω.
delay, διατρίβω; μέλλω.
demand, αἰτέω, ἀξιόω.
deprive, ἀφαιροῦμαι.
descend, καταβαίνω.
desert, *one's*, δίκη, ἡ.
destroy, λύω.
die, ἀποθνῄσκω, θνῄσκω, τελευτάω.
difficulty, ἀπορίᾱ, ἡ; *be in difficulty*, ἀπορέω.
dine, δειπνέω.
dispatch, στέλλω.
distant, *be*, ἀπέχω.
ditch, τάφρος, ἡ.
do, ποιέω, πράττω; *do good*, εὖ ποιέω; *do harm*, κακῶς (or κακὰ) ποιέω, ἀδικέω, βλάπτω.
door, θύρᾱ, ἡ.
down, κατά; *down from* or *down over*, w. gen.; *down along*, w. acc.
draw up, τάττω.
drive, ἐλαύνω, ἄγω.
dwell, οἰκέω.

E.

each, ἕκαστος.
each other, ἀλλήλοιν.
earth, γῆ, ἡ.
eight, ὀκτώ.
elder, πρεσβύτερος.
encamp, στρατοπεδεύομαι.
encampment, στρατόπεδον, τό.
end, τέλος, τό.
enemy, πολέμιος, collective, πολέμιοι, οἱ; *personal enemy*, ἐχθρός, ὁ.
equal, ἴσος.
equip, στέλλω.
even, καί; *not even*, *nor even*, οὐδέ.
every, πᾶς, ἕκαστος.
evident, δῆλος; *make evident*, δηλόω.
evil, κακός; as noun, *evils*, κακά, τά.
exceedingly, σφόδρα.
exile, ἐκβάλλω; *be exiled*, ἐκπίπτω.
expedition, *make an*, στρατεύομαι.
extremely, ἰσχῡρῶς, μάλα, σφόδρα.

F.

faithful, πιστός.
father, πατήρ, ὁ.
favorable, καλός.
fear, φόβος; (verb) δέδοικα, φοβοῦμαι.
fight, μάχομαι.
fill, πίμπλημι.
finally, τέλος.
find, εὑρίσκω; ἐντυγχάνω w. dat.
fire, πῦρ, τό; *set fire to*, κάω.
first, πρῶτος; adv., πρῶτον.
fish, ἰχθύς, ὁ.
five, πέντε.
flee, φεύγω.
flight, φυγή, ἡ.
flow, ῥέω.
follow, ἕπομαι w. dat.; *follow after*, ἐφέπομαι w. dat.; *as follows*, ὧδε; *on the following day*, τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ.
food, σῖτος, ὁ; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
foot, πούς, ὁ; *on foot*, adj., πεζός; adv. πεζῇ; *foot-soldiers*, πεζοί, οἱ.
for, conj., γάρ; prep., express by simple dat., or by ὑπέρ, ἕνεκα, w. gen.; *for these reasons*, διὰ ταῦτα.
force, δύναμις, ἡ; (verb) ἀναγκάζω.
fountain, πηγή, ἡ, κρήνη, ἡ.
four, τέτταρες.
friend, φίλος, ὁ.
friendly, φίλιος.
friendship, φιλίᾱ, ἡ.
frighten, φοβέω.
from, ἀπό, ἐκ, παρά, w. gen.
fuel, ξύλον, τό.
furthermore, εἶτα.

G.

garrison, φυλακή, ἡ.
gate, πύλαι, αἱ.
general, στρατηγός, ὁ.
get, κτάομαι; see also *become*; *get back safe*, σῴζομαι.
gift, δῶρον, τό.
give, δίδωμι; *give back*, ἀποδίδωμι; *give an order*, παραγγέλλω.
glen, νάπη, ἡ.
go, ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, πορεύομαι, βαίνω, in compounds; *go away*, *go back*, ἄπειμι, ἀπέρχομαι; *go down*, καταβαίνω; *go past*, πάρειμι; *go up*, ἀναβαίνω.
god, θεός, ὁ,

goddess, θεός, ἡ.
going to be, μέλλω.
gold, χρῦσίον, τό; *of gold, golden*, χρῦσοῦς.
gone, *be*, οἴχομαι.
good, ἀγαθός; *do good*, εὖ ποιέω.
governor, ἁρμοστής, ὁ.
grain, σῖτος, ὁ.
great, μέγας; *count of the greatest importance*, περὶ πλείστου ποιοῦμαι.
Greece, Ἑλλάς, ἡ.
Greek, Ἕλλην, ὁ; adj., Ἑλληνικός.
guard, (individual) φύλαξ, ὁ; (collective) φυλακή, ἡ; (verb) φυλάττω.
guest-friend, ξένος, ὁ.
guide, ἡγεμών, ὁ.

H.

halt, (trans.) ἵστημι; (intr.) ἀναπαύομαι.
hand, χείρ, ἡ.
harm, βλάπτω, κακῶς or κακὰ ποιεῖν.
harmost, ἁρμοστής, ὁ.
have, ἔχω.
he, as subject generally not translated; in oblique cases, αὐτοῦ, etc.; indir. reflex., οὗ; if emphatic, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος; *and he*, ὁ δέ.
head, κεφαλή, ἡ.
hear, ἀκούω.
heights, ἄκρα, τά.
help, βοηθέω w. dat.; ὠφελέω w. acc.
herald, κῆρυξ, ὁ.
here, αὐτοῦ, ἔνθα, ἐνταῦθα.
hill, λόφος, ὁ.
hinder, κωλύω.
his, often represented by article; αὐτοῦ; referring to the subject, ἑαυτοῦ.
hold, ἔχω.
home, *at*, οἴκοι.
homeward, οἴκαδε.
honor, τῑμή, ἡ; (verb) τῑμάω.
honorable, καλός.
hope, ἐλπίς, ἡ.
hopeful, *be*, ἐν ἐλπίσιν εἰμί.
hoplite, ὁπλίτης, ὁ.
horse, ἵππος, ὁ.
horseback, *on*, ἀφ' or ἐφ' ἵππου or ἵππων; of mounting, ἐφ' ἵππον or ἵππους.
horseman, ἱππεύς, ὁ.
hostile, πολέμιος (*hostis*), ἐχθρός (*inimīcus*).
house, οἰκίᾱ, ἡ; οἶκος, ὁ.
how, interrog., πῶς; rel., ὅπως, ὅπῃ, ᾗ.
however, ὅμως, μέντοι.

I.

I, ἐγώ; often not expressed; *I at least*, ἔγωγε.
if, εἰ, ἐάν (ἤν, ἄν).
immediately, εὐθύς.
impassable, ἄπορος.
implement, ὅπλον, τό.
in, ἐν; *in order that*, ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς; *in regard to*, πρός w. acc.; *in return for*, ἀντί w. gen.; *in the power of*, ἐπί w. dat.; *in the time of*, ἐπί w. gen.; *in truth*, μήν.
into, εἰς.
infantry, πεζοί, οἱ.
injure, ἀδικέω, βλάπτω, κακῶς (or κακὰ) ποιέω.
inland, ἄνω; *to march inland*, ἀναβαίνω.
instead of, ἀντί w. gen.
intend, ἐν νῷ ἔχω.
intercede for, ἐξαιτοῦμαι.
interpreter, ἑρμηνεύς, ὁ.
it, as subject not translated; in oblique cases αὐτοῦ, etc.

J.

journey, πορείᾱ, ἡ; *day's journey*, σταθμός, ὁ.
judgment, γνώμη, ἡ.
just, δίκαιος.
justice, δίκη, ἡ.

K.

keep away, ἀπέχω.
keep watch, φυλάττω.
kill, ἀποκτείνω, κατακαίνω; *be killed*, ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀπόλλυμαι.
king, βασιλεύς, ὁ.
kingly, βασίλειος.
know, γιγνώσκω, οἶδα; *know how to*, ἐπίσταμαι, οἶδα.

L.

land, χώρᾱ, ἡ.
large, μέγας.
laugh at, καταγελάω.

lead, ἄγω; ἡγοῦμαι, w. dat.; *lead away* or *back*, ἀπάγω.
leader, ἡγεμών, ὁ.
learn, (by inquiry) πυνθάνομαι; (recognize) γιγνώσκω; (perceive) αἰσθάνομαι.
leave, λείπω, ἀπολείπω; *leave behind*, καταλείπω.
libation, σπονδή, ἡ; *make a libation*, σπένδω.
lie, κεῖμαι.
light-armed soldier, γυμνής, ὁ, γυμνήτης, ὁ.
line of battle, τάξις, ἡ.
little, μῑκρός.
live, ζάω.
long, (of time) πολύς; (of space) μακρός.
long for, ἐπιθῡμέω w. gen.
longer, *any*, ἔτι; *no longer*, οὐκέτι, μηκέτι.
loose, λῡ́ω.
love, φιλέω.

M.

make, ποιέω; *make an announcement*, παραγγέλλω; *make evident*, δηλόω; *make war*, πολεμέω.
man, ἀνήρ, ὁ; ἄνθρωπος, ὁ.
manner, τρόπος, ὁ.
many, πολλοί.
march, ἐλαύνω, πορεύομαι; *march up* or *inland*, ἀναβαίνω; *march down* or *to the coast*, καταβαίνω.
mare, ἵππος, ἡ.
market-place, ἀγορά, ἡ.
mass, πλῆθος, τό.
may, modal auxiliary, has no equivalent in Greek. Represent by mood, usually subj.; in wishes, opt.
mercenaries, ξένοι, οἱ.
messenger, ἄγγελος, ὁ.
middle, μέσος.
mina, μνᾶ, ἡ.
mind, νοῦς, ὁ.
money, χρήματα, τά; ἀργύριον, τό.
more, μᾶλλον.
moreover, αὖ, τοίνυν, ἔπειτα, εἶτα δέ.
mother, μήτηρ, ἡ.
mountain, ὄρος, τό.
much, adj., πολύς; adv., πολύ, πολλῷ, πολλά.
multitude, πλῆθος, τό.
Muse, Μοῦσα, ἡ.
must, may be expressed by verbal in -τέος, or by δεῖ, χρή, or ἀνάγκη ἐστί.

N.

narrow, στενός.
nearly, σχεδόν.
necessarily, ἀνάγκῃ.
necessary, *be*, δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη ἐστί.
need, δέομαι.
neither, conj., οὔτε, οὐδέ.
never, οὔποτε, μήποτε.
nevertheless, ὅμως.
night, νύξ, ἡ.
nine, ἐννέα.
ninth, ἔνατος.
no by, (in oaths) μά w. acc.
no longer, οὐκέτι, μηκέτι.
none, no one, οὐδείς, μηδείς.
nor, οὔτε, οὐδέ.
not, οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ), μή; *not therefore*, οὐκοῦν.
nothing, οὐδέν, μηδέν.
nourish, τρέφω.
now, νῦν, ἤδη.
number, numbering, ἀριθμός, ὁ.

O.

O, ὦ.
O that, εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, ὤφελον.
oath, ὅρκος, ὁ.
obey, πείθομαι w. dat.
observe, αἰσθάνομαι.
obtain, κτάομαι.
old man, γέρων, πρέσβυς.
on, ἐπί, w. gen. or dat.; *on* a day, simple dat. or ἐν; *on account of*, διά w. acc.; *on the one hand . . . on the other*, μέν . . . δέ.
once, ἅπαξ; ποτέ.
one, εἷς; τὶς.
one another, ἀλλήλοιν.
only, μόνος.
opinion, γνώμη, ἡ.
opposite, ἀντί w. gen., κατά w. acc.
or, ἤ.
order, κελεύω; *give an order*, παραγγέλλω.
in order that, ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς.
other, ἄλλος; of two, ἕτερος.
our, ἡμέτερος, ἡμῶν.
out of, ἐξ.
outdone by, *be*, ἡττάομαι.
outside, ἔξω.
overtake, καταλαμβάνω.
ox, βοῦς, ὁ.

P.

pack up, συσκευάζω.
parasang, παρασάγγης, ὁ.
part, μέρος, τό.
pass by, παρέρχομαι, πάρειμι.
pass the word, παραγγέλλω.
pay, μισθός, ὁ.
pelt, βάλλω.
peltast, πελταστής, ὁ.
perceive, αἰσθάνομαι.
perhaps, ἴσως.
perplexed, *be*, ἀπορέω.
Persian, Πέρσης, ὁ.
persuade, πείθω.
phalanx, φάλαγξ, ὁ.
place, χωρίον, τό.
plain, πεδίον, τό.
plan, βουλεύω.
pleased, *be*, ἥδομαι.
plethrum, πλέθρον, τό.
plot, ἐπιβουλή, ἡ; *plot against*, ἐπιβουλεύω w. dat.
plunder, ἁρπάζω.
possible, δυνατός, οἷός τε.
pour a libation, σπένδω.
power of, *in the*, ἐπί w. dat.
powerful, *be*, κρατέω.
pray, εὔχομαι.
prepare, παρασκευάζω.
present, *be*, πάρειμι; *at present*, νῦν.
prevent, κωλύω.
proceed, πορεύομαι.
promise, ὑπισχνοῦμαι.
prosperous, εὐδαίμων.
province, ἀρχή, ἡ.
provisions, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τὰ σῖτα.
punishment, *receive*, δίκην ἔχω.
pursue, διώκω.
put to death, ἀποκτείνω; *be put to death*, ἀποθνήσκω, ἀπόλλυμαι.
put to flight, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω.

Q.

quick, ταχύς.
quickly, ταχέως; *as quickly as possible*, ὡς τάχιστα.

R.

ravine, νάπη, ἡ.
reach, ἀφικνοῦμαι εἰς.
rear, *in the*, ὄπισθεν; *those in the rear*, οἱ ὄπισθεν.
receive, δέχομαι, λαμβάνω; *receive satisfaction*, or *receive punishment*, δίκην ἔχω.
refrain from, ἀπέχομαι.
refuse, οὐ φημι.
regard to, *in*, πρός w. acc.
remain, μένω.
remaining, λοιπός.
reply, ἀποκρῑ́νομαι.
responsible for, αἴτιος.
rest, ἀναπαύομαι.
rest, *the*, ἄλλος, w. article.
return, intr., ἀπέρχομαι, ἄπειμι.
right, δεξιός; *on the right*, ἐν δεξιᾷ.
river, ποταμός, ὁ.
road, ὁδός, ἡ.
rock, πέτρᾱ, ἡ.
rouse, ἀνίστημι.
royal, βασίλειος.
rule, ἀρχή, ἡ; (verb) ἄρχω.
ruler, ἄρχων, ὁ.
run, running, δρόμος, ὁ; (verb) θέω, τρέχω.
rush, ἴεμαι.

S.

sacred, ἱερός.
sacrifice, θύω; *sacrifices*, ἱερά, τά.
safe, ἀσφαλής.
safety, σωτηρίᾱ, ἡ.
sail away or back, ἀποπλέω.
same, ὁ αὐτός; *at the same time*, ἅμα.
satisfaction, *receive*, δίκην ἔχω.
satrap, σατράπης, ὁ.
save, σῴζω.
say, εἶπον, λέγω, φημί.
sea, θάλαττα, ἡ.
season, ὥρᾱ, ἡ.
second, δεύτερος, ἕτερος.
secretly, use λανθάνω w. supp. partic.
see, ὁράω; *see to it*, σκοπέω.
seem, *seem good*, δοκέω; *seem likely*, ἔοικα.
seize, αἱρέω, ἁρπάζω, καταλαμβάνω, συλλαμβάνω.
self, αὐτός.
send, πέμπω; *send away* or *back*, ἀποπέμπω; *send for*, μεταπέμπομαι.
set fire to, κᾰ́ω.
seven, ἑπτά.
shameful, αἰσχρός.
she, see he.
shield, ἀσπίς, ἡ, πέλτη, ἡ.

ship, ναῦς, ἡ, πλοῖον, τό.
shoot (*with the bow*), τοξεύω.
shout, κραυγή, ἡ.
show, δηλόω, φαίνω.
sick, *be*, ἀσθενέω.
signal, *give the*, σημαίνω.
silver, ἀργύριον, τό; *made of silver*, ἀργυροῦς.
since, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτι.
situated, *be*, κεῖμαι.
six, ἕξ.
skilful, δεινός.
slave, ἀνδράποδον, τό.
slay, ἀποκτείνω; *be slain*, ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀπόλλυμαι.
sling, *use the*, σφενδονάω.
small, μῑκρός.
snow, χιών, ἡ.
so, οὕτως, ὧδε; *so much* or *so many*, τοσοῦτος, τοσόσδε.
soldier, στρατιώτης, ὁ.
some, some one, τις.
somehow, πώς.
sometime, ποτέ.
son, παῖς.
soothsayer, μάντις, ὁ.
source, πηγαί, αἱ.
speak of, λέγω.
spear, λόγχη, ἡ, δόρυ, τό.
spend, (money) δαπανάω; (time) διατρῑ́βω.
stage, σταθμός, ὁ.
stand, intrans. tenses of ἵστημι; *stand guard*, φυλάττω; *stand under arms*, τὰ ὅπλα τίθεμαι.
station, σταθμός, ὁ; (verb), καθίστημι, τάττω.
still, ἔτι; ὅμως.
stone, λίθος, ὁ.
stop, παύομαι; *make one stop*, παύω.
stranger, ξένος, ὁ.
strength, βῑᾶ, ἡ.
strike, παίω.
strong, ἰσχῡρός.
stronghold, χωρίον, τό.
succeed, εὖ πράττω.
such, τοιοῦτος, τοιόσδε; *such as* (rel.), οἷος.
suffer, πάσχω.
sufficient, ἱκανός.
summit, ἄκρον, τό.
summon, μεταπέμπομαι.
support, τρέφω.
suppose, ἡγοῦμαι, νομίζω, οἴομαι.
suspect, ὑποπτεύω.
sweet, ἡδύς.
swift, ταχύς.
swiftly, ταχέως; *as swiftly as possible*, ὡς τάχιστα.

T.

take, αἱρέω, λαμβάνω; *take place*, γίγνομαι.
tax, δασμός, ὁ.
teach, διδάσκω.
tell, λέγω; κελεύω.
temple, νεώς, ὁ.
ten, δέκα.
tent, σκηνή, ἡ.
terrible, δεινός.
than, ἤ.
that, dem., ἐκεῖνος; rel., ὅς; conj., ὅτι; *in order that*, ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς.
the, ὁ.
their, αὐτῶν, αὑτῶν; often expressed by the article.
then, τότε; εἶτα, ἔπειτα, ἔνθα, ἐνταῦθα; οὖν.
thence, ἐντεῦθεν.
there, ἐνταῦθα, αὐτοῦ, ἔνθα; as expletive, *e.g. there was*, not to be translated.
therefore, οὖν, τοίνυν; *not therefore*, οὐκοῦν.
thereupon, ἐνταῦθα, ἐκ δὲ τούτων.
Thessaly, Θετταλίᾱ, ἡ.
think, οἴομαι, νομίζω, ἡγοῦμαι.
third, τρίτος.
thirty, τριάκοντα.
this, οὗτος, ὅδε; *those*, often expressed by the article, *e.g. those in front*, οἱ πρόσθεν.
thousand, χῑ́λιοι.
three, τρεῖς.
three hundred, τριᾱκόσιοι.
throne, *come to the*, καθίστημι (intr. tenses) εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν.
through, διά w. gen.
throw, βάλλω; *throw down*, καταβάλλω.
thus, οὕτως, ὧδε.
time, χρόνος, ὁ; *proper time*, καιρός, ὁ, ὥρᾱ, ἡ.
to, εἰς, ἐπί, παρά, πρός, ὡς, w. acc.; *in order to*, ἵνα, ὅπως, ὡς, or express by fut. partic.
to-day, *the men of*, οἱ νῦν.
together with, ἅμα w. dat.
top of, ἄκρος.
toward, πρός w. acc.
town, ἄστυ, τό.
trouble, ὄχλος, ὁ; *cause trouble*, πρᾱ́γματα παρέχω.

truce, σπονδαί, αἱ.
trumpet, σάλπιγξ, ἡ.
truth, *in*, μήν.
trust in, πιστεύω.
trusty, πιστός.
try, πειράομαι; sometimes expressed by imperfect.
turn, τρέπω; *turn suddenly*, στρέφω; *turn over to*, ἐπιτρέπω.
twelve, δώδεκα.
twenty, εἴκοσι.
two, δύο.
two hundred, διᾱκόσιοι.
two thousand, δισχίλιοι.

U.

understand, ἐπίσταμαι.
until, ἕως, ἔστε, μέχρι.
up, ἀνά.
upon, ἐπί w. gen. or dat.
uproar, θόρυβος, ὁ.
use, χράομαι w. dat.
use the sling, σφενδονάω.

V.

van, οἱ πρόσθεν.
very, μάλα, σφόδρα, πάνυ.
victory, νίκη, ἡ.
village, κώμη, ἡ.
village-chief, κωμάρχης, ὁ.
violence, βίᾱ, ἡ; *violently*, βίᾳ.
vow, εὔχομαι.

W.

wagon, ἅμαξα, ἡ.
wall, τεῖχος, τό.
war, πόλεμος, ὁ; *make war*, πολεμέω.
waste (time), διατρίβω.
watch, φυλακή, ἡ; *keep watch*, φυλάττω.
water, ὕδωρ, τό.
well, εὖ.
well-disposed, εὔνους.
what, (inter.) τί; (rel.) ὅ, ἅ, ὅ τι, ἅτινα.
wheat, πῦροί, οἱ.
when, (inter.) πότε; (rel.) ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτε, ὁπότε; w. subjv. ἐπήν, etc.
whenever, see when.
where, (inter.) ποῦ; (rel.) ὅπῃ, ᾗ.
which, see who.
whither, ὅπῃ.
who, (inter.) τίς; (rel.) ὅς, ὅστις.
whoever, see who.
whole, ὅλος, πᾶς, ἅπᾶς.
why, τί.
width, εὖρος, τό.
wife, γυνή, ἡ.
will, *of one's own*, ἑκών.
willing, ἑκών; *be willing*, ἐθέλω, βούλομαι.
wine, οἶνος, ὁ.
wing (of an army), κέρας, τό.
wish, βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.
with, μετά w. gen., σύν w. dat.
within, ἔνδον; of motion, εἴσω; within a certain time, express by gen.
without, adv., ἔξω; prep., ἄνευ.
woman, γυνή, ἡ.
wonder at, θαυμάζω.
wood, ξύλον, τό.
word, λόγος, ὁ; *pass the word along*, παραγγέλλω.
work, ἔργον, τό.
worthy, ἄξιος.
would that, εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, ὄφελον.
wound, τιτρώσκω.
write, γράφω.
wrong, ἀδικέω.

Y.

year, ἔτος, τό.
yes, by, (in oaths) νή w. acc.
yet, adv., ἔτι; conj., ὅμως.
you, ὑμεῖς, or omit.
young, νέος; *young man*, νεᾱνίᾱς, ὁ.
yourself, σεαυτοῦ.

Z.

zealous, πρόθῡμος.

GREEK INDEX.

This index is not intended to be exhaustive, but to serve merely as a supplement to the English Index.

ἀ *privative*, **507**, note 1.
ἄν, in ἐάν, **298**, note 1, **460**; in indirect discourse, **524**; in ὅτᾱν, etc., **475**.
ἀπόλλῡμι, **454** *b*.
αὐτός, declen., **189–190**; uses of, **182**.

δύναμαι, **454** *a*.
δύο, **306**.

εἰμί, **210–211**.
εἶμι, **270–272**.
εἰπέ, **531**, note 8.
εἷς, **306**.
ἔλιπον, **429–431**, **543**.
ἐπίσταμαι, **454** *a*.
ἔστι, **251**.
ἐφάνην, **434–435**, **545**.
ἕως, meanings of, **504**, note 1; clauses with, **504–505**.

ἧμαι, **498**.

ἵημι, **479–480**, **551**.
ἵστημι, **546–549**; transitive and intransitive tenses, **455**.

κάθημαι, **498**.
κεῖμαι, **499**.

λέλοιπα, **432–433**, **544**.
λύω, **40–42**, **115–117**, **166–170**, **286–287**, **311–315**, **347–348**, **357–358**, **374–377**, **380–381**, **542**.

-μι verbs, **448–455**, **465–468**, **546–549**.
μῶν, p. 196, note 1.

ν *movable*, **45**.

ὁ δέ, **197**, note 1.
οἶδα, **500–501**.
ὄμνῡμι, **454** *b*.
οὐδείς, **307**.
οὗτος, declen. of, **150**; distinguished from ὅδε, **159**.

πίμπλημι, **454** *a*.
πρίν clauses, **506**.

τέτταρες, **306**.
τρεῖς, **306**.

φημί, **494–497**, **550**.

ENGLISH INDEX.

ablative, functions of, in Greek, **25**.
accent, **12**; general rules, **18**; of contracts, **79**; place of, **13**; recessive, **20**.
accusative, absolute, **444**; adverbial, **183**; cognate, **82**; direct object, **28**; extent of time or space, **70**; retained with passive, **493**, note 5; specification, **101**; subj. of infin., **46**; with adverbs of swearing, **250**.
adjectives, 1st and 2d declen., **127–131**, **141–144**; Attic 2d, **145–146**; 3d declen., **322–323**; 1st and 3d declen., **361–362**; irregular, **391–392**; declen. of compars. and superls., **407**.
adjective uses, **206**.
agreement, of adjectives and participles, **132**; of predicate substantives, **212**; of relatives, **162**; of verbs, **27** and (neut. plur. subj.) **99**.
alphabet, **1–3**.
aorist tense, **35**; act. and mid. system, **283–287**; in *-κα*, **456**, note 2; pass. system, **374–378**; changes in mute themes, **379**; 2d aor. act. system, **429–431**; 2d aor. pass., **434–435**.
apposition, **29**.
article, indefinite, **96**; definite, **97**; with proper names, **125**, note 2.
Attic, **191**, note 1; declension, **94–95**; future, **224**, note 4; reduplication, **456**, note 1.
attributive position, **175–177**.
augment, **38**; syllabic, **38** *a*; temporal, **38** *b*.

barytone, **14** *c*.
breathings, **2**; place of, **13** *a* and *b*.

cases, **24**; endings, **50**.
causal clauses, **439**.
cause, **160**, I., and note 2; **161**, I. *a*.
comparison, of adjectives, regular, **405–406**; irregular, **489**; of adverbs, regular, **408–409**; irregular, **490**.
compound words, divided, **7**.
conditional sentences, simple particular, **297**; general, **459–461**; contrary to fact, **388**; most vivid future, **351**; more vivid future, **298**; less vivid future, **343**; mixed construction, **518**; customary action, **519**; summary, **517**.
conjunction, necessary at the beginning of a sentence in Greek, **534**, note 10.
consonants, division of, **225–227**; double, **55** *b*, 2.
contract, nouns, **65–67**, **91–93**; verbs, **75–79**, **136**, **214–215**.
contraction, rules for, **77–79**.
coronis, **382**, note 2.
crasis, **382**, note 2.

dative, advantage, **69**, II.; agency, **387**; cause, **161**, I. *a*; degree of difference, **412**; indirect object, **69**, I.; likeness and unlikeness, **195**, II.; manner, **161**, I. *b*; means, **161**, I. *c*; possession, **195**, I.; time when, **161**, II.; with adjectives, adverbs, and substantives, **267**; with compound verbs, **249**.
declensions, **51**.
deponent verbs, **137**, **384–385**.
digamma, **3**.
diphthongs, **5**; improper, **6**.
dissimilation, **376** *d*, note 1.
double negative, **299**, note 2.

elision, **147**, note 2.
enclitics, **219–220**; accent of, **221**.

fear, object clauses with verbs of, **325**.
feminine, grammatical gender, **89–90**.
final clauses, **47**.
first passive system, **374**.
future, tense, **35** *a*; system, **167**; Attic future, **224**, note 4; 2d fut. pass., **434–435**.
future perfect, **35** *a*.

gender, **24**.
genitive, absolute, **336–337**; agency, **386**; cause, **160**, I.; characteristic, **80**, II.; material, **160**, IV.; measure, **100**; objective, **68**, IV.; partitive, **68**, II.; predicate, **81**; price, **80**, I.; separation, **160**, III.; source, **160**, II.; subjective, **68**, III.; time within which, **194**; with compound verbs, **248**; with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, **266**; with verbs of plenty and want, **193**; with verbs of sense perception, **265**.

imperative, mood, **34**; of command, **118**; of prohibition, **288**.
imperfect, tense, **35** *a*; meaning of, **41**; secondary, **35** *b*.
indirect discourse, infinitive, **419–420**; ὅτι and finite moods, **416–417**; participle, **443**; complex sentences, **523–524**.
indirect question, **418**.
infinitive, mood, **34**; subj. of, **46**; used as substantive, **205**; in indirect discourse, **419–420**.
iota subscript, **6**.

liquid verbs, **292–296**.

moods, **34**; mood-suffix, **36**.
mutes, classes and orders, **352**.

nasal γ, **1**, note 2.
negative, distinction between οὐ and μή, **121–124**; in conditional sentences, **516**; with infin. in indirect discourse, **423**.
nominative, subj. of finite verb, **26**.
nouns, 1st declen., **54–57**, **62–64**, **65–67**; 2d declen., **87–88**, **91–93**, **94–95**; 3d declen., **232–235**, **245**, **277–280**, **340–342**.
number, **23**.
numerals, adverbs, **331**; cardinals and ordinals, **329–330**; declension of εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς, τέτταρες, **306–307**.

object clauses, with ὅπως, **273**.
optative, mood, **34**; mood-suffix, **42** *b*; potential, **369**; with final clauses, **47**; has secondary endings, **37**.
oxytone, **14** *a*; acute changed to a grave, **15**.

paroxytone, **14** *a*.
participle, declen. of, in -ων, **332–**

335; in *-as*, **365**; in *-ως*, **366**; in *-εις*, **367**; circumstantial, **120**; denotes purpose, **184**; in indirect discourse, **443**; supplementary, **440–442**; where English uses a verb, **492**, note 2.
perfect, tense, **35** *a*; active system, **311–319**; changes of mute themes, **352–354**; 2d perfect system, **432–433**, **544**.
perispomenon, **14** *b*.
personal endings, **36**; active, **37**; middle and passive, **113**.
persons, **23**.
pluperfect, **35** *a*.
postpositive, **133**, note 1.
potential optative, **369**.
predicate position, **178–180**.
prepositions, **199–204**; table of, **510**.
present, tense, **35** *a*; system, **41**.
primary tenses, **35** *b*; endings (active) **37**, (middle) **113**.
principal parts, of a verb, **487**.
proclitic, **218**.
prohibition, **288**.
pronouns, demonstrative, **150–154**; indefinite, **302–303**; interrogative, **302–303**; indefinite relative, **304**; personal, **189–192**; possessive, **305**; reciprocal, **301**; reflexive, **261–263**; relative, **150** and **154**.
pronunciation, of alphabet, **1**; of diphthongs, **5–6**.
proparoxytone, **14** *a*.
properispomenon, **14** *b*.
punctuation, **22**.
purpose, **324**.

reduplication, **312**; Attic, **456**, note 1; in present, **449**; like augment, **317**, *b* and *c*.
relative clauses, definite, **472**; indefinite, **473–475**.
result, **368**.

secondary, tenses, **35** *b*; endings (active) **37**, (middle) **113**.
stem, verb, **36**; noun, **50**.
subjunctive, deliberative, **138**; hortatory, **119**; in final clauses, **47**.
substantive uses, **205**.
syllables, **7**; long, **16–17**.
syncopated nouns, **245**.

temporal clauses, with ἕως, etc., **504–505**; with πρίν, **506**.
tense, **35** *a*; primary and secondary, **35** *b*; stem, **36**.
thematic vowel, **36**.
theme, **36**.
transliteration, **9**.

verbs, accent of, **39**; classification, **488**; inflection, **542–551**; mood-suffix, **36**; personal endings, **36–37** and **113**; principal parts, **487**; tense-stem, **36**; thematic vowel, **36**; theme, **36**.
verbal adjectives, **383** and Note.
voices, **33**; direct and indirect middle, **112**; passive, **117**.

wishes, **393–396**.

ἄνθρωποι οἱ πόδας ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν